

Seventh Edition

Building Vocabulary For College

R. Kent Smith



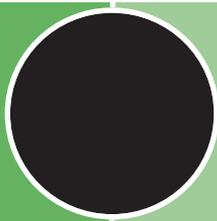
Intriguing Facts About the English Language

- The English language dates back to the 400s, when Germanic tribes, including Angles and Saxons, invaded the island that came to be known (because of the Angles) as England. The epic poem *Beowulf* was written down around 1000 in the Anglo-Saxon language, known as **Old English**. **Middle English** developed following the 1066 invasion of the Normans, who came from France. Geoffrey Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales* (completed around 1400) is written in Middle English. **Modern English** originated in the 16th century. The works of William Shakespeare (1564–1616) are often cited as the beginning of Modern English.
- Figures regarding the average American's total vocabulary vary greatly, from less than 5,000 words to more than 20,000. One major reason for this is that researchers differ in the way they count the words. For example, if a person knows the meaning of *jump*, some researchers assume that the person also knows the meaning of its derivatives (*jumps, jumped, jumping, jumper, jumpers, jumpy*), so they give credit for all of those words. Other researchers exclude derivatives, so in the case of *jump*, they would give credit for only one word.
- *The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog* contains every letter in the English alphabet. (This kind of sentence is called a *panagram*.)
- No words in the English language rhyme with *orange, month, purple, or silver*.
- *Set* is the English word that has the most definitions (the *Oxford English Dictionary* lists 192).
- *Pneumonoultramicroscopicsilicovolcanoconiosis* (a lung disease) is the longest word in the English language that appears in a major dictionary. *Screeched* is the longest one-syllable English word. *Rhythms* is the longest English word that does not contain *a, e, i, o, or u*.
- *Strength* is the only eight-letter English word that contains only one vowel. *Indivisibility* is the only English word in which one vowel occurs six times.
- *Almost* is the shortest English word whose letters all appear in alphabetical order.
- *Bookkeeper* is the only English word that contains three consecutive sets of double letters. *Deeded* is the only English word consisting of two letters used three times each.
- *Dreamt* is the only English word that ends in *-mt*. *Tremendous, horrendous, stupendous,* and *hazardous* are the only English words that end in *-dous*. *Vacuum, continuum,* and *residuum* are the only English words that contain *uu*.
- *Queue* is the only English word whose pronunciation does not change when its last four letters are removed.

This page intentionally left blank

Building Vocabulary for College

This page intentionally left blank



Building Vocabulary for College

Seventh Edition

R. Kent Smith

Houghton Mifflin Harcourt Publishing Company

Boston • New York

Executive Publisher: Patricia Coryell
Senior Sponsoring Editor: Joann Kozyrev
Senior Marketing Manager: Tom Ziolkowski
Discipline Product Manager: Giuseppina Daniel
Development Editor: Amy Gibbons
Associate Project Editor: Carrie Parker
Art and Design Manager: Jill Haber
Cover Design Director: Tony Saizon
Senior Photo Editor: Jennifer Meyer Dare
Senior Composition Buyer: Chuck Dutton
New Title Project Manager: James Lonergan
Editorial Associate: Daisuke Yasutake
Marketing Assistant: Bettina Chiu
Editorial Assistant: Jill Clark

Cover image: © Travis Foster Illustration

Copyright © 2009 by Houghton Mifflin Harcourt Publishing Company. All rights reserved.

No part of this work may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, or by any information storage or retrieval system without the prior written permission of Houghton Mifflin Harcourt Publishing Company unless such copying is expressly permitted by federal copyright law. Address inquiries to College Permissions, Houghton Mifflin Harcourt Publishing Company, 222 Berkeley Street, Boston, MA 02116-3764.

Printed in the U.S.A.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2008926619

Instructor's Annotated Edition

ISBN-10: 0-618-97959-X

ISBN-13: 978-0-618-97959-2

For orders, use student text ISBNs

ISBN-10: 0-618-97905-0

ISBN-13: 978-0-618-97905-9

123456789- CRW -12 11 10 09 08

To the Instructor ix

To the Student xii

PART ONE Word Parts and Challenging Words **1**

Introduction 1

Chapter 1 6

Word Parts: sta, co, col, com, con, cor, il, im, in, ir, de, er, or, ist, pre, re, ex, mono, un 6

Challenging Words: stature, compliance, incongruous, debilitate, hedonist, precocious, replicate, extricate, monomania, unseemly 10

Chapter 2 17

Word Parts: sub, pro, uni, inter, mis, dis, ob, op, ten, tion, logy 17

Challenging Words: subterfuge, proclivity, universally, interim, misconstrue, dissipate, obstreperous, tentative, correlation, anthropology 21

Chapter 3 29

Word Parts: able, ible, a, an, super, trans, poly, ver, log, ism, chron, post 29

Challenging Words: culpable, apathy, superfluous, transition, polychromatic, veracity, epilogue, nepotism, chronic, posthumously 33

Chapter 4 42

Word Parts: bio, tele, auto, eu, ante, rect, fid, equ, pan, sym, syn 42

Challenging Words: biopsy, telepathy, autonomy, euphemism, antediluvian, rectify, infidelity, equivocal, panacea, syndrome 46

Chapter 5 54

Word Parts: phil, mal, spec, omni, hyper, anti, voc, vok, bi, path, ben 54

Challenging Words: philanthropy, malicious, specter, omnipotent, hypertension, antithesis, vociferous, bilingual, empathy, benign 58

REVIEW TEST, CHAPTERS 1–5 66

Chapter 6 73

Word Parts: fin, geo, bell, hydro, hydr, ambi, amphi, less, hem, intra, intro, man, derm, dermis 73

Challenging Words: finale, geopolitics, belligerent, hydrology, ambivalence, dauntless, hemostat, introspection, manhandle, dermatology 77

Chapter 7 85

Word Parts: bon, boun, multi, hypo, neo, ful, ous, non, aud, extra, ultra, temp, ward 85

Challenging Words: bounteous, multifaceted, hypochondria, neophyte, acrimonious, nondescript, audible, extraneous, contemporary, wayward 89

Chapter 8 97

Word Parts: ann, enn, gram, graph, phon, mor, mort, pos, cap, dia, ness, hetero, homo 97

Challenging Words: annuity, graphology, cacophony, moribund, composure, capricious, diaphanous, blandness, heterogeneous, homogeneous 101

Chapter 9 109

Word Parts: contra, contro, counter, psych, semi, dic, meter, metr, terr, anthrop, fore, se, therm 109

Challenging Words: contraband, psychedelic, semicentennial, malediction, altimeter, terrain, misanthrope, foreboding, sedition, hypothermia 113

Chapter 10 123

Word Parts: aster, astro, peri, cred, em, en, itis, macro, magn, the, pseud, vid, vis, gen 123

Challenging Words: astronautics, peripatetic, credence, embroil, neuritis, magnanimous, monotheism, pseudonym, vis-à-vis, generic 127

REVIEW TEST, CHAPTERS 6–10 136

Chapter 11 143

Word Parts: ped, pod, micro, scrib, scrip, port, arch, cent, ven, vent, cide, poten, leg 143

Challenging Words: podiatry, microbiology, proscribe, portage, archetype, centenarian, convene, genocide, potency, legacy 147

Chapter 12 156

Word Parts: sol, polis, urb, ish, ly, age, ance, ence, ship, tract, circum, onym, photo, dem 156

Challenging Words: soliloquy, megalopolis, fetish, ostensibly, abeyance, retraction, circumspect, acronym, photosynthesis, demagogue 160

Chapter 13 169

Word Parts: ac, dys, err, medi, be, claim, clam, greg, al, ic, ize 169

Challenging Words: exacerbate, dystrophy, aberration, medieval, bereft, clamorous, gregarious, colloquial, sophomoric, ostracize 173

Chapter 14 182

Challenging Words: alienation, collateral, deleterious, felicitous, hypothetical, immutable, impeccable, impunity, gullible, trepidation 182

Chapter 15 189

Challenging Words: debacle, deprivation, garrulous, meticulous, nebulous, sagacious, specious, redundant, repudiate, viable 189

Chapter 16 196

Challenging Words: catharsis, dearth, guile, lethargy, affinity, affluence, dichotomy, enigma, banal, clandestine 196

Chapter 17 205

Challenging Words: cogent, rationalize, sordid, eclectic, usurp, inundate, parochial, perfunctory, acquiesce, ephemeral 205

REVIEW TEST, CHAPTERS 11–17 213

PART TWO Academic Terms 221

Introduction 221

Chapter 18 • Literature and Composition 222

Chapter 19 • Oral Communication 233

Chapter 20 • Psychology 245

Chapter 21	• Sociology	258
Chapter 22	• United States History and Political Science	270
Chapter 23	• Law	282

REVIEW TEST, CHAPTERS 18–23 **294**

Chapter 24	• Business and Economics	301
Chapter 25	• Mathematics	314
Chapter 26	• Biological Sciences	330
Chapter 27	• Physical Sciences	344
Chapter 28	• Computer Science	361
Chapter 29	• Medicine	375

REVIEW TEST, CHAPTERS 24–29 **384**

Appendix A	391
Appendix B	396
Index for Word Parts	398
Index for Challenging Words	399
Index for Academic Terms	400
Index for Mastering Confusing Words	402

To the Instructor

College English instructors, like English instructors at all levels, are keenly aware of the strong correlation between the breadth of students' vocabulary and their academic performance. However, given the reality that students often take college reading, writing, and study skills courses for only one or two semesters, it can be challenging for instructors to find adequate time for vocabulary concerns. *Building Vocabulary for College* was conceived and developed as a practical, rewarding, and efficient means for helping students gain the general and specialized vocabulary that they need to flourish academically, both in English and in other courses.

The word parts, challenging words, and academic terms featured in *Building Vocabulary for College* were selected based on a thorough consultation of numerous textbooks, standardized tests, dictionaries and other reference books, journals and periodicals, and college instructors and students. Through the years, they have enabled thousands of high-school, college-preparatory, community-college, and four-year college students to dramatically improve their vocabularies.

NEW TO THE SEVENTH EDITION

The following new features have made *Building Vocabulary for College* even more student- and instructor-friendly.

- **A streamlined organization** (twenty-nine chapters total) now covers *Word Parts* and related *Challenging Words* (Part One) in the same chapter to emphasize the connection between them and combines all *Academic Terms* (Part Two) from a single discipline into one chapter.
- **An updated design** with color accents, descriptive exercise headings, and photos and other visuals illustrating selected terms enhances the text's visual appeal and pedagogical utility.
- **A new mathematics chapter** (Chapter 25), added in response to instructor requests, familiarizes students with the terms and symbols used in introductory mathematics courses.
- **New, varied, and engaging cloze passages** in every chapter allow students to assess their comprehension and progress while practicing using new vocabulary in an interesting context.
- **New Featured Word boxes** in every chapter present the origin and connotation of a word from the chapter, family words (such as “caprice” and “capriciously” for “capricious”), and an associated image to serve as a memory aid.
- **New Mastering Confusing Words boxes** in every chapter help students master the distinctions between frequently-confused pairs of words such as *accept/except* and *affect/effect* with the aid of sample sentences and practice exercises.

- **New cumulative reviews** featuring crossword puzzles and a variety of other exercise types, including analogies, are included after Chapters 5, 10, 17, 23, and 29.
- **Numerous revisions to sentences and exercises** throughout the text enhance students' learning and retention of individual word parts, challenging words, and academic terms.

ORGANIZATION AND CONTENT

Each of the seventeen chapters in **Part One** features ten common word parts (prefixes, suffixes, and roots) and ten college-level challenging words containing these word parts. Each word part and challenging word is introduced in two sentences that offer context clues as to its meaning. Visual aids accompanying selected words provide additional clues. A multiple-choice question after each pair of sentences gives students an immediate opportunity to use the context clues to determine the meaning of the word part or challenging word. Consistently structured exercises—including matching, fill-in, and multiple-choice exercises as well as cloze passages and prompts for writing original definitions—provide abundant opportunities for students to enhance and evaluate their understanding. Cumulative review tests cover Chapters 1–5, 6–10, and 11–17.

The twelve chapters in **Part Two** introduce the basic vocabulary terms from a wide range of humanities, science, and social-science disciplines, including literature, U.S. history and political science, psychology, and biology, as well as from more specialized fields such as law, computer science, and medicine, that students are likely to encounter in introductory courses in these areas. As with the vocabulary in Part One, each term in Part Two is introduced in two sentences that provide students with additional opportunities to practice using context clues, and selected terms are accompanied by visuals. An engaging blend of exercises structured similarly to those in Part One reinforces the definitions. There are cumulative reviews for Chapters 18–23 and 24–29.

Indexes for the word parts, challenging words, and academic terms, as well as appendices covering parts of speech and tips for using the dictionary, are included at the end of the text.

ANCILLARIES

Building Vocabulary for College Annotated Instructor's Edition

The *Building Vocabulary for College Annotated Instructor's Edition* contains on-page answers for all of the chapter exercises in the text.

Building Vocabulary for College Instructor Website (college.hmco.com/pic/smithBVC7e)

The *Building Vocabulary for College* instructor website features suggestions for effectively teaching from this text and a *Test Bank* of additional tests.

Building Vocabulary for College Student Website

(college.hmco.com/pic/smithBVC7e)

The *Building Vocabulary for College* student website provides interactive flashcards for vocabulary terms from the text, additional crossword puzzles, and access to the exercises and resources of *Total Practice Zone*.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The Houghton Mifflin editorial staff, as always, provided me with expert guidance and steadfast support, and I am most appreciative of both. In particular, the skills, dedication, and graciousness of Amy Gibbons, Development Editor, made the work on this new edition a delightful as well as a rewarding experience; her insightful suggestions are incorporated throughout.

My gratitude continues to extend to the reviewers, colleagues, students, and editors whose assistance made possible the previous editions. For this edition, I am especially indebted to the following people for their conscientious feedback and helpful suggestions:

Bonnie Bailey, Arapahoe Community College
Sylvia Boyd, Phillips Community College of the University of
Arkansas—Stuttgart
Kathleen A. Carlson, Brevard Community College
Dorothy D. Chase, Community College of Southern Nevada
Marie G. Eckstrom, Rio Hondo College
Margaret W. Fox, Oregon State University
Laura McCracken, North Seattle Community College
Phyllis Prawl, Laramie County Community College
Betty Raper, Pulaski Technical College
Jeffery L. Siddall, College of DuPage
Marguerite Stark, Monterey Peninsula College
Steve Stewart, West Central Technical College
David A. Strong, Jr., Dyersburg State Community College

Finally, the abiding support and interest I have received from colleagues, students, friends, and family is noted and deeply appreciated.

—R. Kent Smith
vocabteach@gmail.com

To the Student

College success requires you to attend class regularly, follow good study habits, set and achieve short- and long-term goals, complete your assignments on time, maintain contact with your instructors and advisors, and most of all, take responsibility for your own success. It also requires that you develop literacy and thinking skills. But few things are likely to help you as much as you progress through your education as a good vocabulary. (For proof, look no further than the studies that have shown that an extensive vocabulary is associated with outstanding grades.)

The good news is that no one is born with more word knowledge than anyone else—which means that if you are willing to work at it, the benefits of a broad vocabulary can be yours. As an adult, you do have to make a deliberate effort to increase your vocabulary if it is to grow significantly. One way you can achieve this is to read a lot and look up any words you come across that you do not know. Another is to study vocabulary with the aid of a book, preferably one that provides many opportunities for you to actually practice using the words (like this one).

This book is designed to help you increase your vocabulary in a systematic, practical, and interesting way. You are probably already familiar with some of the vocabulary words and terms it contains, but most of them will be new to you. In any event, your vocabulary will only continue to grow as you work through the chapter exercises and review tests. **Part One** will deepen your understanding of common prefixes, suffixes, and roots (also known as *word parts*), which will make it easier for you to decipher the challenging words that are also featured in this part of the book. **Part Two** is devoted to helping you master the academic terms associated with many of the college subjects that you will be required (or will elect) to take.

The more words you learn, the easier it will be to unlock the meaning of other unfamiliar words that you encounter in the future. And with your newly enhanced vocabulary will come greater academic achievements. I wish you much success in that endeavor.

—R. Kent Smith
vocabteach@gmail.com

WORD PARTS: INTRODUCTION

Our vocabularies have two intertwining branches: *recognition* and *expression*. The *recognition* branch includes those words we may not personally use but we know what they mean when we hear them spoken or encounter them in our reading (“frenzy” may be an example); our *expression* branch includes those words we personally use when we speak or write (“dilapidated” may be an example).

Knowledge of word parts can play a vital role in increasing the size of both branches of our vocabularies, and prefixes, suffixes, and roots are the major elements of words. These word parts are defined in this way:

A **prefix** is a word part added at the beginning of a word, and it can dramatically alter a word’s meaning, such as changing a word to its opposite meaning: correct—*incorrect*; regard—*disregard*.

A **suffix** is a word part added at the end of a word. A suffix can change a word’s part of speech: jump (verb)—*jumper* (noun); poison (noun)—*poisonous* (adjective), and knowing a word’s part of speech can contribute to your understanding of its definition:

An *ohmmeter* is needed to reassure electric resistance. (The suffix *-er* indicates *ohmmeter* is a noun, and this knowledge, coupled with the sentence’s context, makes clear that *ohmmeter* is an instrument to measure electric resistance.)

A **root** is the base part of a word that conveys the bulk of the word’s meaning. A prefix and a suffix can be attached to a root to form variants of the root: *in-* (a prefix meaning “not”) + *cred* (a root meaning “believe”) + *-ible* (a suffix meaning “capable of”) = *incredible* (not capable of being believed).

Although word parts are usually consistent in their meaning, this isn’t always the case. For example, *pre* means “before” in *preview* and *precaution*, but not in *precise* or *precious*; nevertheless, prefixes, suffixes, and roots are sufficiently consistent in their meanings to make it definitely worthwhile to learn their usual meanings. This knowledge will enable you to unlock unfamiliar words that you encounter in a reading assignment, such as “monolithic.” When you know the prefix *mono-* means “one” and the root *lith* means “block of stone,” and the suffix *-ic* means “having the characteristic of,” you will understand that “monolithic” refers to an object made from a single block of stone, or, if used in a general sense, to something that is massive, rigid, and uniform throughout.

Obviously, the ability to analyze unfamiliar words in the preceding way, referred to as **word analysis**, depends on a comprehensive understanding of prefixes, suffixes, and roots, an understanding you will have an opportunity to acquire in **Part One**.

STUDYING THE WORD PARTS

- Carefully read the two sentences illustrating the meaning of each word part; in some instances, more than one word part is underlined because it is one you have studied in a previous chapter.
- Then select what you believe is the correct meaning for the word part by writing either **a** or **b** in the space provided.

DOING THE EXERCISES

- After you have studied the word parts in the preceding manner, follow the directions for completing the chapter's four sets of exercises for the word parts.

CHALLENGING WORDS: INTRODUCTION

Mastering the definitions of the challenging words in each chapter will contribute to your ability to comprehend college-level material because these words frequently appear in textbooks, newspapers, periodicals, and standardized tests. You will have an opportunity to learn these words by applying your knowledge of the word parts previously studied and by using context clues, that is, by studying the relationship between a challenging word and the words surrounding it. Becoming familiar with these types of context clues will prove particularly helpful to you now and in the future.

- **Direct Definition**

It's rare these days to see anyone wear a *monocle*, an eyeglass for just one eye. *Intrinsic motivation* is a desire for action coming from within an individual. (Both sentences provide straightforward definitions of the italicized words.)

- **Indirect Definition**

Although the pain is not intense, it is *chronic*, having bothered me for the past two months.

Her desire for financial security, she realized, was not a sufficient rationale for accepting his marriage proposal.

(In the first sentence, "for the past two months" indicates that *chronic* describes a condition lasting a long time; in the second sentence, "not a sufficient *rationale*" suggests that *rationale* is a reason or a motive.)

- **Examples**

Arthropods, such as crabs and lobsters, live in water.

Unrestricted television viewing can have *deleterious* effects on children, including sluggishness and insensitivity.

(In the first sentence, the examples of "crabs and lobsters" indicate that *arthropods* are animals with a hard outer covering and jointed legs. In the second

sentence, “sluggishness and insensitivity” suggest that *deleterious* describes something undesirable or even harmful.)

■ Synonyms

The *arbitrator*, or judge, ruled in favor of the club owners.

As a result, the players were *irate*; in other words, they were furious.

(In the first sentence, “or” makes it clear that *arbitrator* and *judge* are synonyms, that is, words with similar meanings. In the second sentence, “in other words” makes it obvious that *irate* and *furious* are also synonyms.)

■ Antonyms

Early in her career, she was careless in her public remarks, but today she is much more *discreet*.

Although the mayor was *churlish* yesterday, he was pleasant and agreeable at today’s news conference.

(In the first sentence, “but” indicates *careless* and *discreet* are antonyms, that is, words with opposite meanings. In the second sentence, “Although” signifies *churlish* has an opposite meaning to those of *pleasant* and *agreeable*.)

■ Key Phrases Plus Knowledge of Word Parts

The military leaders who seized control of the government intended to rule with absolute authority, but their attempt to subjugate the country eventually led to their overthrow.

(The phrase “intended to rule with absolute authority” and knowing that *sub-* means “under” provide clues for understanding *subjugate*, which means “to put under authority.”)

Infidelity is the only grounds for divorce in that country.

(The phrase “only grounds for divorce” and knowing *in-* means “not” and *fid* means “faith” provide the clues for understanding *infidelity*, or “unfaithfulness.”)

Specific context clues like the ones in the preceding examples are not always present to help unlock the meaning of an unfamiliar word. When that is the case, a reasonable inference about the unknown word can often be made by concentrating on what is being said about the subject of the sentence and by identifying the word’s part of speech. Here is an example of this technique:

Bereft of money, friends, and jobs, numerous immigrants struggled to survive in the New World.

(The subject of the sentence is *immigrants* who “struggled to survive,” probably because they were “*bereft* of money, friends, and jobs.” *Bereft* is an adjective, so concentrating on what is being said about the subject, *immigrants*, we can infer *bereft* means “lacking”; and the sentence does make sense if you use *lacking* instead of *bereft*: “*Lacking* money, friends, and jobs, numerous immigrants struggled to survive in the New World.”)

LIMITATIONS OF CONTEXT CLUES

Although using context clues is generally reliable and is the most practical way of unlocking the meanings of unfamiliar words, this approach has limitations. Specifically, context clues

- often reveal vague rather than precise meanings;
- usually reveal a single meaning, whereas many words have several meanings;
- are sometimes absent or too obscure to be helpful;
- seldom provide certainty of definition.

It should be clear, then, that there are times when you should consult a dictionary (see **Appendix B**, pages 396–397), particularly when you need complete and precise meanings of words or when context clues are lacking or insufficient in a sentence.

STUDYING THE CHALLENGING WORDS

- Take advantage of pictures and other visual aids that may be available to acquaint you with some of the challenging words.
- Familiarize yourself with each word’s pronunciation, part of speech, and definition, noting that (1) a word part you have studied is underlined; (2) the word is presented phonetically in parentheses with a space separating each syllable; (3) the accented syllable is printed in capital letters; (4) vowels with long sounds have a line over them; (5) the schwa sound—*uh*—in unaccented syllables is represented by ə, which resembles an upside-down e; and (6) the word’s part of speech is presented (see **Appendix B**, beginning on page 396, if you need to review parts of speech).
- Carefully read the two sentences illustrating the appropriate use of each word; be alert to the types of context clues that have been discussed in addition to applying your knowledge of the underlined word part or parts.
- Select your definition for each challenging word by writing either **a** or **b** in the space provided.

DOING THE EXERCISES

- Follow the directions for completing the chapter’s four sets of exercises for the challenging words, including those for Featured Word and Mastering Confusing Words.
- Note that the third set of exercises always ends with three analogy questions. **Analogies are pairs of words with a similar relationship**, so the analogy questions require you to study a pair of words to discover the relationship between them. Then, choosing from several options, you are to select the pair having the same relationship in the first pair of words. Consider this example:

failure : ridicule :: success : praise

Analogies are read and understood in this manner: **failure is to ridicule as success is to praise**. Now think about the relationship between the first pair of words; that is, if you fail, people may ridicule you. Notice that the same type of relationship exists between success and praise; that is, if you succeed, people may praise you.

Keep in mind, then, that the relationship of the second pair of words must *always* be the *same* as it is in the first pair, as in these examples (: represents *is to* and :: represents *as*):

Similar meanings	café: restaurant :: clothes : garments
Opposite meanings	cloudy: clear :: straight : crooked
Part to whole	toe: foot :: finger : hand
Place and activity	mall : shopping :: highway : driving
General to specific	car : Ford :: sport : basketball
Noun and its association	clown : silly :: winter : cold
Adjective and its association	generous : good :: tricky : unfair

As the preceding examples demonstrate, the key to doing well on the analogy questions is to discover the relationship between the two words given, then to select the pair of words having a similar relationship.

FEATURED WORD

This brief component of each chapter presents interesting information about one of the more intriguing words you have just studied. Specifically, you will learn of the featured word's history, words in its family, and words and images associated with it. You will then be given another opportunity to demonstrate your mastery of this word by writing an original sentence featuring it.

MASTERING CONFUSING WORDS

This component is another bonus of each chapter. It focuses on words often confused with one another—*affect/effect*, *council/counsel*, *desert/dessert*, and many others. However, the brief but practical information and exercises presented in this concluding section of each chapter will enable you to quickly and easily learn the distinctions between such frequently misused words.

REVIEW TESTS

Review tests are included in Part One. In addition to the type of exercises featured in the chapters, the review tests also include word-completion passages and crossword puzzles. If you periodically review the chapters you have completed, you should do well on the review tests.

Learning Word Parts from Context Clues

1. sta

- My aunt's *station* in life seems to be taking care of her elderly parents.
- The *statue* in the park is in honor of all military veterans from this community.

sta is closest in meaning to (a) position (b) fame _____ ^a _____ .

2. co, col, com, con, cor

- In an impressive display of civic pride, the downtown merchants *cooperated* when they remodeled their storefronts in the same style.
- This summer, three of my friends and I have decided to *collaborate* in painting houses.
- Luis Rodriguez, my *companion* in college, is now a dentist in Minnesota.
- George Washington and Benjamin Franklin were *contemporaries*.
- Coughing is positively *correlated* to smoking.

co, col, com, con, and cor mean to (a) separate (b) combine _____ ^b _____ .

3. il, im, in, ir

- Did you know it's *illegal* for businesses to open on Sundays in my community?
- The day after playing softball for the first time this spring, I was practically *immobile* from soreness.
- The celebrity was *inconspicuous* at the football game because she was wearing sunglasses and a heavy long coat as well as a hat.
- The judge dismissed the evidence as *irrelevant*.

il, im, in, and ir change a word to its (a) original (b) opposite meaning _____ ^b _____ .

4. de

- How much does a new car *depreciate* in value the first year?
- The trees that had been toppled by storms through the years were in various stages of *decomposition*.

de means move (a) toward (b) away from _____ ^b _____ .

5. er, or, ist

- My cousin is a *rancher* in Montana.
- Adele would like to become a high school *counselor*.
- Vic is fun to be around because he's such a *humorist*.

er, or, and ist refer to a person who (a) does (b) doesn't do what the base word indicates _____^a.

6. pre

- After the *previews* were shown, the feature movie began.
- The staff had *prearranged* the room for the banquet, so the guests were able to be seated immediately.

pre means (a) before (b) after _____^a.

7. re

- Mr. Lucas had to *revarnish* the table after it was stained by candle drippings.
- The Rapozas had such a good vacation in British Columbia that they are planning to *revisit* this Canadian province next year.

re means to (a) avoid (b) repeat _____^b.

8. ex

- The dentist reluctantly decided he would have to *extract* the patient's tooth.
- Oranges, which are shipped in abundance from Florida and California, are a major *export* of the United States.

ex means (a) in (b) out _____^b.

9. mono

- The term *monogamy* means having only one wife or husband.
- Working on the assembly line was *monotonous* work because I did the same thing hour after hour.

mono refers to (a) one (b) many _____^a.

10. un

- The defense lawyer contended the accident was caused by the waiter, so he feels it would be *unjust* to make his client pay damages.
- The cows wandered out of the pasture when the gate was left *unlatched*.

un means (a) with (b) not _____^b.

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each definition with the word part it defines; some definitions are used more than once.

<u> f </u>	1. sta	a. one
<u> h </u>	2. co, col, com, con, cor	b. person who does something
<u>c o r d</u>	3. il, im, in, ir	c. not; opposite
<u>c o r d</u>	4. de	d. do the opposite of; away from
<u> b </u>	5. er, or, ist	e. before
<u> e </u>	6. pre	f. stand; position
<u> i </u>	7. re	g. out
<u> g </u>	8. ex	h. with; together
<u> a </u>	9. mono	i. again
<u>c o r d</u>	10. un	

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

sta in ist re mono
con de pre ex un

1. The belief in only one God is known as mono theism.
2. The doctor con curred with his colleague's diagnosis.
3. I hope Frank and Teresa will re tell their hilarious story about their first camping experience.
4. A(n) in competent mechanic attempted to fix my car, much to my regret.
5. Did the optometr ist say you needed glasses?
6. The judge ordered the government official to de classify the document labeled "Top Secret."
7. People are guilty of pre judice when they make judgments before they know all of the facts.
8. Vickie rides a(n) sta tionary bike for exercise.
9. Fortunately, the window was un broken after it suddenly slammed shut.
10. After the baseball struck Jake in the chest, breathing was painful for him when he ex haled.

Matching Words and Definitions

Use your knowledge of the underlined word parts to match the definitions and words.

<u>h</u>	1. rejuvenate	a. to free from blame
<u>d</u>	2. <u>u</u> nchaste	b. person's standing or condition
<u>f</u>	3. <u>d</u> efection	c. not able to read or write
<u>j</u>	4. suffrag <u>i</u> st	d. not pure; corrupted
<u>a</u>	5. <u>e</u> xonerate	e. railway system using a single rail
<u>g</u>	6. <u>co</u> municable	f. abandonment of one's duty or loyalty
<u>b</u>	7. <u>s</u> tatus	g. capable of being transmitted, such as a disease, when people come together
<u>e</u>	8. <u>mo</u> norail	h. make fresh again; breathe new life into
<u>c</u>	9. <u>i</u> lliterate	i. an introduction appearing before the main message
<u>i</u>	10. <u>pr</u> eamble	j. person concerned with voting rights

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write the definitions of the words after noting the underlined word parts and studying the context of the sentences; if you are still uncertain, feel free to consult a dictionary.

Typical responses:

1. A stabilizer was installed to prevent the machine from rolling about.

stabilizer _____ device that keeps something from moving

2. A number of supervisors were asked to accept demotions as a cost-saving step.

demotions _____ lower positions with less pay

3. Our long-awaited trip had an inauspicious start because it started to sleet just as we drove out of our driveway.

inauspicious _____ not favorable; not promising

4. According to the game warden, trout, bass, and perch can cohabit in the same body of water.

cohabit _____ live together

5. Most drive-in movies became defunct in the 1970s.

defunct _____ no longer in business or in existence

6. *Narcissists* never miss an opportunity to gaze fondly at themselves when they come across a mirror or a reflecting store window.

narcissists _____ *people who are in love with themselves*

7. My *predecessor* won three league championships in five years, so I knew I would be under a lot of pressure when I accepted this coaching position.

predecessor _____ *person coming before*

8. Some homeowners were so upset that they threatened legal action if their homes were not *reappraised*.

reappraised _____ *reevaluated*

9. The construction crew will *excavate* the property to put in a new drainage system.

excavate _____ *to dig or scoop out*

10. The game was canceled because the rain had been *unremitting*.

unremitting _____ *continuous; unending*

Learning Challenging Words from Context Clues

1. **stature** (STACH əɾ)—noun

- My brother's *stature* as an outstanding athlete accounts for much of his popularity in our small community.
- Her *stature* in the community rose even higher when she was appointed principal of the new high school.

stature has to do with (a) regard (b) health _____ *a* _____.

2. **compliance** (kəm PLĪ əns)—noun

- Because the restaurant was not in *compliance* with the state's fire code, it was closed while the necessary changes were made.
- The judge's decision was that the defendant was in *compliance* with the terms of the contract.

compliance has to do with (a) praise (b) obedience _____ *b* _____.

3. **incongruous** (in KONG GROO əs)—adjective

- Juan’s friends think it’s *incongruous* that he can’t stand the sight of blood even though he’s planning to become a doctor.
- It’s *incongruous* to me that Lucia, who never goes out of her way to make friends, is often the person others turn to for advice.

incongruous is related to (a) inconsistency (b) intelligence _____ ^a .

4. **debilitate** (də BIL ə tāt)—verb

- Fad diets not only don’t work, but they may also *debilitate* one’s health.
- Glenn’s hard life as a cross-country trucker began to *debilitate* his health when he was in his early forties.

debilitate means (a) weakening (b) strengthening _____ ^a .

5. **hedonist** (HĒ don ist)—noun

- When John first went to college, he became such a *hedonist* he almost flunked out after his first semester as his endless partying gave him little time for studying.
- The movie star has the reputation of being a *hedonist* because she is often pictured in newspapers and magazines in nightclubs and gambling casinos with other celebrities.

A **hedonist** is best known for seeking (a) support (b) fun _____ ^b .

6. **precocious** (prə KŌshəs)—adjective

- Mozart was a *precocious* child as he was giving piano concerts and composing classical music before he was ten years old.
- My grandfather thinks his three-year-old granddaughter is *precocious* because she can count to twenty, but I don’t think such ability is unusual for a child her age.

precocious has to do with demonstrating ability at an (a) early stage of life (b) unusual place _____ ^a .

7. **replicate** (REP lə kāt)—verb

- The researchers *replicated* the experiment many times before they were sure the same results would occur.
- Is it legal to *replicate* a couple of my favorite CDs so I can give copies to my friends?

replicate is associated with (a) starting (b) copying _____ ^b .

8. **extricate** (EK strə kāt)—verb

- Pete says the only way he can *extricate* his car from the ditch is by calling a tow truck.
- Justin *extricated* himself from the embarrassing situation by pretending he had to make a telephone call.

extricate is associated with (a) separating (b) repairing _____ ^a .

9. **monomania** (MON ə MĀ nē ə)—noun

- My cousin is suffering from *monomania* as he spends all of his time trying to avoid germs.
- I decided to limit myself to no more than one hour per day on my computer as I was starting to have a *monomania* about playing computer games.

monomania is similar to an (a) obsession (b) obligation _____ ^a .

10. **unseemly** (un SĒM lē)—adjective

- Didn't you think it was *unseemly* of her to ask why he and his wife were divorcing?
- Using vulgar language is particularly *unseemly* when children are present.

unseemly means being (a) bold (b) discourteous _____ ^b .

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

stature	incongruous	hedonist	replicate	monomania
compliance	debilitate	precocious	extricate	unseemly
<u>precocious</u>	1.	advanced in mind or skills at an early age		
<u>monomania</u>	2.	an intense preoccupation with one subject		
<u>extricate</u>	3.	free from a difficult situation		
<u>debilitate</u>	4.	to make weak or feeble		
<u>unseemly</u>	5.	unbecoming, impolite, inappropriate		
<u>hedonist</u>	6.	one who seeks pleasure above all else		
<u>replicate</u>	7.	copy, duplicate		
<u>incongruous</u>	8.	out of step with one another, not in agreement		
<u>compliance</u>	9.	act of cooperating or obeying		
<u>stature</u>	10.	rank, standing, position		

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

stature incongruous hedonist replicate monomania
compliance debilitate precocious extricate unseemly

1. At the age of seven, Anders displayed precocious ability to handle many of the chores associated with operating his grandfather's farm.
2. Ancient Romans seldom bathed because they believed frequent baths would debilitate their strength.
3. I hope I'm not being unseemly by asking, but how much do you pay per month for renting this dump?
4. Gretchen is constantly checking to see whether she left her stove on; she's showing all the signs of monomania when it comes to this concern.
5. Austin, Texas, enjoys the stature of being a wonderful city in which to live.
6. The golfer had difficulty trying to extricate his ball from the sand trap.
7. After extensive renovations, the majestic old inn was finally in compliance with the state's new safety code.
8. Ron was quite a(n) hedonist in his younger days, but he's given up his wild ways since he got married.
9. Ashley finds it incongruous that her roommate complains all the time about her boyfriend, yet she continues to go out with him.
10. The investigators were attempting to replicate the conditions existing before the accident to see if they could discover the cause of the tragedy.

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- b 1. The *opposite* of **compliance** is
- a. obedience
 - b. defiance
 - c. acceptance
 - d. submission
- a 2. The *opposite* of **debilitate** is
- a. improve
 - b. ruin
 - c. inspect
 - d. deceive

- c 3. The *opposite* of **extricate** is
a. trust
b. explain
c. hold
d. free
- d 4. **Incongruous** suggests
a. smoothness
b. stubbornness
c. dishonesty
d. disharmony
- b 5. **Replicate** suggests
a. exhaustion
b. duplication
c. destruction
d. exception
- a 6. At what age is someone most likely to be **precocious**?
a. eight
b. eighteen
c. forty-eight
d. seventy-eight
- a 7. If people behave in an **unseemly** manner, they act
a. inappropriately
b. humorously
c. intelligently
d. politely
- d 8. **hedonist : pleasure ::** a. teacher : school
b. athlete : joy
c. comedian : crying
d. judge : seriousness
- b 9. **stature : prominence ::** a. fame : wealth
b. reputation : importance
c. size : height
d. desire : acquire
- b 10. **monomania : sensible ::** a. fad : popularity
b. foolishness : reasonable
c. disturbance : unpleasantness
d. nonsense : ridiculous

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

compliance	replicate	extricate	debilitate	unseemly
stature	monomania	precocious	incongruous	hedonist

JEFF

With his ability to read and to play the guitar when he was only three years old, Jeff was a(n) precocious youngster, but, unfortunately, also a headstrong one. In fact, by the time he reached his mid-twenties, Jeff had become a confirmed hedonist as his only apparent goal in life was that of self-gratification, regardless of whether this goal led him to commit illegal or immoral acts. As a result, Jeff's monomania for "pleasure only" eventually landed him in prison. When he was released on parole after two years, Jeff was soon discovered not to be in compliance with the conditions of his release, so he was sent back to prison to serve his full sentence. Not surprisingly, his once respectable stature in the small community where he lived was left in tatters.

Some of us who were high-school classmates of Jeff suspected his disgraceful, unseemly life may have been due to his failure to replicate the impressive successes of his older brother. But whatever the cause of his shameful conduct, Jeff's behavior seemed simply incongruous to his heartbroken parents, whose other children were highly respected and successful.

His family, relatives, and friends still cling to the hope that Jeff will someday extricate himself from the destructive hole he now finds himself in and that he will not continue to debilitate his health and future by making "personal pleasure regardless of cost" his sole aim in life.

FEATURED WORD: hedonist

Hedonist—one who believes that pleasure or happiness is the highest good; one who devotes his or her life to pleasure above all else:

- Some historians believe the decline of the Roman Empire began with Nero, who was thought to be mentally unbalanced and more interested in being a hedonist than a wise ruler.

Origin: 1855–1860 <Greek—*hedone*—pleasure

Family words: hedonism (n), hedonistic (adj), hedonistically (adv)

Connotation: *negative*—suggests an *excessive* devotion to pleasure

Image to remember: a playboy

Write an original sentence using *hedonism*:

MASTERING CONFUSING WORDS

advice / advise

advice a noun meaning a suggestion or an opinion:

Ming's advice is never buy a car with more than 30,000 miles on it.

advise a verb meaning to provide suggestions:

Did Professor Morrison advise you to switch your major to biology?

Circle the correct answer:

1. Yasmin appears to be in great shape, so I don't know why anyone would advice / advise her to lose weight.
2. I took my sister's advice / advise and borrowed some money from our parents to pay off my credit card bills.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **advice:** _____
2. **advise:** _____

Learning Word Parts from Context Clues

1. sub

- Because the sergeant was *subordinate* in rank to the lieutenant, he obeyed the order.
- You will have to *submerge* the shirt in some water and bleach to remove the stain.

sub means (a) above (b) below _____ *b* _____ .

2. pro

- My folks have always been *pro-music*, so they are delighted I'm taking guitar lessons.
- The Luthers, who often complain about the property taxes they have to pay, surprised me when they became leading *proponents* for a new community swimming pool.

pro means (a) for (b) against _____ *a* _____ .

3. uni

- Everyone said in *unison*, "Let's go!"
- This clock is *unique* because it is the only one ever made of bamboo.

uni means (a) one (b) many _____ *a* _____ .

4. inter

- Our team plays a number of *intercollegiate* basketball games with California teams.
- A network of *interstate* highways links all sections of our country.

inter means (a) huge (b) between _____ *b* _____ .

5. mis

- A run was scored when the shortstop *misplayed* the ball.
- The cylinders in my car are *misfiring*.

mis is closest in meaning to (a) action (b) inefficiency _____ *b* _____ .

6. dis

- Logan has been working long hours, but that is no excuse for him to be *discourteous* to customers.
- The Mustangs will be at a *disadvantage* in the game because two of their best players are injured.

dis means (a) reverses (b) emphasizes a word's meaning _____ *a* _____ .

7. ob, op

- The lawyer's *objection* to the police officer's testimony was overruled by the judge.
- The Hawkeyes should be a tough *opponent* for the Buckeyes.

ob and **op** mean (a) support (b) against _____ *b* _____ .

8. ten

- The owners of an auto parts store are the *tenants* of the new building on the corner of Oak and Main Streets.
- Students held in *detention* at the high school I attended had to sit quietly for an hour and do homework.

ten relates to (a) keeping (b) rejecting _____ *a* _____ .

9. tion

- Anya is embarrassed about the ticket she received for a speeding *violation*.
- Jackson can't play golf or tennis until the *inflammation* in his right elbow clears up.

tion relates to the (a) condition of (b) improvement of _____ *a* _____ .

10. logy

- *Sociology* is concerned with the systematic study of society.
- *Zoology* is the branch of biology concerned with the animal kingdom.

logy relates to (a) people (b) study _____ *b* _____ .

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each definition with the word part it defines.

_____ <i>h</i> _____	1. sub	a. one
_____ <i>d</i> _____	2. pro	b. not; opposite of
_____ <i>a</i> _____	3. uni	c. to hold
_____ <i>f</i> _____	4. inter	d. for; in favor of
_____ <i>j</i> _____	5. mis	e. study of

<u> b </u>	6. dis	f. between; among
<u> g </u>	7. ob, op	g. against
<u> c </u>	8. ten	h. under
<u> i </u>	9. tion	i. state of; act of; result of
<u> e </u>	10. logy	j. wrong

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

sub uni mis ob ten logy
 pro inter dis op tion

- Mr. Martin presented a moving recita tion of Shakespeare's "Sonnet 29."
- The scuba divers discovered a(n) sub terranean tunnel on the south side of the isolated island.
- Psycho logy is the most interesting subject I've studied so far in college.
- It was difficult to find Filipe because everyone was wearing uni forms.
- The rain ob literated the white lines on the football field.
- The movie star claims he was mis quoted in the newspaper.
- Mr. Perrochi's ten ure as mayor was twelve years, the longest anyone in our community has held that position.
- The audience was served refreshments during the inter lude between the first and second acts.
- Allen had a(n) dis agreement with his parents about his desire to get a job and continue college at night.
- The candidate's record indicates he's pro -labor on most issues, so he should get the support of the industrial states.

Matching Words and Definitions

Use your knowledge of the underlined word parts to match the definitions and words.

<u> e </u>	1. <u>uni</u> lateral	a. wrong name
<u> f </u>	2. etymology	b. something taken for granted
<u> h </u>	3. <u>ob</u> durate	c. under the control of another
<u> b </u>	4. assump <u>tion</u>	d. spokesperson in favor of a cause; leading character in a play

- | | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|---|
| _____ <u>j</u> _____ | 5. <u>dis</u> array | e. relating to one side; performed by only one side |
| _____ <u>c</u> _____ | 6. <u>sub</u> servient | f. study of the history of words |
| _____ <u>a</u> _____ | 7. <u>mis</u> nomer | g. not firm; weak |
| _____ <u>i</u> _____ | 8. <u>inter</u> val | h. stubborn; unyielding |
| _____ <u>d</u> _____ | 9. <u>pro</u> tagonist | i. period between two events |
| _____ <u>g</u> _____ | 10. <u>ten</u> uous | j. not in good order; messy |

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write the definitions of the words after noting the underlined word parts and studying the context of the sentences; if you are still uncertain, feel free to consult a dictionary.

Typical responses:

- The coroner's clear articulation of the technical terms, as well as her precise explanation of what they meant, helped the jury understand what had happened to the victim.

articulation _____ pronunciation that is clear and distinct _____

- The team owners and player representatives finally agreed to have an intermediary appointed to settle their dispute.

intermediary _____ a go-between person selected to settle differences between those in conflict _____

- The career counselor said that audiology is a profession worth considering because numerous studies indicate that hearing loss is becoming a problem for many people in our society.

audiology _____ study of hearing _____

- The military commander insisted the island was tenable against any type of attack the enemy might launch.

tenable _____ capable of being held or defended _____

- Despite pleas, coaxing, and threats, the obdurate youngster refused to open his mouth for the dentist.

obdurate _____ stubborn; defiant _____

6. The *miscreant* was given an additional year in prison for contempt of court.

miscreant _____ *criminal; villain; unprincipled person*

7. Instead of having two legislative branches of government, a few states have a *unicameral* legislature.

unicameral _____ *having one legislative branch*

8. Our daughter was *submissive* throughout her elementary school years, but once she was in middle school, she gradually became rebellious.

submissive _____ *obedient; agreeable*

9. The clerk remained *dispassionate* while the angry customer ranted and raved at him.

dispassionate _____ *showing no emotion*

10. Because he was unable to attend the meeting, Jim officially authorized Miguel to serve as his *proxy*.

proxy _____ *substitute; representative*

Learning Challenging Words from Context Clues

1. **subterfuge** (SUB tər fūj)—noun

- The athletic director made it clear to the coaches and members of the booster club that no *subterfuge*, such as money or cars, should be used in the recruitment of athletes.
- Alexandra and her brother used lies and other types of *subterfuge* to surprise their parents on their twenty-fifth wedding anniversary.

subterfuge has to do with (a) generosity (b) deceit _____ *b* .

2. **proclivity** (prō KLIV ə tē)—noun

- A *proclivity* for desserts of all kinds makes it hard for me to stay on my diet.
- Luke's driving license was suspended because of his *proclivity* for driving too fast.

proclivity means (a) likeness for (b) suspicion of _____ *a* .

3. **universally** (ū nə VUR sə lē)—adverb

- The psychologist said acceptance and love are *universally* longed for by all people everywhere.
- The assassination of President John F. Kennedy in 1963 was *universally* mourned throughout the world.

universally means (a) widely (b) sadly _____ *a* .

4. **interim** (in tər im)—noun

- In the *interim* between graduating from high school and serving in the Marines, Javier worked in a plastics factory.
- Nicole plans to own a restaurant of her own someday, but in the *interim* she will continue working as the chief chef at the Green Lantern Cafe.

interim is associated with (a) consequently (b) meanwhile _____ *b* .

5. **misconstrue** (MIS kən STROO)—verb

- Please don't *misconstrue* what I'm saying; I would like to help you, but I simply don't have time.
- Because the elderly clerk was somewhat hard of hearing, he will sometimes *misconstrue* what items customers ask for.

misconstrue indicates a person has (a) gotten the wrong idea (b) been foolish *a* .

6. **dissipate** (DIS ə pāt)—verb

- Warmer temperatures caused the snow to *dissipate* by the end of the week.
- The tension that had filled the room began to *dissipate* after the instructor told a few jokes.

dissipate means to gradually (a) increase (b) vanish _____ *b* .

7. **obstreperous** (ob STREP ə r ə s)—adjective

- My son had been *obstreperous* all day, so I sent him to bed immediately after supper.
- This horse should be ridden by only experienced riders because he can be extremely *obstreperous* at times.

obstreperous means (a) disobedient (b) sickly _____ *a* .

8. **tentative** (TENT ə tive)—adjective

- Rachel wasn't *tentative* when Brent asked her for a date as she immediately said, "Yes!"
- Mr. Bryson made a *tentative* offer to buy our house; the final decision depends upon whether the bank approves his loan application.

tentative indicates (a) uncertainty (b) confidence _____ *a* .

9. **correlation** (kor ə LĀ shən)—noun

- A study conducted by a researcher at our college indicates a positive *correlation* between students' grades and their extracurricular activities.
- My math teacher said there is a *correlation* between mathematics skills and computer ability, but this relationship isn't as strong as many people seem to think it is.

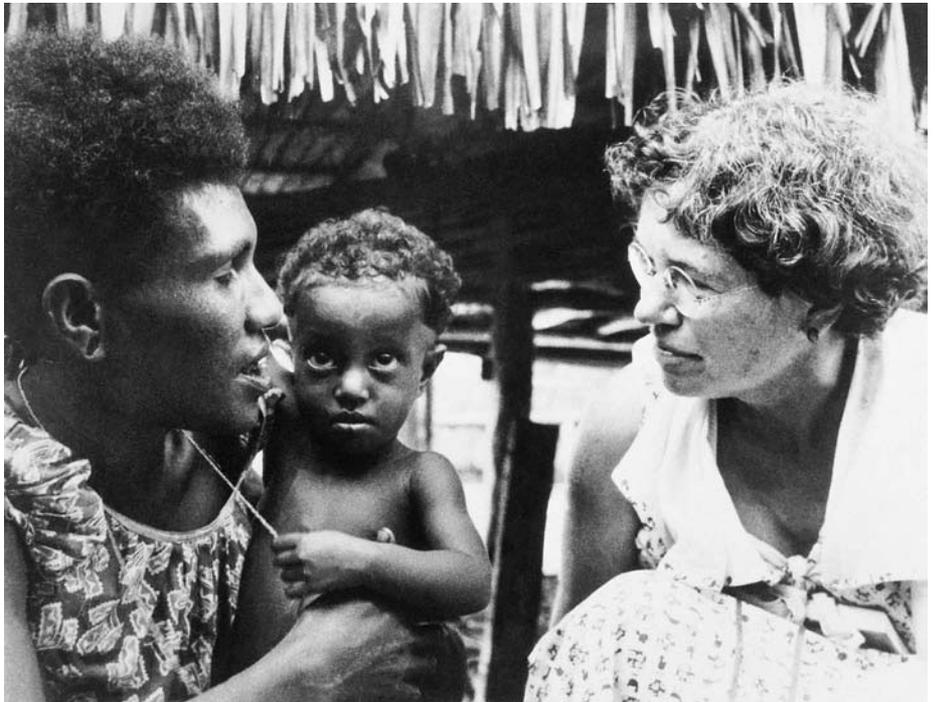
correlation is about (a) connections (b) truths _____ a _____ .

10. **anthropology** (AN thrə POL ə jē)—noun

- In my *anthropology* class we are studying the beginnings of civilization in North Africa.
- You will learn about many cultures in *anthropology*.

anthropology involves the study of (a) the solar system (b) human beings _____ b _____ .

Margaret Mead (1901–1978) was a famous and influential *anthropologist* who studied the people of Samoa and other cultures. (© Bettmann/CORBIS)



Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

subterfuge	universally	misconstrue	obstreperous	correlation
proclivity	interim	dissipate	tentative	anthropology
<u>tentative</u>	1. hesitant, uncertain, not final			
<u>interim</u>	2. intermission, temporary period			
<u>dissipate</u>	3. to fade slowly or disappear			
<u>anthropology</u>	4. study of the origin, culture, and development of human beings			
<u>subterfuge</u>	5. deception, secret evasion of the rules			
<u>universally</u>	6. without exception, everywhere, widespread			
<u>correlation</u>	7. a mutual relationship between two or more things, an orderly connection			
<u>proclivity</u>	8. tendency, inclination, fondness for			
<u>obstreperous</u>	9. disorderly, rowdy, unruly			
<u>misconstrue</u>	10. misunderstand, misinterpret, misjudge			

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

subterfuge	universally	misconstrue	obstreperous	correlation
proclivity	interim	dissipate	tentative	anthropology

1. During the interim between semesters, Don worked at a small hardware store in his hometown.
2. The accountant's subterfuge was discovered by the bank's auditors, and he was eventually convicted of embezzlement.
3. A strong correlation exists between mathematical and navigational skills.
4. We thought the fog would eventually dissipate during the morning hours, but it didn't, so we decided not to drive into town.
5. Dimitri has decided to major in anthropology because of his fascination with early civilizations.
6. The teacher was understandably tense and tired after dealing with a number of obstreperous students throughout the day.
7. He may misconstrue your failure to return his call as an indication you are no longer interested in the job, so I would get in touch with him right away.
8. Our college is universally admired throughout the state for its outstanding music department.

9. Because of Cheung's proclivity for drawing, his high school counselor suggested he might want to consider majoring in art when he enrolled in college.
10. Leigh is unsure what she's going to do this summer, but she's made tentative plans to visit some friends in Minnesota if she earns enough money.

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- d 1. The *opposite* of **tentative** is
a. uncertain
b. hesitant
c. doubtful
d. positive
- a 2. The *opposite* of **misconstrue** is
a. understand
b. disagree
c. cheat
d. help
- c 3. The *opposite* of **proclivity** is
a. fondness for
b. desire for
c. distaste for
d. talent for
- b 4. The word closest in meaning to **interim** is
a. maturity
b. pause
c. pity
d. interference
- b 5. Which of the following is most closely related to **anthropology**?
a. astronomy
b. history
c. psychology
d. chemistry
- a 6. Which of the following is most likely to be **universally** desired?
a. acceptance
b. solitude
c. simplicity
d. thriftiness

- b 7. The word *not* associated with **dissipate** is
 a. diminish
 b. magnify
 c. evaporate
 d. vanish
- a 8. **subterfuge : deception ::** a. abbreviation : shortening
 b. reduction : increasing
 c. expectation : surprise
 d. confession : denial
- d 9. **obstreperous : behavior ::** a. thoughtful : kind
 b. critical : helpful
 c. wealthy : desirable
 d. disobedient : conduct
- c 10. **correlation : disharmony ::** a. spoil : ruin
 b. shame : disgrace
 c. honesty : dishonesty
 d. agreement : cooperation

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

anthropology correlation dissipate interim misconstrue
 obstreperous proclivity subterfuge tentative universally

IDENTITY THEFT

Teenagers, senior citizens, celebrities, school crossing guards, doctors, store clerks, truck drivers, lawyers, college students, and many others from all walks of life have been recent victims of identity theft. This devastating crime is growing not only nationally but also universally as more and more people throughout the world are experiencing the trauma it inflicts. Because of the treacherous subterfuge committed by computer hackers and other unprincipled criminals with a(n) proclivity for thievery, thousands of lives today are in disarray.

Last year's figures relating to identity theft are still incomplete, so only tentative conclusions can presently be drawn based on them; however, there seems to be no doubt in the minds of law authorities who deal with this crime that it is more common than ever. Though these authorities are confident that foolproof methods to prevent identity theft will someday be developed, it is unlikely that such methods will be available soon, so in the interim, these steps are strongly advised:

- Be extremely protective of your Social Security number. In fact, it's a good idea not to carry your Social Security card in your wallet because if you lose it, it will provide the key information a thief needs to get credit cards, passports, and other important documents in your name.
- Never give out your Social Security number over the phone, even if the caller says you have misconstrued his or her intent or becomes downright obstreperous and threatening.
- If people are waiting to use an ATM after you, be sure to place your hand over your PIN so no one can learn your card number.
- Be especially vigilant when using a computer. Order products online from only well-established businesses with a secure website; otherwise, your credit card number will be in jeopardy.
- Never respond to e-mails requesting your bank account, Social Security number, or insurance card numbers. Identity thieves often pose as bank or government employees, so under no circumstances should you ever reveal such personal information.
- Be wary of downloading any type of “free” software, particularly if you must reveal your e-mail password, as your privacy will likely be compromised if you do.
- Carefully examine your credit card statements. If you spot unauthorized charges, call the credit card issuer immediately.
- Should a monthly credit card statement be late by more than a week, call the credit card issuer to make sure someone hasn't diverted your statements to a different address. You can also opt to receive statements via e-mail instead.
- Always shred, not wad up, all receipts and other papers containing personal information. Identity thieves are always on the lookout for any source, including a trash barrel or a dumpster, that may reveal personal information that they can use to their benefit.

A professor of anthropology made news recently when he asserted that identity theft is no bigger a problem today than it was centuries ago; apparently, the professor is unaware of the clear correlation between the growth of modern technology and the increase in today's identity theft. In any instance, this crime will not soon dissipate, so keep in mind the preceding suggestions so that your chances of becoming a victim of identity theft are markedly reduced.

FEATURED WORD: subterfuge

Subterfuge—deception used to avoid a rule, to escape a consequence, to hide something:

- The spy’s successful subterfuge enabled him to steal copies of classified government documents for several years before being caught.

Origin: 1565–1575 <Latin—*subterfugium* (an evasion) and *subterfugere* (to evade, escape, flee by stealth) <*subter* (beneath, secretly) and *fugere* (flee; “fugitive” is also derived from *fugere*)

Connotation: *negative*—associated with deception

Image to remember: a spy

Write an original sentence using *subterfuge*:

MASTERING CONFUSING WORDS

device / devise

device a noun that refers to an object:

A stapler can be a handy device to have on your desk.

devise an action verb meaning to plan, invent, or form in one’s mind:

We need to devise a better way of keeping our basketball from rolling down the hill every time we miss a shot.

Circle the correct answer:

1. I’m sure Noreen can device / devise an effective method of wrapping that package so nothing will be broken.
2. This is an excellent device / devise to use if you have ice on your car’s windshield.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **device:** _____
2. **devise:** _____

Learning Word Parts from Context Clues

1. able, ible

- My folks believe the most *enjoyable* way of traveling is by train.
- The fiddlehead is an *edible*, fernlike plant.

able and **ible** mean (a) capable of (b) incapable of _____ a _____.

2. a, an

- Doug is certainly *atypical* of his brothers; he doesn't enjoy hunting and fishing as they do.
- When the central government was overthrown, no one was able to rule or to enforce the laws, so *anarchy* reigned.

a and **an** give words (a) extra (b) opposite meanings _____ b _____.

3. super

- Tyrone is a respected *supervisor* at the auto plant.
- The new regulations *supersede* the previous zoning restrictions.

super means (a) over (b) below _____ a _____.

4. trans

- Melanie plans to *transfer* to a college in Texas.
- Trucks were used to *transport* the potatoes to market.

trans refers to (a) power (b) change _____ b _____.

5. poly

- Are there any religions that still permit *polygamy*? I would think one husband or wife would be enough!
- Christie is a *polyglot* because she can speak English, French, Spanish, and Italian.

poly refers to (a) foolishness (b) many _____ b _____.

6. ver

- Can you *verify* that this wallet is yours?
- Evidence later confirmed that the young children had given *veracious* testimony at the informal hearing.

ver relates to (a) truth (b) fiction _____ a _____ .

7. log

- Before Mr. Wilkinson showed his slides of China, he gave a *prologue* explaining why he had traveled to that country.
- The movie has English subtitles for those who can't understand the French *dialogue*.

log is related to (a) words (b) travel _____ a _____ .

8. ism

- Novels featuring *romanticism* have always been popular.
- The belief that there is no God is called *atheism*.

ism refers to (a) realities (b) beliefs _____ b _____ .

9. chron

- Mike has had a *chronic* backache since he fell rollerblading two weeks ago.
- Generally, history texts present material in a *chronological* order.

chron means (a) time (b) changeless _____ a _____ .

10. post

- At the conclusion of the wedding ceremony, Laura played an original *postlude* on the organ.
- Ahmed added a *postscript* to his letter because he had forgotten to include the exact time when his plane would be arriving.

post means (a) before (b) after _____ b _____ .

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each definition with the word part it defines.

<u>g</u>	1. able, ible	a. word; talk
<u>d</u>	2. a, an	b. many
<u>c</u>	3. super	c. above; over; beyond
<u>e</u>	4. trans	d. not; without
<u>b</u>	5. poly	e. across; change to
<u>h</u>	6. ver	f. time
<u>a</u>	7. log	g. capable of; condition of
<u>i</u>	8. ism	h. true
<u>f</u>	9. chron	i. belief or doctrine
<u>j</u>	10. post	j. after

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

able ism trans ver a chron
ible super poly log an post

- The belief that things will improve is called optim ism, whereas the belief that things will get worse is called pessim ism.
- Have you ever flown at super sonic speeds?
- Autumn is cap able of helping you with your problems, so why don't you ask her to?
- Mr. Wyzinski trans planted a maple tree from his backyard to his front yard.
- The teller said I would have to have two forms of identity ver ification before she could cash the check.
- My uncle's mono log ue about his operation went on for almost an hour.
- A popular singer who had been killed in a car accident was given the prize post humously.
- In geometry class, I learned to construct and measure poly gons, which are figures having many angles.
- A(n) an onymous person telephoned my parents to complain about the way I drive my car.
- My grandparents' old diary provides a(n) chron icle of the events leading to their immigration to the United States.

Matching Words and Definitions

Use your knowledge of the underlined word parts to match the definitions and words.

<u>c</u>	1. habitable	a. a chain of many South Pacific islands
<u>h</u>	2. stoicism	b. not caring about right or wrong
<u>e</u>	3. supercilious	c. can be lived in
<u>g</u>	4. transit	d. future generations; those coming after
<u>a</u>	5. Polynesia	e. overly critical; conceited
<u>i</u>	6. veritable	f. words of praise
<u>j</u>	7. chronometer	g. passing across or through; a vehicle for transportation
<u>b</u>	8. amoral	h. belief that one should be indifferent to feelings, whether pleasurable or painful
<u>f</u>	9. eulogy	i. true; authentic; genuine
<u>d</u>	10. posterity	j. instrument for measuring time

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write the definitions of the words after noting the underlined word parts and studying the context of the sentences; if you are still uncertain, feel free to consult a dictionary.

Typical responses:

1. A colorful picture of the school's mascot was superimposed on the yearbook cover.

superimposed _____ laid or placed over

2. In this computer age, using a typewriter is considered anachronistic by many people.

anachronistic _____ old-fashioned; out-of-date; not in the right time frame

3. The tinted window was still sufficiently translucent that I could see figures of people walking by on the sidewalk.

translucent _____ permitting light to shine through

4. After the peace was finally won and the soldiers came home, the postwar economy boomed.

postwar _____ after the war

5. Snow was such an anomaly in this section of the state that many people had seldom if ever seen it before.

anomaly _____ abnormality; irregularity

6. People with fair skin are especially *susceptible* to sunburn.

susceptible _____ *sensitive to; defenseless against* _____

7. Though his story was hard to believe, it proved to be *veracious* in every detail.

veracious _____ *truthful* _____

8. The board of directors' actions made it clear that male *chauvinism* would not be tolerated.

chauvinism _____ *partisanship; the feeling that one is superior to others* _____

9. Apparently, the *doxology* that began the service was a familiar one to most of the worshipers, but I had never heard it before.

doxology _____ *an expression of praise to God; a short hymn* _____

10. My uncle is a *polymath* as a result of his unending curiosity, extensive education, wide traveling, and constant reading.

polymath _____ *a person of great and varied learning* _____

Learning Challenging Words from Context Clues

1. **culpable** (KUL pə bəl)—adjective

- Ted actually broke the CD player, but Rosaire felt *culpable* because it was her teasing that had caused the accident.
- Donovan felt *culpable* for his team's bowling loss because if he had made either a strike or a spare, his team would have won.

culpable means (a) interested in (b) responsible for _____ *b* _____ .

2. **apathy** (AP ə thē)—noun

- A teacher who delights in what he or she teaches is deeply disappointed when students display *apathy* for the subject.
- I thought Meredith would be eager to talk about her new job, but she showed complete *apathy* when I asked her to tell me about it.

apathy indicates (a) indifference (b) ignorance _____ *a* _____ .

3. **superfluous** (soo PUR floo əs)—adjective

- Buying Vanessa a sweater would be *superfluous*, as she must already have at least a dozen.
- Please don't ask him what happened because he goes into such *superfluous* detail.

superfluous means (a) too much (b) too little _____ ^a _____.

4. **transition** (tran ZISH ən)—noun

- Going to school for the first time is sometimes a troubling *transition* in a child's life.
- Electricity ushered in a major *transition* in American life.

transition has to do with (a) emotion (b) change _____ ^b _____.

5. **polychromatic** (POL ē krō MAT ik)—adjective

- Las Vegas is noted for its flashy, *polychromatic* neon signs advertising its many hotels and gambling casinos.
- The evening sky was *polychromatic*, with brilliant shades of red, orange, pink, blue, and gray covering the horizon.

polychromatic has to do with many (a) noises (b) colors _____ ^b _____.

6. **veracity** (və RAS i tē)—noun

- Chad's reputation was such that no one doubted the *veracity* of his story.
- An early biographer of George Washington claimed that Washington once threw a silver dollar across the Potomac River, but most historians question the *veracity* of that story.

veracity means (a) truthfulness (b) anger _____ ^a _____.

7. **epilogue** (EP ə log)—noun

- At the end of the book, the author added a short *epilogue* to explain what eventually happened to the young boy featured in the story.
- A speaker gave an *epilogue* after the final act to explain what events had motivated the writing of the play.

epilogue refers to added (a) responsibility (b) information _____ ^b _____.

8. **nepotism** (NEP ə tiz əm)—noun

- Many people accused the mayor of *nepotism* after he appointed his brother-in-law chief of the fire department.
- Mr. Healey was obviously guilty of *nepotism* when he appointed his twenty-two-year-old son district manager because there were many other employees who were much better qualified for the position.

nepotism is associated with showing (a) favoritism (b) ignorance _____ ^a _____.



Peacocks are among the most magnificent *polychromatic* animals. (Stan Osolinski/Getty Images)

9. **chronic** (KRON ik)—adjective

- Jamie reluctantly gave up basketball because of *chronic* knee problems that had plagued her since her sophomore year.
- The doctor said the *chronic* headache Andrew had suffered from all winter was caused by a sinus infection.

chronic means (a) mysterious (b) long-lasting _____ ^b _____.

10. **posthumously** (POS chə məs lē)—adverb

- Shortly after her death, she was *posthumously* honored by the college when the new science building was named after her.
- *Posthumously*, Van Gogh is recognized as one of the world's greatest artists, but this certainly was not the case during his lifetime.

posthumously means (a) while living (b) after death _____ ^b _____.

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

culpable	superfluous	polychromatic	epilogue	chronic
apathy	transition	veracity	nepotism	posthumously
<u>superfluous</u>	1. unnecessary, excessive, too much			
<u>apathy</u>	2. lack of interest, absence of emotion			
<u>polychromatic</u>	3. many colored, having a variety of colors			
<u>posthumously</u>	4. after death			
<u>nepotism</u>	5. preference given to relatives			
<u>epilogue</u>	6. concluding information added at the end of a book, poem, play, or other literary work; postscript; supplement			
<u>culpable</u>	7. at fault, deserving blame, responsible for			
<u>chronic</u>	8. continuous, of long duration			
<u>veracity</u>	9. truth; something that is true			
<u>transition</u>	10. movement from one place to another; changeover; passage from one stage to another			

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

- | | | | | |
|----------|-------------|---------------|----------|--------------|
| culpable | superfluous | polychromatic | epilogue | chronic |
| apathy | transition | veracity | nepotism | posthumously |
1. Most people don't enjoy being around a(n) chronic complainer because hearing constant complaining soon becomes tiresome and depressing.
 2. Old photos and letters added veracity to his claim that he had once served in the Navy.
 3. The judge found the defendants culpable for the accident, so they had to pay for all the damages in addition to a large fine.
 4. Hannah's apathy was obvious during class as she often sighed and yawned during the teacher's lecture, and she wasn't interested in participating in any of the small-group discussions.
 5. My mother works at a florist shop, so I guess it would be rather superfluous to send her flowers for her birthday, don't you think?

6. Though the actor died shortly after finishing the movie, he was nominated posthumously for an Academy Award.
7. The author of this latest biography about Benjamin Franklin includes an interesting epilogue after the last chapter detailing what became of many of Franklin's descendants.
8. The transition from an urban to a rural life was a surprisingly easy one for Manuel to make.
9. Some fans believe the coach is guilty of nepotism because he recently inserted his daughter into the starting lineup, but I don't agree with them because I think she is clearly one of the better players on the team.
10. When did it become possible to take polychromatic snapshots rather than black-and-white ones?

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- c 1. The *opposite* of **epilogue** is
- index
 - chapter
 - preface
 - graph
- b 2. The *opposite* of **posthumously** is something done
- in anger
 - while living
 - before thinking
 - for revenge
- d 3. The *opposite* of **culpable** is
- sober
 - humorous
 - guilty
 - innocent
- a 4. **Transition** suggests
- change
 - extravagance
 - indifference
 - duplication

- _____ *b* 5. **Superfluous** suggests
a. power
b. surplus
c. dishonesty
d. weakness
- _____ *d* 6. **Veracity** suggests
a. adventure
b. tenderness
c. popularity
d. honesty
- _____ *d* 7. If a person exhibits **apathy**, he or she displays
a. confidence
b. fear
c. joy
d. unconcern
- _____ *c* 8. **polychromatic : dull ::** a. flat : dismal
b. colorful : flashy
c. colorful : dreary
d. many : a lot
- _____ *b* 9. **nepotism : resentment ::** a. optimism : hatred
b. cooperation : appreciation
c. bitterness : admiration
d. abolish : boldness
- _____ *d* 10. **chronic : persistent ::** a. anger : frequently
b. happiness : temporary
c. humor : permanently
d. ceaseless : continuous

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

nepotism culpable chronic polychromatic apathy
veracity posthumously epilogue transition

TEEN DRIVERS

Possessing the quickest reflexes, keenest eyesight, and most stamina, teenagers could reasonably be expected to be the best drivers on the road, but, in fact, they are culpable for more serious traffic accidents than drivers in any other age bracket. Specifically, drivers ages sixteen to nineteen are four times more likely than older drivers to have a serious car crash. Tragically, thousands of teenagers die annually in car crashes, accounting for 40 percent of all deaths among this age group. Each spring in high schools across the nation, with graduates resplendent in polychromatic robes and tasseled mortarboards, diplomas are solemnly awarded posthumously to seniors who died in car crashes during the school year.

In addition to the many lost lives, a half-million young drivers are seriously injured in car accidents, many of whom will endure permanent disabilities and chronic pain for the rest of their lives.

Considering their physical advantages, why is it that teenagers have the highest instead of the lowest accident rate? (One thing is certain: it is not due to driving apathy, as teens consistently rank “driving” at or near the top of their favorite activities.) Studies noted for their veracity have identified these factors as the major causes of teenage drivers’ high accident rate:

- They are more likely than older drivers to speed, run red lights, make illegal turns, and drive after using alcohol or drugs.
- They are the least likely to wear seatbelts.
- Over half of all teenage drivers use cell phones or indulge in other risky behavior (combing their hair, tuning their radios, etc.) while driving.
- They often disregard hazardous driving conditions caused by rain, snow, sleet, fog, traffic congestion, and road repairs.

In an effort to significantly reduce the accident rate of young drivers, a number of states have adopted an approach known as “graduated drivers licensing” (GDL) for applicants under the age of eighteen. While the GDL approach varies from state to state, it generally includes requirements and restrictions like these:

1. An applicant must successfully “graduate” from both the supervised and intermediate states before receiving a full-privileges driver’s license. (The transition period between each stage is commonly three months.)
2. Applicants must sharpen their driving skills for a specific number of hours under the supervision of adult license holders.
3. Night driving is prohibited for the first three months. (Research reveals that 42 percent of teen fatalities occur between 9:00 P.M. and 6:00 A.M.)
4. Chauffeuring other teens is prohibited unless an adult is present. (Over 60 percent of teens killed in crashes are passengers in cars driven by other teens.)
5. There is zero tolerance for drunk driving. (Even if the teen is the son or daughter of politically connected parents, nepotism has no power to change this policy.)

There is gathering and impressive evidence that the GDL approach is effective; specifically, safety experts in states where GDL has been implemented report drops in teen accidents from 10 percent to slightly over 30 percent.* Because of these encouraging results, it is likely that more and more states will adopt GDL in an attempt to save young drivers from injuries and death.

*A(n) epilogue to one of these reports indicates that a province in Canada experienced a drop of over 60 percent in the accident rate of sixteen-year-olds one year after adopting a graduated licensing law.

neptism —favoritism shown on the basis of a family relationship:

- The governor was accused of nepotism after he appointed his son-in-law as the new state attorney general.

Origin: 1655–1665 <Italian—*nepotismo* from *nepote* (nephew) <Latin—*nepos*—grandson, nephew (in the Middle Ages, *nepotismo* referred to the privileges granted by a pope to his nephew, who, in some cases, may actually have been his son)

Family words: nepotistic (adj), nepotistical (adj), nepotist (n)

Connotation: *negative*—indicates unfairness

Image to remember: a manager who was appointed to his or her job by a family member who has a high-ranking job in the same company

Write an original sentence using *nepotism*:

affect a verb meaning “to influence”:

Jenna didn’t think breaking up with him would affect her so much.
How does working the night shift affect you physically?

effect a noun meaning “result”:

Salary raises had a wonderful effect on the morale of the staff.
Waiting around has a tiring effect on most people.

Circle the correct answer:

1. Eating sensibly and exercising regularly soon had a positive affect / effect on his emotional as well as his physical health.
2. Did Connor’s angry outburst affect / effect your opinion of him?

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **affect:** _____
2. **effect:** _____

Learning Word Parts from Context Clues

1. bio

- More *biographies* have been published about Abraham Lincoln than about any other American.
- Madison is doing extremely well in *biochemistry*, a course concerned with the chemistry of living matter.

bio means (a) science (b) life _____ *b* _____ .

2. tele

- Our college needs a more powerful *telescope* to see the most distant planets in our solar system.
- People are more likely to send an e-mail today to distant friends than a *telegram* unless the message is particularly urgent.

tele means (a) far away (b) close by _____ *a* _____ .

3. auto

- In contrast to a carriage pulled by a horse, a car seems to move by its own power; that's why a car is called an *automobile*.
- Our furnace will *automatically* turn on if the temperature in the house falls below sixty-two degrees.

auto means (a) modern (b) self _____ *b* _____ .

4. eu

- Mr. Sanchez gave a *eulogy* at the memorial service for his popular neighbor.
- The seniors expressed their *euphoria* on graduation night by tossing their mortarboards high in the air.

eu means (a) sorrowful (b) praiseworthy _____ *b* _____ .

5. ante

- Harry Truman’s presidency *antedates* John Kennedy’s by eight years. Between their terms in office, Dwight Eisenhower was president.
- A pronoun must refer to a previous noun. For example, in the sentence “The package will be expensive to mail because it weighs more than eight pounds,” *package* is the *antecedent* of the pronoun *it*.

ante means (a) before (b) after _____ *a* _____ .

6. rect

- A *rectangle* consists of four right angles.
- He has always been a person of high principles and moral *rectitude*, so no one was surprised he entered the ministry.

rect means (a) slanted, intelligent (b) straight, correct _____ *b* _____ .

7. fid

- Chantelle *confided* her secret to Cameron because she knew he wouldn’t tell anyone else.
- My sound system has such good *fidelity* you would swear the musicians were in my room.

fid is related to (a) secrets (b) dependability _____ *b* _____ .

8. equ

- Most people *equate* expensive cars with wealth.
- Needless to say, tightrope walkers must have good *equilibrium*.

equ is related to (a) equality (b) equipment _____ *a* _____ .

9. pan

- Athletes from North, Central, and South America participate in the *Pan-American* games.
- Barbara’s dream is to have a house on the coast with a *panoramic* view of the ocean.

pan means (a) all, wide (b) few, narrow _____ *a* _____ .

10. sym, syn

- Damian appreciated his friends’ expressions of *sympathy* after his grandfather died.
- By *synthesizing* the information and clues revealed by the extensive investigation, the detectives were able to solve the baffling crime.

sym and **syn** mean (a) against (b) with _____ *b* _____ .

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each definition with the word part it defines.

<u> </u> f	1. bio	a. far; distant
<u> </u> a	2. tele	b. all
<u> </u> j	3. auto	c. good; well
<u> </u> c	4. eu	d. together with
<u> </u> h	5. ante	e. equal
<u> </u> i	6. rect	f. life
<u> </u> g	7. fid	g. faith
<u> </u> e	8. equ	h. before
<u> </u> b	9. pan	i. straight, correct
<u> </u> d	10. sym, syn	j. self

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

bio auto ante fid pan
tele eu rect equ syn

1. The earth is divided into two hemispheres at the equ ator.
2. The police were afraid the large crowd would break into pan demonium when the concert was canceled.
3. By making it possible to send voices from distant places, the tele phone revolutionized communications.
4. It's important to have con fid ence in your doctor.
5. College students have more auto nomony than high school students, so they must learn to be responsible for themselves.
6. Dr. Morton's ante room was filled with patients.
7. After our teacher cor rect ed our essays, we rewrote them one more time.
8. The bio sphere is the part of the earth's crust, waters, and atmosphere that supports living organisms.
9. *Sanitary engineer* is a(n) eu phemism for *garbage collector*.
10. Mr. Nickerson formed a(n) syn dicate with other business people to buy the trucking firm.

Matching Words and Definitions

Use your knowledge of the underlined word parts to match the definitions and words.

- | | | |
|----------|-------------------------|---|
| <u>d</u> | 1. <u>rectify</u> | a. time of year when day and night are equal in length |
| <u>g</u> | 2. <u>synchronize</u> | b. life of a person written by that person |
| <u>j</u> | 3. <u>euthanasia</u> | c. a cure-all; an answer to all problems |
| <u>a</u> | 4. <u>equinox</u> | d. to set right; to correct |
| <u>h</u> | 5. <u>antediluvian</u> | e. written statement made under oath |
| <u>i</u> | 6. <u>biomass</u> | f. communication through distance by thoughts only |
| <u>c</u> | 7. <u>panacea</u> | g. make to occur at the same time |
| <u>b</u> | 8. <u>autobiography</u> | h. belonging to the period before the biblical Flood; extremely old |
| <u>f</u> | 9. <u>telepathy</u> | i. the total quantity of living matter within a specific area |
| <u>e</u> | 10. <u>affidavit</u> | j. the deliberate putting to death painlessly of a person suffering from a fatal disease; mercy killing |

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write the definitions of the words after noting the underlined word parts and studying the context of the sentences; if you are still uncertain, feel free to consult a dictionary.

Typical responses:

1. Being accountable to no one, the autocrat ruled the country with absolute authority.

autocrat _____ *dictator; person with complete power*

2. The weekend telethon raised millions of dollars from people and corporations throughout the country.

telethon _____ *a lengthy television show that raises money for charity*

3. A small band of rebels attempted to incite an insurrection to topple the newly established government.

insurrection _____ *rebellion, uprising*

4. I'm sure many people will eulogize Dr. Perez at her retirement party as she's been an excellent teacher for many years.

eulogize _____ *to praise highly in speech or writing*

5. Some religious people in the community considered my grandfather an *infidel* because he never went to church.

infidel _____ non-believer in the dominant religion of the area or culture _____

6. A *synthesis* of durable metals revolutionized the making of golf clubs in the latter part of the 20th century.

synthesis _____ the putting together of separate elements _____

7. Most ancient people practiced *pantheism* rather than *monotheism*, which is the belief in one God.

pantheism _____ belief in many gods _____

8. The federal government and our state government are *equivalent* in their makeup as they both contain legislative, executive, and judicial branches.

equivalent _____ equal, the same _____

9. The science of *bionics*, based upon the study of how the human body works, has led to much-improved artificial limbs.

bionics _____ science that attempts to duplicate actual limbs and movements through mechanical means _____

10. After World War II, only a few of the beautiful *antebellum* buildings were still standing in this historic city.

antebellum _____ before the war, especially the Civil War _____

Learning Challenging Words from Context Clues

1. **biopsy** (BĪ op sē)—noun

- Pathologists are specialists in studying samples of patients' tissues obtained through *biopsies*.
- Fortunately, the *biopsy* revealed the mole on the patient's arm was harmless.

biopsy is an examination of (a) living tissues (b) medical procedures _____ a _____ .

2. **telepathy** (tə LEP ə thē)—noun

- Though the twin sisters are often separated by many miles, they claim to know what each other is thinking at all times; they obviously believe in *telepathy*.
- Many scientists are skeptical about *telepathy*, but there are some who believe it is possible to communicate with those far away by thoughts only.

telepathy is communicating by using (a) the sense of touch (b) minds
only _____ b _____ .

3. **autonomy** (ə TON ə mē)—noun

- India received its *autonomy* from Great Britain in 1947.
- The parents permitted their fifteen-year-old daughter a great deal of *autonomy* on most matters, but they did not allow her to babysit on school nights.

autonomy is associated with (a) independence (b) dependence _____ a _____ .

4. **euphemism** (U fə miz əm)—noun

- “Senior citizen” is a *euphemism* for “old person.”
- The words “false teeth” are not featured in the ad; instead, the *euphemism* “dentures” is used.

euphemism is a word that is thought to be more (a) refined (b) descriptive than a word that is more commonly used _____ a _____ .

5. **antediluvian** (AN ti di LOO vē ən)—adjective

- The *antediluvian* period is the time before the Flood mentioned in the book of Genesis in the Old Testament.
- When I was younger, I thought my parents’ philosophy for raising children was so old-fashioned that it was *antediluvian*, but I’ve changed my mind since I’ve become a parent.

antediluvian is related to (a) complicated times (b) ancient times _____ b _____ .

6. **rectify** (REK tə fī)—verb

- Pat attempted to *rectify* his clumsiness by slowing down and treading carefully.
- I must try to *rectify* this dangerous situation before someone else gets hurt.

rectify means to make (a) right (b) excuses _____ a _____ .

7. **infidelity** (in fi DEL ə tē)—noun

- The diplomat’s *infidelity* to his country led to his arrest for treason.
- *Infidelity* is a leading cause of divorce because it is devastating to be betrayed.

infidelity is (a) foolishness (b) disloyalty _____ b _____ .

8. **equivocal** (ē KWIV ə kəl)—adjective

- Apparently, Maria hasn't decided what to do about the matter because she gave me an *equivocal* answer when I asked her.
- I hate to be so *equivocal*, but both jobs appeal to me, so I don't know what to do.

equivocal means (a) indefinite (b) ashamed _____ a _____ .

9. **panacea** (PAN ə SĒ ə)—noun

- Unfortunately, there seems to be no *panacea* for ending all poverty in every country.
- One of the candidates for the school board said the *panacea* for improving the community's public schools was simple: Hire excellent teachers.

panacea is a (a) lie (b) cure-all _____ b _____ .

10. **syndrome** (SIN drom)—noun

- The *syndrome* for diabetes includes fatigue, loss of weight, and thirstiness.
- The economist warned that the *syndrome* of a recession includes a high rate of unemployment and an unstable stock market.

syndrome is a set of (a) agreements (b) symptoms _____ b _____ .

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

biopsy	autonomy	antediluvian	infidelity	panacea
telepathy	euphemism	rectify	equivocal	syndrome
<u>panacea</u>	1.	cure for all ills, a universal remedy		
<u>autonomy</u>	2.	self-direction, independence		
<u>infidelity</u>	3.	unfaithfulness, treason		
<u>syndrome</u>	4.	set of symptoms		
<u>biopsy</u>	5.	examination of tissue from a living subject		
<u>antediluvian</u>	6.	before the Flood, ancient		
<u>equivocal</u>	7.	wavering, uncertain, indefinite		
<u>telepathy</u>	8.	mind reading, extrasensory perception (ESP)		
<u>rectify</u>	9.	make right, correct		
<u>euphemism</u>	10.	the substitution of a mild word for one thought to be harsh or offensive		

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

biopsy autonomy antediluvian infidelity panacea
telepathy euphemism rectify equivocal syndrome

1. We employees have _____ *autonomy* _____ when it comes to choosing the hours we prefer to work, so that's a big plus, particularly for those of us who are parents.
2. Some of my older relatives believe young men with shoulder-length hair look positively _____ *antediluvian* _____ rather than up-to-date and sophisticated.
3. The _____ *biopsy* _____ revealed the tissue was cancerous, so the doctor prepared herself to give the patient this disturbing news.
4. We were in a(n) _____ *equivocal* _____ state of mind for some time because we couldn't decide whether to paint or wallpaper our apartment.
5. The doctor explained that the _____ *syndrome* _____ for meningitis includes a stiff neck, headache, and fever.
6. Sometimes "antiques" seems to be a(n) _____ *euphemism* _____ for "junk."
7. The political candidate insisted he had been faithful to his ex-wife during their marriage, strongly denying that _____ *infidelity* _____ on his part had led to their divorce.
8. The _____ *panacea* _____ for ridding our city of smog is to ban all vehicles from the downtown area.
9. You may not believe in mental _____ *telepathy* _____, but I have an open mind when it comes to ESP because I've sometimes thought about getting in touch with someone when out of the blue he or she telephones me.
10. I completely botched the job when I tried to install a garbage disposal unit in our kitchen sink, so the only way I knew to _____ *rectify* _____ matters was to call a plumber.

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- _____ *d* _____ 1. The *opposite* of **infidelity** is
- a. dedication
 - b. talent
 - c. crankiness
 - d. loyalty

- _____ *a* 2. The *opposite* of **antediluvian** is
 a. modern
 b. stubborn
 c. ambitious
 d. boring
- _____ *c* 3. The *opposite* of **rectify** is
 a. blame
 b. request
 c. harm
 d. fix
- _____ *b* 4. **Autonomy** suggests
 a. poverty
 b. self-sufficiency
 c. indecency
 d. delicacy
- _____ *d* 5. **Biopsy** is most closely associated with
 a. engineering
 b. business
 c. law
 d. medicine
- _____ *a* 6. **Telepathy** is most closely associated with
 a. communication
 b. charity
 c. illness
 d. freedom
- _____ *a* 7. If a person acts in an **equivocal** manner, he or she is acting
 a. uncertainly
 b. confidently
 c. arrogantly
 d. maturely
- _____ *c* 8. **panacea : rare ::** a. beautiful : desirable
 b. view : occasionally
 c. cure : unusual
 d. noise : frequently
- _____ *a* 9. **syndrome : related ::** a. cluster : similar
 b. group : unlike
 c. symptoms : unreliable
 d. collection : dependable
- _____ *d* 10. **euphemism : tactful ::** a. request : impolite
 b. statement : politeness
 c. exclamation : indifference
 d. curse : rude

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

rectify	panacea	biopsy	equivocal	autonomy
antediluvian	infidelity	syndrome	euphemism	telepathy

LACI

Laci has been a close friend since our middle school days, so I certainly had equivocal feelings about ending our friendship, but I did so because of her “enchantment” (a[n] euphemism for obsession) with her BlackBerry. A while back, we were partners in biology lab conducting a(n) biopsy on the nerve tissues of a frog when Laci whispered to me that she had to go out to the hall for a minute to make an important call. This “important” call took twenty minutes, and she might as well have stayed in the lab because everyone, including the instructor, could hear her loudly talking and laughing about a volleyball game she had played in recently.

Then there was the time Laci and I were getting a bite to eat in the college cafeteria while discussing what we were going to do for our joint psychology presentation scheduled in two weeks. Suddenly, we heard “Chirp! Chirp! Chirp!” and Laci quickly grabbed her BlackBerry out of one of her jacket pockets and excitedly said, “I gotta answer this!” She and her caller, Brianna, then gabbed for a half-hour about whether Brianna should have her hair cut shorter than she usually did when she went to her hair appointment the next day. (Big deal!)

There were numerous other times when I felt absolutely irrelevant while Laci, lovingly cradling her BlackBerry, was yapping away, text-messaging, taking pictures, or on the Internet. Once, when I was waiting for her to give me a ride to work, she told me to wait just a second because she just HAD to call her roommate. The “second” she asked me to wait turned out to be ten minutes, making me late for work, which made my boss upset with me. But did Laci ever apologize to me? Are you kidding? Of course not. Soon after she got her BlackBerry, she developed a bad case of “rudeness.”

I don’t claim to have the gift of telepathy, but I know Laci thinks I am antediluvian when it comes to the “modern marvels of technology” like the BlackBerry because I still prefer to use regular dial telephones and disposable cameras as well as my trusty outdated desktop computer. But frankly, I’ve become convinced that cell

phones, especially one like the BlackBerry, produce not only bad manners but also addiction. Don't believe me? Well, I can assure you that Laci demonstrates the syndrome of someone who is addicted. For example, Laci can't seem to help herself—she MUST have her BlackBerry readily accessible all the time or she gets really antsy. She also lost her job because she was spending too much time talking on her blasted BlackBerry. Furthermore, her studies have gone down the tube because of her infatuation with it. In fact, Laci's infidelity to her responsibilities is negatively impacting all phases of her life, including her once-close friendship with me.

The last straw for me regarding our friendship was when Laci discovered she didn't have her BlackBerry with her when we were shopping at the mall. She went into an absolute panic—as in, she gasped, screamed, and cried—you would have thought she had just lost one of her limbs! I yelled at her, “Get over it, will ya, Laci?” But she kept carrying on like the world was coming to an end! Laci has obviously lost her autonomy because of her BlackBerry dependency.

Has anyone developed a(n) panacea for cell-phone addiction? I hope so, because unless Laci is able to rectify her present “BlackBerry behavior,” our friendship will remain a thing of the past.

FEATURED WORD: panacea

Panacea —a remedy for all diseases or difficulties:

- The father believed that Windex was a panacea that would solve whatever was troubling anybody in the family.

Origin: 1540–1550 <Greek—*panakeia* < *pan* (all) and *akos* (cure)

Family word: panacean (adj)

Connotation: *positive*—related to remedy

Image to remember: a medicine that claims to cure all your symptoms

Write an original sentence using *panacea*:

MASTERING CONFUSING WORDS

passed / past

passed the past tense of the action verb *pass*:

Blake passed his driver's license on his second attempt.

past a noun or adjective referring to a previous time:

Owen hasn't received any type of message from his girlfriend for the past month.

Circle the correct answer:

1. I studied the notes I had taken in the passed / past, and they helped me to do well on the exam.
2. When I passed / past Holly in the hall, she gave me a smile.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **passed:** _____
2. **past:** _____

Learning Word Parts from Context Clues

1. phil

- *Philosophy* is an excellent major for students who love to study wisdom and reasoning.
- People who admire England and revere anything English are known as *anglophiles*.

phil means (a) intelligence (b) love _____ ^b _____ .

2. mal

- *Malicious* gossip has harmed his reputation in the community.
- Thomas Jefferson suffered from migraine headaches, a *malady* that would disable him for days.

mal is associated with (a) harmful (b) mysterious _____ ^a _____ .

3. spec

- I always *inspect* my car before I take a long trip.
- At our college baseball games, the *spectators* are knowledgeable and well mannered.

spec has to do with (a) viewing (b) assisting _____ ^a _____ .

4. omni

- Young children often believe their parents are *omniscient*, but as they grow older, they realize their parents don't know everything after all.
- Dogs seem to be *omnipresent* at any picnic.

omni means (a) large (b) limitless _____ ^b _____ .

5. hyper

- Gail is *hyperactive*, so she enjoys jogging four miles every evening.
- Alex is *hypersensitive*, so be tactful when you offer your suggestions.

hyper means (a) excessive (b) lacking _____ ^a _____ .

6. anti

- The scientist's watch is *antimagnetic*, so its accuracy is unaffected by experiments involving magnets.
- The development of *antibiotics*, because of their effectiveness against harmful bacteria, has contributed significantly to the average life span.

anti means (a) increasing (b) opposing _____ ^b _____ .

7. voc, vok

- A *convocation* was called by the college dean to discuss the new graduation requirements.
- The unexpected letter *evoked* memories of her old friend.

voc and **vok** relate to (a) a calling (b) an arrival _____ ^a _____ .

8. bi

- The United States *bicentennial* in 1976 celebrated the country's two hundredth anniversary.
- One of my neighbors has been accused of *bigamy*; apparently, his divorce was not finalized before he remarried.

bi means (a) two (b) luxury _____ ^a _____ .

9. path

- The newspaper's picture of the *pathetic* puppy brought many offers for adoption.
- The movie was full of *pathos*, and a number of people in the audience cried.

path has to do with (a) imagination (b) feelings _____ ^b _____ .

10. ben

- As the result of a generous contribution from an unannounced *benefactor*, our college will be able to complete its building plans.
- Hazel was the *beneficiary* of her aunt's insurance policy, so she can now afford to open a florist shop of her own.

ben means (a) disagreeable (b) favorable _____ ^b _____ .

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each definition with the word part it defines.

<u>c</u>	1. phil	a. to call; voice
<u>j</u>	2. mal	b. good; well
<u>e</u>	3. spec	c. to love
<u>h</u>	4. omni	d. two
<u>g</u>	5. hyper	e. to look
<u>i</u>	6. anti	f. feelings
<u>a</u>	7. voc, vok	g. over; excessive; beyond what is normal
<u>d</u>	8. bi	h. all
<u>f</u>	9. path	i. opposite; against
<u>b</u>	10. ben	j. bad

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

phil spec hyper voc path
mal omni anti bi ben

1. I felt no sym _____ path _____ y for the rude young man when he was expelled from the restaurant.
2. Lately, my husband has been _____ anti _____ social—he refuses to go anywhere where he might have to mingle with other people.
3. Carlos is pleased with the physical and emotional _____ ben _____ efits regular exercise has brought him.
4. The airport is equipped with a(n) _____ omni _____ directional device capable of transmitting or receiving signals in all directions.
5. The _____ phil _____ anthropist’s concern and generosity were deeply appreciated by those left homeless by the fire.
6. Coach Page admits she was _____ hyper _____ critical when she first began coaching, but now she offers suggestions in a positive, encouraging way.
7. Sofia is unsure what _____ voc _____ ation she should pursue.
8. Unfortunately, a great amount of _____ mal _____ ice exists between the couple filing for divorce.
9. Lucia brought _____ bi _____ noculars to the game as our seats were high in the grandstand.
10. Turell says that in retro _____ spec _____ t, his high school years were some of the happiest years of his life.

Matching Words and Definitions

Use your knowledge of the underlined word parts to match the definitions and words.

<u>b</u>	1. <u>b</u> ipartisan	a. to breathe abnormally fast
<u>g</u>	2. <u>b</u> enediction	b. both parties cooperating to achieve a common goal
<u>i</u>	3. biblioph <u>i</u> le	c. a serious personality disorder in which a person expresses no normal feelings toward others
<u>a</u>	4. <u>h</u> yperventilate	d. a haunting, disturbing image; a ghost
<u>j</u>	5. <u>o</u> mnibus	e. to speak badly about; to slander
<u>c</u>	6. psychopath <u>y</u>	f. substance that acts against poison
<u>f</u>	7. <u>a</u> ntidote	g. a prayer requesting God's blessing
<u>e</u>	8. <u>m</u> align	h. to call back or to cancel what once was given or said
<u>h</u>	9. <u>r</u> evoke	i. person who loves books
<u>d</u>	10. <u>s</u> pecter	j. all-encompassing; comprehensive

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write the definitions of the words after noting the underlined word parts and studying the context of the sentences; if you are still uncertain, feel free to consult a dictionary.

Typical responses:

1. Cats and dogs are four-footed, but humans are bipeds.

bipeds _____ two-legged animals

2. The doctor diagnosed her injury as a hyperextension of her right knee.

hyperextension _____ overextension; strain

3. Did you get rid of your contact lenses so you could wear those groovy spectacles?

spectacles _____ eyeglasses

4. We were baffled by his apathetic response after we told him our exciting news.

apathetic _____ lacking enthusiasm or emotion; indifferent

5. The player glared malevolently at the referee after he was charged with a technical foul.

malevolently _____ hatefully; with an "evil" eye; maliciously

6. As a result of the benevolent acts of many people in the community, a new house was built for the family who had lost their home due to lightning.

benevolent _____ kind; charitable

7. When it was discovered that the young woman did not actually have a master's degree, the *revocation* of her recent appointment swiftly followed.

revocation _____ *the act of taking back or withdrawing* _____

8. My neighbors are devoted to *philharmonic* music, so they never miss an opportunity to attend a symphony concert.

philharmonic _____ *devoted to music; relating to a symphony orchestra* _____

9. The *antiphonal* composition was performed by having the sopranos and altos singing at the front of the church and the tenors and basses responding at the back of the sanctuary.

antiphonal _____ *of or like a text sung by responding groups* _____

10. The park's *omnifarious* garden contained every type of flower and bush that can grow in this state.

omnifarious _____ *of all kinds* _____

Learning Challenging Words from Context Clues

1. **philanthropy** (fə LAN thrə pē)—noun

- As a result of the Webbs' *philanthropy*, the college was able to build a new Student Union.
- The famous athlete's *philanthropy* included generous financial contributions to the Salvation Army, the YWCA, and the United Way.

philanthropy has to do with a love of (a) publicity (b) humankind _____ *b* _____ .

2. **malicious** (mə LISH əs)—adjective

- A *malicious* rumor began circulating that the defendant had been found innocent because he had bribed a witness to lie for him.
- The police have just arrested the people responsible for the *malicious* attack on the elderly couple.

malicious is related to (a) wicked (b) bold _____ *a* _____ .

3. **specter** (SPEK tər)—noun

- The swiftly moving fog was like some sort of *specter* one would see in a horror movie.
- A shimmering, blinding figure burst into view, a *specter* that filled us with dread.

specter is similar to a (a) storm (b) ghost _____ *b* _____ .

4. **omnipotent** (om NIP ə tent)—adjective

- The arrogant supervisor felt she was *omnipotent*, so she was shocked when the company's president took away much of her authority.
- Although the Supreme Court justices may appear to be *omnipotent*, their power is limited by the Constitution.

omnipotent means (a) all-powerful (b) everywhere _____ *a* _____ .

5. **hypertension** (HĪ pər TEN shən)—noun

- After checking the patient's blood pressure a number of times, the doctor gave the middle-aged man a prescription for his *hypertension*.
- My neighbor is watching her diet and exercising more in an effort to reduce her *hypertension*.

hypertension is (a) lack of muscular strength (b) high blood pressure _____ *b* _____ .

6. **antithesis** (an TITH ə sis)—noun

- She, fortunately, was the *antithesis* of a spoiled celebrity as she graciously signed autographs, posed for pictures with the children, and stayed to answer the reporters' questions.
- The sales representative first showed me a four-door blue sedan, which was the *antithesis* of what I was looking for, so I told him I wasn't interested in giving the car a test drive.

antithesis means (a) model of (b) opposite of _____ *b* _____ .

7. **vociferous** (vō SIF ə r ə s)—adjective

- Our team's hockey fans have the reputation for being rowdy and *vociferous*.
- City council members have heard *vociferous* complaints about the rise in property taxes.

vociferous means (a) adventurous (b) loud _____ *b* _____ .

8. **bilingual** (bī LING gwəl)—adjective

- Sandra's *bilingual* ability was helpful to us all as she was able to speak to the waiter in French and then translate into English what he said.
- One of the requirements for that particular position with the Border Patrol is to be *bilingual* or, to be more specific, to have the ability to speak Spanish and English.

bilingual is the ability to (a) speak two languages (b) offer sound advice _____ a _____.

9. **empathy** (EM pə thē)—noun

- My *empathy* for my young nephew was genuine because I can distinctly remember how upset I felt when my dog died during my childhood.
- I can generate no *empathy* for the striking ballplayers because they make so much more money than I do.

empathy is most closely related to (a) impatience (b) sympathy _____ b _____.

10. **benign** (bə NĪN)—adjective

- My ferocious-looking dog actually has a *benign* disposition, so you have nothing to fear from him.
- I thought the food might be too spicy for my tastes, but it actually had a *benign* flavor.

benign means (a) mild (b) interesting _____ a _____.

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

philanthropy	specter	hypertension	vociferous	empathy
malicious	omnipotent	antithesis	bilingual	benign
<u> vociferous </u>	1. noisy, blaring, disruptive			
<u> benign </u>	2. harmless, mild, inoffensive			
<u> malicious </u>	3. brutal, cruel			
<u> antithesis </u>	4. opposite, other extreme			
<u> philanthropy </u>	5. helpfulness, generosity, charity			
<u> empathy </u>	6. identification with the feelings of another person			
<u> omnipotent </u>	7. almighty, all-powerful			
<u> bilingual </u>	8. able to speak and/or write two languages			
<u> hypertension </u>	9. high blood pressure			
<u> specter </u>	10. ghost, spook			

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

philanthropy specter hypertension vociferous empathy
malicious omnipotent antithesis bilingual benign

1. What started out as a friendly snowball fight between members of the two fraternities escalated into a(n) malicious brawl, resulting in a number of injuries and arrests.
2. Antonio's high-strung personality is the antithesis of that of his older brother, who is much more laid-back.
3. The proceeds from the exhibition game were given to a charity; this philanthropy on the part of the promoters and players was wildly applauded by those in attendance.
4. The television ad stressed that untreated high blood pressure can lead to heart attacks and strokes, so everyone should be checked for hypertension.
5. My boss usually has a calm, benign personality, but she becomes extremely upset with her employees if they are late to work or ignore or are indifferent to customers in the store.
6. The vociferous complaints of the coach, which could be heard throughout the gym, led to his dismissal from the game.
7. The man quietly responded, "Only God is immortal and omnipotent."
8. I didn't know Julie was bilingual until I heard her carry on a long conversation in Italian with her grandparents.
9. Steve has always enjoyed studying history, so he has no empathy for those who complain that it is a dry, uninteresting subject.
10. I never believed in ghosts until I saw some type of eerie specter late one night when I drove by a graveyard.

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- b 1. The *opposite* of **benign** is
- a. nonthreatening
 - b. deadly
 - c. costly
 - d. inexpensive

- d 2. The *opposite* of **philanthropy** is
a. good health
b. sickness
c. generosity
d. stinginess
- a 3. The *opposite* of **hypertension** is
a. low blood pressure
b. high blood pressure
c. uncaring
d. uptight
- c 4. **Empathy** suggests
a. misunderstanding of
b. anger within
c. identification with
d. nervousness about
- c 5. The word most closely associated with **vociferous** is
a. infection
b. insecurity
c. intensity
d. information
- d 6. **Bilingual** is most closely associated with
a. mathematics
b. social sciences
c. biological sciences
d. languages
- a 7. If a person thinks he or she sees a **specter**, he or she likely feels
a. frightened
b. delighted
c. unconcerned
d. confident
- c 8. **malicious : vicious ::** a. laughing : crying
b. rebelling : obeying
c. kindness : compassion
d. loss : tragedy
- b 9. **antithesis : identical ::** a. captivating : interesting
b. opposite : same
c. alter : change
d. seek : search
- b 10. **omnipotent : weak ::** a. weak : feeble
b. feeble : powerful
c. powerful : strong
d. strong : mighty

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

bilingual specter empathy benign philanthropy
malicious vociferous hypertension omnipotent antithesis

CURRENCY FOR THE VISUALLY IMPAIRED

Of the many daily challenges the over 1 million visually impaired citizens of our country face, there is at least one that could be eliminated—dealing with our present currency. Because ones, fives, tens, twenties, and the other denominations of U.S. paper money are of the same size, shape, and feel, it is impossible for the blind to make distinctions among the various bills. This uniformity in our currency, a federal judge ruled in 2006, amounts to discrimination against the visually impaired, and since discrimination is the antithesis of equality, he ordered the Treasury Department to alter the bills in some manner so that the blind will also have ways of identifying them.

However, some top Treasury officials and others, while expressing empathy for the plight the blind face regarding this issue, nevertheless made vociferous objections to the judge’s ruling, loudly arguing that it would be much too difficult and expensive to implement the major currency changes necessary to accommodate the visually impaired. These objections bring back the specter of similar protests made decades ago when some people voiced, often in hurtful, malicious ways, their disapproval for proposals designed to provide the physically challenged with special parking spots, bathrooms, doors, and ramps. But soon after these proposals were enacted into law, the public seldom had even benign objections to them as people with wheelchairs, walkers, baby strollers, and the like benefited from these special accommodations. To help those for whom English is a second language, these accommodations are increasingly being identified with bilingual signs, often made possible by the philanthropy of individuals and charitable organizations.

The government maintains that to alter currency sizes to accommodate the visually challenged would cost nearly \$180 million initially and up to \$50 million annually for the necessary new printing plates. However, one need not be omnipotent to know there are much less expensive ways to accomplish this goal. These methods include the use of Braille dots, foil strips, raised numbers, rounded edges, and punched holes.

Most of the nations in the world have already adopted one or more of the methods mentioned to enable the blind to make currency distinctions; there is simply no need for our government officials to develop hypertension or other stress-induced ailments to comply with the judge's orders. Our visually challenged citizens deserve to live in a society that is as accessible to them as possible, and changing our currency would be a major contribution toward that objective.

FEATURED WORD: philanthropy

Philanthropy—compassionate concern for others as well as socially useful projects:

- The Harrisons' philanthropy was well known in the community as they donated their time, talents, and money to such worthwhile causes as the local homeless shelter and historical museum.

Origin: 1600–1610 <Latin and Greek—*philanthropia*—love for mankind; *phil* (love) and *anthropos* (mankind)

Family words: philanthropist (n), philanthropic (adj)

Connotation: *positive*—suggests unselfishness

Image to remember: Oprah Winfrey giving money to build a new school

Write an original sentence using *philanthropy*:

MASTERING CONFUSING WORDS

a / an

a Use *a* before words that begin with a consonant sound:

A car was stuck in front of our driveway.

an Use *an* before words beginning with a vowel (*a, e, i, o, u*) sound:

Mark ate two peanut butter sandwiches and an apple before heading back to his afternoon classes.

Circle the correct answer:

1. Holden is a / an part-time UPS driver.
2. One of my uncles drove a k an Oldsmobile for years.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **a:** _____

2. **an:** _____

REVIEW TEST, CHAPTERS 1-5

Word Parts

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each underlined word part with its definition.

A

- | | | |
|----------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| <u>c</u> | 1. <u>pro</u> ponent | a. study of |
| <u>e</u> | 2. <u>re</u> state | b. to hold |
| <u>d</u> | 3. <u>inter</u> state | c. in favor of, for |
| <u>a</u> | 4. <u>psychology</u> | d. between, among |
| <u>b</u> | 5. <u>tenure</u> | e. again |

B

- | | | |
|----------|---------------------|------------------------------|
| <u>b</u> | 1. <u>un</u> ison | a. against |
| <u>d</u> | 2. <u>sub</u> merge | b. one |
| <u>a</u> | 3. <u>oppon</u> ent | c. person who does something |
| <u>e</u> | 4. <u>pre</u> view | d. under |
| <u>c</u> | 5. <u>humorist</u> | e. before |

C

- | | | |
|----------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| <u>b</u> | 1. <u>status</u> | a. person who does something |
| <u>e</u> | 2. <u>compan</u> ion | b. position, standing |
| <u>a</u> | 3. <u>playe</u> r | c. away from |
| <u>c</u> | 4. <u>de</u> part | d. one |
| <u>d</u> | 5. <u>monoton</u> ous | e. with |

D

- | | | |
|----------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| <u>d</u> | 1. <u>violat</u> ion | a. over, beyond |
| <u>c</u> | 2. <u>atyp</u> ical | b. many |
| <u>a</u> | 3. <u>super</u> sonic | c. opposite |
| <u>e</u> | 4. <u>trans</u> continental | d. act of |
| <u>b</u> | 5. <u>poly</u> gamy | e. across, change to |

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

A

bio tele auto eu ante

1. Does anyone send _____ tele _____ grams anymore?
2. We saw a number of beautiful _____ ante _____ bellum mansions when we were in Louisiana.

- I read an excellent _____ *bio* _____ graphy of President Kennedy during the summer.
- The beautiful _____ *eu* _____ phonic sound soothed us as we awaited the news from the doctor.
- ATM stands for _____ *auto* _____ matic teller machine.

B

rect fid equ pan syn

- Their back deck provides a(n) _____ *pan* _____ oramic view of the Blue Ridge Mountains.
- The flight cadet was tested to see how quickly she recovered her _____ *equ* _____ ilibrium after being spun around in the capsule for five minutes.
- Please don't con _____ *fid* _____ e what I told you to anyone.
- Do you know how to play this music _____ *syn* _____ thesizer? I'd like to blend a number of sounds together when we play our numbers.
- The teacher's aide helped to cor _____ *rect* _____ the papers, so we got them back at our next class session.

C

bi ben phil hyper omni

- The Republicans and Democrats must work in a(n) _____ *bi* _____ partisan way if an effective alternative energy program is to become a reality.
- A(n) _____ *omni* _____ bus is a term referring to something that is all-encompassing.
- Karla is certainly a biblio _____ *phil* _____ e as she has loved books ever since she was a small child.
- A(n) _____ *ben* _____ ediction is a prayer asking for God's blessings.
- That _____ *hyper* _____ active youngster is certainly a challenge for his parents to control as he has more energy than three kids put together.

D

path anti mal vok spec

- To _____ *mal* _____ ign others is to speak badly of them.
- There were over 40,000 _____ *spec* _____ tators who witnessed the thrilling game.

3. The public health official informed the restaurant owners that she would re voke their license unless they met the sanitation requirements.
4. The veterinarian assured the dog's owner that the anti dose he administered would soon restore his pet to good health.
5. I felt sym path y for the old man, but I didn't have any money to give him.

E

mis dis ob ir chron

1. Coach McIntosh seldom gets after the referees, so getting two technical fouls in one game was highly ir regular for him.
2. Patricia is dis contented with her job, so she's looking for other employment.
3. Because of arthritis, my grandfather has had a chron ic ache in his knees for the past eight years.
4. I wasn't surprised that Allen ob jected to an increase in the dues as he likes to hang on to his money.
5. I've worn glasses for only two weeks, but I'm constantly mis laying them; fortunately, though, I've always been able to find them—so far.

F

ible ex ism post ver

1. When the service was over, Carolyn played a moving cello solo for the post lude.
2. That year, our country ex ported more goods than it imported.
3. Keung had to show his driver's license with his picture on it to ver ify his identity before he was permitted to take the exam.
4. Katy is fun to be around because she's always full of optim ism .
5. Do you really think that would be a sens ible thing to do?

Challenging Words

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

A

antediluvian	vociferous	antithesis	transition	anthropology
hypertension	benign	syndrome	empathy	
<u>syndrome</u>	1.	set of symptoms		
<u>hypertension</u>	2.	high blood pressure		
<u>transition</u>	3.	passage from one stage to another		
<u>vociferous</u>	4.	loudly disruptive		
<u>empathy</u>	5.	identification with the feelings of others		
<u>antediluvian</u>	6.	ancient, before the Flood		
<u>anthropology</u>	7.	study of the beginnings of humans		
<u>benign</u>	8.	harmless, mild		
<u>antithesis</u>	9.	opposite, other extreme		

B

malicious	equivocal	omnipotent	philanthropy	rectify
infidelity	dissipate	superfluous	autonomy	
<u>rectify</u>	1.	to make right, to correct		
<u>superfluous</u>	2.	excessive, unnecessary		
<u>malicious</u>	3.	brutal, cruel		
<u>autonomy</u>	4.	independence, self-direction		
<u>philanthropy</u>	5.	generosity, charity		
<u>dissipate</u>	6.	to fade away, to waste away		
<u>infidelity</u>	7.	treason, unfaithfulness		
<u>omnipotent</u>	8.	all-powerful		
<u>equivocal</u>	9.	wavering, uncertain		

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

bilingual biopsy obstreperous specter subterfuge

When Marco came downstairs for breakfast, Giselle, his wife, said, “My goodness, you startled me! You’re so pale you look like some kind of specter from a graveyard!”

c 3. **benign : harmless ::** a. harmless : hurtful
b. hurtful : helpful
c. helpful : supportive
d. supportive : helpless

 a 4. **tentative : certain ::** a. positive : negative
b. inquisitive : curious
c. logical : reasonable
d. inability : incapability

 b 5. **culpable : bad ::** a. praiseworthy : bad
b. innocent : good
c. fame : bad
d. inadequacy : good

Mastering Confusing Words

Circle the correct answer.

1. If Judson should (advice / advise) me to take the job, I will take his (advice / advise).
2. I dripped milk all over the kitchen floor because there was (@ / an) leak in the milk carton, but I was able to clean up the mess because I had (a / an) all-purpose mop.
3. Rocky Marciano, a boxer of the (passed / past), is the only undefeated heavyweight champion in the history of boxing; even Muhammad Ali never (passed / past) Marciano's 49–0 record.
4. Ariana is trying to (device / devise) an effective (device / devise) for keeping her cat out of the living room.
5. Her encouraging words, the doctor thought, would (affect / effect) her patient in a positive way; at least, that was the (affect / effect) she was hoping for.

6. less

- Brigitte is a *fearless* skier.
- It was another beautiful, *cloudless* day in New Mexico.

less means (a) without (b) until _____ a _____ .

7. hem

- *Hemoglobin* is the protein matter contained in red blood cells.
- *Hematology* is the medical study of the blood and blood-producing organs.

hem means (a) small (b) blood _____ b _____ .

8. intra, intro

- *Intrastate* commerce refers to business transactions within a state.
- *Introverts* are people primarily concerned with their own thoughts and feelings.

intra and **intro** mean (a) modern (b) within _____ b _____ .

9. man

- Colin did *manual* work all summer, so he felt fit and strong when he reported for football practice in the fall.
- Her fingernails needed a *manicure*.

man has to do with (a) hands (b) skills _____ a _____ .

10. derm, dermis

- The rash only affected the outer layer of skin and was therefore *epidermal*.
- The *ectodermis* is the outer tissue of the embryo, which is the early developmental state of an organism.

derm and **dermis** have to do with (a) growth (b) skin _____ b _____ .

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each definition with the word part it defines.

<u>g</u>	1. fin	a. blood
<u>h</u>	2. geo	b. water; fluids
<u>f</u>	3. bell	c. skin
<u>b</u>	4. hydro, hydr	d. without
<u>i</u>	5. ambi, amphi	e. hand
<u>d</u>	6. less	f. war
<u>a</u>	7. hem	g. end; limit
<u>j</u>	8. intra, intro	h. earth
<u>e</u>	9. man	i. both
<u>c</u>	10. derm, dermis	j. inside; within

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

fin bell amphi hem man
geo hydro less intra derm

1. Athletic contests among students attending the same institution are referred to as _____ intra _____ mural sports.
2. _____ Amphi _____ bious planes can land on land or water.
3. All living things are _____ fin _____ ite; their days are numbered.
4. The patient began to feel immediate relief after the doctor administered a hypo _____ derm _____ ic injection.
5. _____ Hydro _____ electric power is generated by water.
6. A heavy discharge of blood is called a(n) _____ hem _____ orrhage.
7. Citizens are re _____ bell _____ ing because of the dictator's repression.
8. _____ Geo _____ logy is concerned with the study of rocks and other aspects of the earth's physical history.
9. He was accused of _____ man _____ ipulating the records to cover his fraud.
10. Although it was a gray, cheer _____ less _____ day, Monica was in good spirits.

Matching Words and Definitions

Use your knowledge of the underlined word parts to match the definitions and words.

- | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|---|
| _____ <u>f</u> _____ | 1. <u>peerless</u> | a. the stoppage of bleeding |
| _____ <u>d</u> _____ | 2. <u>geothermal</u> | b. existing before the U.S. Civil War |
| _____ <u>i</u> _____ | 3. <u>hydrofoil</u> | c. handcuffs |
| _____ <u>a</u> _____ | 4. <u>hemostasis</u> | d. relating to earth's internal heat |
| _____ <u>h</u> _____ | 5. <u>infinite</u> | e. skin inflammation |
| _____ <u>j</u> _____ | 6. <u>introspection</u> | f. having no equals; can't be matched |
| _____ <u>b</u> _____ | 7. <u>antebellum</u> | g. having more than one possible meaning; uncertain |
| _____ <u>g</u> _____ | 8. <u>ambiguous</u> | h. without ending |
| _____ <u>e</u> _____ | 9. <u>dermatitis</u> | i. winglike boat |
| _____ <u>c</u> _____ | 10. <u>manacles</u> | j. observation of one's own mental processes |

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write the definitions of the words after noting the underlined word parts and studying the context of the sentences; if you are still unsure, feel free to consult a dictionary.

Typical responses:

1. The director recommended that the rare bird that had just died be taken to the local taxidermist so museum visitors would still be able to see what the bird had looked like in real life.
taxidermist _____ *person who stuffs and mounts the skins of dead animals for exhibition*
2. The beautiful old manuscript, written in the 17th century, was in remarkably good condition.
manuscript _____ *book written by hand*
3. The intravenous injection soon relieved the patient's discomfort.
intravenous _____ *delivered into a vein*
4. Do you have any other fears besides hemophobia?
hemophobia _____ *fear of blood*
5. He remained heedless of the advice offered him by his fellow employees, so, as a consequence, he was soon out of a job.
heedless _____ *throwing caution to the wind; ignoring advice; paying no attention*
6. After being in the scorching sun much of the day, she felt dehydrated, so she drank plenty of water when she got home.
dehydrated _____ *depleted of water; feeling weak from thirst*
7. The child attempted to count the raindrops running down his bedroom window, but they proved to be infinitesimal, so he eventually turned his attention to the toys scattered about his room.
infinitesimal _____ *without end; unable to be counted; limitless*

8. After the *rebellious* crowd was finally quieted, a police officer told the people to disperse or they would be arrested for disturbing the peace.

rebellious _____ *disobedient; feeling defiant; expressing resistance* _____

9. His responses were characteristic of a person who displays both an inward and an outward personality, so he was classified as an *ambivert*.

ambivert _____ *person with a balanced personality, having the qualities of both introversion and extroversion* _____

10. Most astronomical measurements are *geocentric* because objects in space are usually related to their distance from earth.

geocentric _____ *having the earth as the center* _____

Learning Challenging Words from Context Clues

1. **finale** (fə NAL ē)—noun

- When the orchestra finished the *finale* of Beethoven's Ninth Symphony, the audience stood and applauded.
- The Fourth of July celebration's *finale* was highlighted by a spectacular fireworks display.

finale means (a) conclusion (b) prominence _____ *a* _____ .

2. **geopolitics** (JĒ ō POL i tiks)—noun

- *Geopolitics* is a major determiner of how countries relate to each other economically.
- An understanding of a nation's *geopolitics* is important because a country's natural resources and location in the world significantly contribute to the living conditions of its people, including the type of government under which they live.

geopolitics involves the study of how (a) biology (b) geography influences international relationships _____ *b* _____ .

3. **belligerent** (bə LIJ ər ənt)—adjective, noun

- The police officers finally subdued the screaming, *belligerent* person responsible for the commotion.
- The *belligerent* was charged with disorderly conduct and assault.

belligerent is associated with (a) aggressiveness (b) independence _____ *a* _____ .

4. **hydrology** (hi DROL ə jē)—noun

- As a civil engineer specializing in the construction and maintenance of dams, Mr. O’Neil is an expert in *hydrology*.
- Irrigation and landscape specialists must be knowledgeable in *hydrology* since water plays such an important part in their work.

hydrology is a science concerned with the study of (a) water (b) plants a .

5. **ambivalence** (am BIV ə ləns)—noun

- Austen is experiencing *ambivalence* because he can’t decide whether to go to college or to join the Navy.
- Isabella’s *ambivalence* about whether to audition for the repertory theater is understandable because of her already demanding college schedule.

ambivalence is associated with (a) sorrow (b) indecision b .

6. **dauntless** (DANT lis)—adjective

- The *dauntless* eight-year-old girl jumped off the high diving board.
- The firefighters were recognized for their *dauntless* courage in rescuing the terrified family from their burning home.

dauntless means without (a) planning (b) fear b .

7. **hemostat** (HĒ mə STAT)—noun

- The surgeon clamped a *hemostat* on the vein to stop the bleeding.
- The bleeding was slight, so no *hemostat* was needed.

hemostat is a medical instrument used to stop (a) bleeding (b) pain a .

8. **introspection** (IN trə SPEK shən)—noun

- After considerable *introspection*, Toby realized he should apologize to Curtis.
- Reena’s *introspection* has resulted in a number of beautiful songs.

Introspection is most closely related to (a) boldness (b) self-analysis b .

9. **manhandle** (MAN han dəl)—verb

- Our young son soon learned not to *manhandle* the kitten after she scratched him on the arm.
- If you continue to *manhandle* the ladder in that way, you’re either going to hurt yourself or break a window.

manhandle means to do something in a (a) rough (b) complex manner a .



A person who engages in *introspection* tends to be more self-aware. (© David-Young-Wolff/Photo Edit—All rights reserved.)

10. **dermatology** (DUR m ə TOL ə jē)—noun

- Teenagers sometimes suffer so much from acne that they have to consult a specialist in *dermatology*.
- According to this article concerned with *dermatology*, sun-tanning booths are unsafe.

dermatology is concerned with (a) psychological problems (b) the skin b .

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

finale	belligerent	ambivalence	hemostat	manhandle
geopolitics	hydrology	dauntless	introspection	dermatology
<u>finale</u>	1.	the final section, end, climax, final event		
<u>dauntless</u>	2.	without fear, bold, daring		
<u>dermatology</u>	3.	science dealing with the skin and its diseases		
<u>introspection</u>	4.	soul-searching, contemplation		
<u>manhandle</u>	5.	to do something in a gruff or abusive way		
<u>belligerent</u>	6.	aggressively disobedient; person who is hostile and combative		
<u>ambivalence</u>	7.	uncertainty, hesitation, doubt, conflicting feelings		
<u>hemostat</u>	8.	instrument used to compress bleeding vessels		
<u>hydrology</u>	9.	science concerned with the occurrence, circulation, distribution, and properties of water		
<u>geopolitics</u>	10.	study of how geography affects relationships among countries		

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

- | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| finale | belligerent | ambivalence | hemostat | manhandle |
| geopolitics | hydrology | dauntless | introspection | dermatology |
1. Despite the driver's rude and belligerent behavior, the state trooper remained calm and respectful.
 2. Jason engages in a great deal of introspection every time he thinks about his past.
 3. Brooke has finished her basic medical training, and now she plans to specialize in dermatology as she is interested in helping patients with skin cancer and other serious skin diseases.
 4. Although Jim weighs only 130 pounds, he is a(n) dauntless hockey player as he's not afraid to slam into much bigger opponents to get to the puck.
 5. For the finale, the rock band played a medley of its hits, then left the stage to thunderous applause and cheers.

6. Benjamin is enrolled in a two-year program having to do with golf courses, and one of the classes he's presently taking is hydrology since water plays such a crucial role in the proper care of a course's fairways and greens.
7. "Geographical factors," the instructor stressed, "must be understood if insight is to be gained on how a nation interacts with other nations, so pay particular attention to matters relating to geopolitics when this subject enters our discussions."
8. The basketball coach at our small but prestigious college is well known and greatly admired by everyone associated with our school, including players, students, staff, faculty, and administrators, so I can understand his ambivalence about accepting the pressure-packed coaching offer from a large out-of-state university.
9. The instructor scolded the students after he saw them manhandle some of the expensive laboratory equipment.
10. The nervous medical student had difficulty clamping the hemostat on the patient's spurting vein.

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- c 1. The *opposite* of **dauntless** is
- a. tightness
 - b. fearless
 - c. timid
 - d. grouchy
- b 2. The *opposite* of **ambivalence** is
- a. harshness
 - b. certainty
 - c. accelerate
 - d. inspect
- d 3. The *opposite* of **finale** is
- a. demotion
 - b. promotion
 - c. demonstration
 - d. beginning
- a 4. **Geopolitics** is associated with
- a. foreign policy
 - b. national scandal
 - c. advanced mathematics
 - d. dishonest elections

- d 5. **Manhandle** suggests
a. precision
b. distinction
c. weakness
d. mistreatment
- d 6. **Hydrology** is associated with
a. language
b. psychology
c. fire
d. water
- c 7. **Introspection** suggests
a. popularity
b. misery
c. thoughtfulness
d. extravagance
- a 8. **hemostat : medicine ::** a. chalk : teaching
b. trombone : talent
c. radio : advertisements
d. tire : necessity
- c 9. **belligerent : rival ::** a. unfaithful : patriot
b. courageous : coward
c. cooperative : friend
d. insulting : stranger
- d 10. **dermatology : peculiar ::** a. biology : required
b. psychology : average
c. ecology : expected
d. ophthalmology : odd

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

finale geopolitics belligerent hydrology ambivalence
dauntless hemostat introspection manhandle dermatology

COLLEGE NICKNAMES

Numerous colleges, in an effort to portray how fearsome and belligerent their teams are, have nicknames like the Lions, Bulldogs, Wildcats, and Tigers, while others, because of their geographic and economic realities, reflect the influence of a certain amount of geopolitics, such as the Humpback Whales (University of Alaska, Southeast) and the Hardrockers (South Dakota School of Mines and Technology). On the other hand, the Cedar Crest College Classics, the Rowan College Professors, and the St. Louis College of Pharmacy Eutectic (a word having to do with physical chemistry) appear to have been named by an intellectual holed up in a library. Still other names, including the University of Delaware Blue Hens and the College of Atlantic Black Flies, create laughs, puzzlement, or perhaps ambivalence. Other nicknames definitely leave most people scratching their heads: What is an Eph (Williams College Ephs), a Saluki (Southern Illinois University Salukis), or a Gorlok (Webster University Gorloks, St. Louis)?

And how would you like to play for a team called the Banana Slugs (University of California, Santa Cruz) or the Bantams (Trinity College in Hartford, Connecticut)? Don't these nicknames suggest that your opponents could easily manhandle your team? Of course, that's generally not the case, but such nicknames certainly don't indicate that your team is tough and dauntless; those who came up with such nicknames should have had a few minutes of introspection before branding such names on a school's athletic teams.

There are, though, some unusual nicknames that make sense if you take the time to investigate the history of the institution or the state in which they are located: Boilermakers (Purdue University), Cornhuskers (University of Nebraska), Sooners (University of Oklahoma), Judges (Brandeis University), and Poets (Whittier College) are such examples.

For a(n) finale, here are suggestions for some team nicknames that probably are not presently being used: for a department of dermatology team at a medical school—the Skins; for those handy with a(n) hemostat and playing for a College of Surgeons team—the Operators; and, finally, for those playing for a department of hydrology at some university—the Well Diggers.

FEATURED WORD: belligerent

Belligerent—inclined or eager to fight; a person or country engaged in fighting or a war:

- Because of his belligerent attitude toward his classmates, the angry boy was sent to the principal's office.
- The country that was a belligerent in that war is now a peaceful nation.

Origin: 1577 <Latin—*belligerare*—to wage war, *bellum* (war) and *gerera* (to wage) (used as a noun, *belligerent* refers to a party or nation at war, and this use dates from 1811)

Family word: belligerently (adv)

negative—suggests suggests hostility

Image to remember: a baseball manager screaming at an umpire

Write an original sentence using *belligerent*.

MASTERING CONFUSING WORDS

quiet / quite / quit

quiet silent, peaceful:

The night was so quiet I could hear the hall clock ticking downstairs.

quite really, entirely:

Courtney is quite concerned about how she did on her zoology test.

quit to stop, to give up:

Colby was so homesick his freshman year that he almost quit college.

Circle the correct answer:

1. Leila never quiet / quite / quit practicing the piece until she could play it perfectly.
2. It was a quiet / quite / quit party, so there were no complaints from the neighbors.
3. Victor had quiet / quite / quit a time on his trip, including having to spend the night sleeping at the airport.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **quiet:** _____
2. **quite:** _____
3. **quit:** _____

6. non

- My cousin is a *nonconformist*, so he has trouble with those in authority.
- I'm *nonpartisan*, so I don't care which candidate wins the election.

non means (a) super (b) not _____ *b* _____.

7. aud

- The *audio* circuits in the television set reproduce the sound.
- The *auditorium* was almost empty although the game was scheduled to begin in fifteen minutes.

aud is related to (a) technology (b) sound _____ *b* _____.

8. extra, ultra

- It was *extraordinary* for Miami to be so cool in March.
- Our *ultraconservative* senator is opposed to further federal aid for education.

extra and **ultra** mean beyond (a) normal (b) possibility _____ *a* _____.

9. temp

- *Tempo* refers to the speed at which a musical passage is played.
- Angela was appointed as a *temporary* replacement for Brenda.

temp refers to (a) authority (b) time _____ *b* _____.

10. ward

- It had been a long, tiring trip, so we were happy to be finally heading *homeward*.
- After resting for a while, the elderly lady hobbled *forward* to the post office.

ward means (a) toward (b) slowly _____ *a* _____.

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each definition with the word part it defines.

<u> </u> <i>b</i>	1. bon, boun	a. full of
<u> </u> <i>i</i>	2. multi	b. good
<u> </u> <i>g</i>	3. hypo	c. not
<u> </u> <i>j</i>	4. neo	d. beyond; extreme
<u> </u> <i>a</i>	5. ful, ous	e. toward; in the direction of
<u> </u> <i>c</i>	6. non	f. time
<u> </u> <i>h</i>	7. aud	g. under; insufficient
<u> </u> <i>d</i>	8. extra, ultra	h. hear; listen
<u> </u> <i>f</i>	9. temp	i. many
<u> </u> <i>e</i>	10. ward	j. new

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

bon hypo ous aud temp
multi neo non extra ward

1. The wallpaper is multi colored, including shades of blue, red, green, and brown.
2. We were able to understand her speech because she explained the basic concepts in plain, non technical language.
3. My son bought a hide ous Halloween mask.
4. The Gardners are living temp orarily in an apartment on Maple Street.
5. The patient was suffering from hypo calcemia, a deficiency of calcium in the blood.
6. I'm not fond of heights, so I never look down ward once I climb a ladder.
7. The medical laboratory announced it had developed a(n) neo mycin, a new antibiotic to fight a variety of infections.
8. Martina won the cash prize, which was a much-needed bon anza for her.
9. The Olympic Games were a wonderful extra vaganza to watch.
10. The aud ience sat in complete silence during the children's concert.

Matching Words and Definitions

Use your knowledge of the underlined word parts to match the definitions and words.

- | | | |
|----------|---------------------------|--|
| <u>c</u> | 1. <u>temporal</u> | a. unwilling to take sides or commit oneself; cautious |
| <u>f</u> | 2. <u>extracurricular</u> | b. deficiency in size; underdeveloped condition |
| <u>a</u> | 3. <u>noncommittal</u> | c. concerned with time |
| <u>h</u> | 4. <u>auditory</u> | d. reflecting a new interest in or rebirth of old architectural, artistic, or musical styles |
| <u>i</u> | 5. <u>tumultuous</u> | e. abundant; generous |
| <u>d</u> | 6. <u>neoclassic</u> | f. in addition to or outside of the regular academic offerings |
| <u>b</u> | 7. <u>hypoplasia</u> | g. facing the direction toward which the wind is blowing |
| <u>j</u> | 8. <u>multilingual</u> | h. having to do with sound or hearing |
| <u>g</u> | 9. <u>leeward</u> | i. full of violence or noisy commotion |
| <u>e</u> | 10. <u>bountiful</u> | j. speaking many languages |

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write the definitions of the words after noting the underlined word parts and studying the context of the sentences; if you are still uncertain, feel free to consult a dictionary.

Typical responses:

1. Since his retirement, my grandfather has become a voracious reader, reading everything from newspapers to novels and from poems to periodicals.

voracious _____ *ravenous; devouring; enthusiastic; ardent; avid*

2. What he said was inaudible to me because of the noisy traffic passing by.

inaudible _____ *unable to be heard*

3. The infection had spread to the hypodermal area, so it was fortunate indeed that Anton's friends had finally succeeded in persuading him to go to the emergency room for treatment.

hypodermal _____ *under the skin*

4. Every time Greg asked about his promised promotion, his boss either changed the subject, pretended he didn't hear, or resorted to some other temporizing tactic.

temporizing _____ *delaying; stalling; procrastinating*

5. The realtor told us that ours was the only bonafide offer made for the property, so she was sure the owners would accept it.

bonafide _____ *authentic; genuine; real*

6. His tendency to inwardness became even more noticeable to his few friends after his girlfriend broke up with him.

inwardness _____ *introversion; shyness*

7. The teacher often supplemented her lectures with impressive multimedia presentations.

multimedia _____ *using a variety of visual and audio displays, such as computer graphics, films, DVDs, audiotapes, brochures*

8. Stan is known for being a *nonconformist*, so few people were surprised that he showed up at the banquet wearing bib overalls instead of a tuxedo.

nonconformist _____ *maverick; misfit; lone wolf; oddball*

9. Having never been around babies much before, the medical student was pleasantly surprised by how much he enjoyed working in the *neonatal* section of the hospital.

neonatal _____ *relating to new or young babies*

10. The machine's *ultrasonic* frequency is well beyond a human's hearing capacity.

ultrasonic having a sound with such a high frequency it's beyond human hearing

Learning Challenging Words from Context Clues

1. **bounteous** (BOUN tē əs)—adjective

- All the wheat farmers I've recently talked to are in a happy frame of mind because they expect a *bounteous* harvest in a couple of weeks.
- The flood victims expressed their gratitude for the *bounteous* gifts of food, furniture, appliances, and money from their fellow citizens throughout the country.

bounteous means (a) beautiful (b) plentiful _____ *b* _____ .

2. **multifaceted** (MUL tə FAS ə tid)—adjective

- Bradley has *multifaceted* interests, ranging from Civil War history to kayaking.
- Arianna's *multifaceted* acting talent enables her to play many roles.

multifaceted is related to (a) many (b) impressive _____ *a* _____ .

3. **hypochondria** (HĪ pə KON drē ə)—noun

- My uncle was usually in good physical health, but his spirits were often low because he worried constantly that he was harboring some serious illness; *hypochondria*, unfortunately, had plagued him much of his life.
- The doctor said a significant number of his patients had nothing wrong with them other than depression brought on by their *hypochondria*, or imaginary illnesses.

hypochondria is a preoccupation with (a) social approval (b) supposed ailments _____ *b* _____ .

4. **neophyte** (NĒ ə FĪT)—noun

- I had played golf only once before, but, fortunately, my companion was also a *neophyte*.
- Ayo is certainly not a *neophyte* drummer as he's been playing with one band or another since he was in seventh grade.

neophyte means a (a) beginner (b) shy person _____ *a* _____ .

5. **acrimonious** (ak rə MŌ nē əs)—adjective

- I thought my friends were having an *acrimonious* discussion, but I finally realized they were just kidding one another.
- The *acrimonious* shouting was from one of my neighbors who was upset because my dog had made a mess on his lawn.

acrimonious means (a) unreasonable (b) angry _____ *b* _____ .

6. **nondescript** (NON də SKRIPT)—adjective

- Most of the guests were stylishly dressed, but a few were wearing *nondescript* jeans, khakis, and rumpled sweaters or sweatshirts.
- He obviously isn't interested in cars or doesn't make much money because he drives a ten-year-old *nondescript* four-door sedan.

nondescript means (a) colorful (b) dull _____ *b* _____ .

7. **audible** (Ō də bəl)—adjective

- Because Olivia had yelled so much at the game, her voice was barely *audible* when she got home.
- The instructor uses a microphone to make his voice *audible* throughout the large lecture hall.

audible means (a) hearable (b) accented _____ *a* _____ .

8. **extraneous** (ik STRĀ nē əs)—adjective

- One of the committee members continuously made comments having nothing to do with the topic, and his *extraneous* remarks unnecessarily prolonged the meeting.
- The contractor tried to add some *extraneous* charges to his bill, but when I challenged him about their fairness, he agreed to drop them.

extraneous means (a) complicated (b) irrelevant _____ *b* _____ .

9. **contemporary** (kən TEM pə rer ē)—adjective, noun

- My older brother, a classically trained musician, doesn't care much for *contemporary* music.
- Devon was a *contemporary* of mine in high school, so he must be around twenty-six years old, as I am.

contemporary refers to the (a) present, or of the same time (b) past, or of a different era _____ a _____.

10. **wayward** (WĀ wərd)—adjective

- The kindergarten teacher at first had difficulty with the *wayward* youngster because he refused to sit down or to participate in any activity.
- One of my relatives' *wayward* way of life has resulted in two failed marriages and the loss of numerous jobs.

wayward means (a) secretive (b) unruly _____ b _____.

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

bounteous	hypochondria	acrimonious	audible	contemporary
multifaceted	neophyte	nondescript	extraneous	wayward
<u>nondescript</u>	1.	unremarkable, lacking in distinctive qualities		
<u>extraneous</u>	2.	beside the point, irrelevant, unnecessary		
<u>multifaceted</u>	3.	many-sided, wide-ranging		
<u>acrimonious</u>	4.	harsh, bitter, hostile, angry		
<u>audible</u>	5.	capable of being heard		
<u>wayward</u>	6.	turning away from what is right and proper; disobedient, contrary, obstinate		
<u>hypochondria</u>	7.	a preoccupation with imaginary illnesses		
<u>bounteous</u>	8.	plentiful, generous, overflowing, abundant		
<u>neophyte</u>	9.	amateur, beginner		
<u>contemporary</u>	10.	of the same time or date, or of the here and now		

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

bounteous hypochondria acrimonious audible contemporary
multifaceted neophyte nondescript extraneous wayward

1. We were talking about the importance of Josh getting a date when Isaiah started making _____ *extraneous* _____ remarks about the great time he had had in Las Vegas.
2. I grew up in a(n) _____ *nondescript* _____ housing development, the type you see in almost every city.
3. One of my grandfathers is now wearing hearing aids because normal sounds and conversations were no longer _____ *audible* _____ to him.
4. In my opinion, _____ *contemporary* _____ cars are much better designed and engineered than those of any other time.
5. The employee benefits are indeed _____ *bounteous* _____, so it's no wonder the company has no difficulty filling a position when one does become available.
6. An elderly person well known for his _____ *hypochondria* _____ throughout his life had engraved on his tombstone "See, I told you I was sick!"
7. Because he is a(n) _____ *neophyte* _____ in the teaching profession, our instructor was obviously nervous the first couple of weeks of the semester.
8. Their _____ *wayward* _____ son, who had a previous criminal record, was recently sentenced to five years in prison.
9. Flying, I quickly learned, is a(n) _____ *multifaceted* _____ undertaking as there are many things to learn and many skills to master.
10. The chefs were having a(n) _____ *acrimonious* _____ debate over who was to be in charge of the lavish meal.

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- _____ *a* _____ 1. The *opposite* of **acrimonious** is
a. friendly
b. dangerous
c. spacious
d. hostile
- _____ *d* _____ 2. The *opposite* of **bounteous** is
a. ugly
b. intelligent
c. stiff
d. scarce

- c 3. The *opposite* of **nondescript** is
a. continuous
b. interfering
c. unique
d. ordinary
- b 4. **Hypochondria** is associated with people who think they are
a. foolish
b. sick
c. disliked
d. religious
- d 5. Which of the following is likely to be the most **audible**?
a. memo
b. gesture
c. whisper
d. shout
- c 6. **Multifaceted** is associated with
a. expense
b. simplicity
c. variety
d. lying
- c 7. If a person is **wayward**, he or she is likely to be
a. popular
b. talented
c. defiant
d. friendly
- a 8. **contemporary : modern ::** a. modern : up-to-date
b. up-to-date : old-fashioned
c. old-fashioned : current
d. current : out of style
- d 9. **extraneous : essential ::** a. necessary : required
b. character : personality
c. happy : delighted
d. neat : sloppy
- b 10. **neophyte : beginner ::** a. neighbor : stranger
b. rookie : trainee
c. expert : amateur
d. teacher : student

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

bounteous multifaceted hypochondria neophyte acrimonious
nondescript audible extraneous contemporary wayward

“SOCIAL HOST” LAWS

Albion, seventeen, was a(n) multifaceted high school junior, a member of the choir, student council, and soccer and track teams. Far from having a(n) nondescript personality, he was considered quite a unique person because of all of his talents. But when it came to drinking beer, Albion was a(n) neophyte, as he should have been, considering his age. On the other hand, his contemporary, Lucas, had been drinking beer for the past two years, generally in the privacy of his home and with the consent of his parents. One afternoon after track practice, Lucas invited Albion and some other friends over to his house to watch TV and to have some refreshments. With his mother’s permission, Lucas got three six-packs of beer out of the basement refrigerator. Lucas and some others then talked a reluctant Albion into sharing a few beers with them. Within an hour, Albion was complaining of feeling sick, but the others laughed at him because Albion was well known for his hypochondria; he loudly moaned of pulled muscles and a sick stomach every time he raced in a meet. However, when he started vomiting and then passed out, Lucas and his mother became alarmed and rushed Albion to the emergency room at the local hospital, where his stomach had to be pumped because of alcohol poisoning.

“Albion” incidents are much too common, even though furnishing alcohol to minors is prohibited in all fifty states; however, because it is a criminal offense, it is often frustratingly difficult to get the necessary burden of proof for a conviction. Consequently, numerous communities and counties throughout this rich, bounteous nation have been adopting civil ordinances relating to underage drinking. Then if a “furnishing alcohol to a minor” infraction occurs, the violation can be legally dealt with administratively rather than by the court system, saving law authorities a great deal of extraneous time, energy, and taxpayers’ money.

These civil ordinances, referred to as “social host” laws, enable the police to break up home parties and fine parents or other wayward adults who permit underage drinking \$2,500 or more. Even if parents are out of town or unaware of an underage drinking party, they are held responsible; the ordinances indicate they should have

known teens might drink illegally at their home. Parents sometimes object to this provision, not only in a clear, audible way but also in an angry, acrimonious manner, but their objections have not been met with sympathy by the courts.

These “social host” laws should be seriously considered everywhere because alcohol abuse, including binge drinking, is among the leading causes of death among America’s youth. Because surveys indicate that a large percentage of underage drinking occurs at house parties, it is hoped that the growth of “social host” laws in communities across the nation will dramatically decrease alcohol-related deaths among teenagers.

FEATURED WORD: neophyte

Neophyte—a beginner:

Pedro was a neophyte when it came to driving in the snow, so he was happy to let Dylan drive.

Origin: 1500s <Latin—*neophytes*—new convert <Greek—*neophytos*—newly planted; *neos* (new) and *phytos* (planted) (*neophyte*’s meaning of “one who is new to any subject” was first recorded in 1599)

Connotation: *neutral*—a synonym for beginner

Image to remember: Tiger Woods giving a young boy his first golf lesson

Write an original sentence using *neophyte*:

than use in comparisons:

The large shopping mall was busier today than it was on Saturday.

then when, at that time:

After working for a year, Jodi then plans to attend graduate school.

Circle the correct answer:

1. After they went bowling, they than / then went to a nearby pizza restaurant.
2. I'd rather finish the job today than / then come back tomorrow to do it.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **than:** _____
2. **then:** _____

Learning Word Parts from Context Clues

1. ann, enn

- Our *annual* family reunion will be in Ohio this year.
- We look forward to our *perennial* flowers blooming every spring.

ann and **enn** mean (a) beautiful (b) year _____ *b* _____ .

2. gram, graph

- We completed the project by following the steps outlined in the *diagram*.
- The television star signed her *autograph* on the restaurant's menu.

gram and **graph** mean (a) writing (b) working _____ *a* _____ .

3. phon

- A specific speech sound is known as a *phoneme*.
- Our old *phonograph* still has an excellent sound.

phon is most closely associated with (a) sound (b) music _____ *a* _____ .

4. mor, mort

- After his serious illness, he realized his *mortality* for the first time.
- Mr. Wolfe, who operates a funeral home on Sixth Street, has been a *mortician* for over forty years.

mor and **mort** are most closely associated with (a) endurance (b) death _____ *b* _____ .

5. pos

- Lucas was promoted to a supervisory *position*.
- During the museum's remodeling, paintings were stored in a *repository*.

pos has to do with (a) leadership (b) location _____ *b* _____ .

6. cap

- Sergio was elected *captain* of the team.
- Madison is the *capital* of Wisconsin.

cap means (a) head (b) fame _____ *a* _____ .

7. dia

- The length of a straight line through the center of a figure is the *diameter*.
- The *diastolic* reading is obtained when the blood is passing through the heart's chambers.

dia means passing (a) through (b) around _____ a _____ .

8. ness

- Mr. Hidu enjoys the *quietness* of the early mornings.
- Everybody was enjoying the child's *silliness* except his embarrassed parents.

ness relates to (a) absence of (b) condition of _____ b _____ .

9. hetero

- Words having the same spelling but different pronunciations and meanings, such as *lead* (a metal) and *lead* (to conduct), are called *heteronyms*.
- Animals of this type are generally *heterochromatic*, that is, of mixed colors.

hetero refers to (a) difference (b) similarity _____ a _____ .

10. homo

- Words having the identical spelling and pronunciation but different meanings, such as *bat* (a club) and *bat* (a flying mammal), are called *homonyms*.
- Animals of this type are generally *homochromatic*, that is, one color.

homo refers to (a) difference (b) similarity _____ b _____ .

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each definition with the word part it defines.

<u> </u> f	1. ann, enn	a. sound
<u> </u> c	2. gram, graph	b. condition of; capable of
<u> </u> a	3. phon	c. write
<u> </u> j	4. mor, mort	d. same; like
<u> </u> h	5. pos	e. head; chief
<u> </u> e	6. cap	f. year
<u> </u> i	7. dia	g. different
<u> </u> b	8. ness	h. place; location
<u> </u> g	9. hetero	i. through
<u> </u> d	10. homo	j. death

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

enn phon pos dia hetero
graph mort cap ness homo

1. His stooped _____ pos _____ ture is due to a back injury.
2. A(n) _____ dia _____ gonal path had been worn in the grass leading from the post office to the bank.
3. Our college will be celebrating its cent _____ enn _____ ial this year.
4. Tragically, the injuries the young woman suffered in the accident proved _____ mort _____ al; she died a few hours later.
5. The article begins with a(n) _____ cap _____ tion that summarizes the major points the author discusses.
6. _____ Homo _____ genized milk is made by blending milk and cream.
7. _____ Phon _____ ics is a method of teaching reading by having students master the common sounds of letters and letter combinations.
8. Holding religious views contrary to established church doctrines is known as _____ hetero _____ doxy.
9. Tamar eventually tired of her boyfriend's moodi _____ ness _____, so she broke up with him.
10. The term associated with correct spelling is ortho _____ graph _____ y.

Matching Words and Definitions

Use your knowledge of the underlined word parts to match the definitions and words.

- | | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|---|
| _____ <u>g</u> _____ | 1. <u>phonetic</u> | a. to place, put, or set |
| _____ <u>e</u> _____ | 2. <u>haughtiness</u> | b. having a common center |
| _____ <u>i</u> _____ | 3. <u>graphite</u> | c. muscular membrane across the lower part of the chest |
| _____ <u>j</u> _____ | 4. <u>decapitate</u> | d. funeral room |
| _____ <u>b</u> _____ | 5. <u>homocentric</u> | e. excessive pride and arrogance |
| _____ <u>c</u> _____ | 6. <u>diaphragm</u> | f. occurring twice a year |
| _____ <u>d</u> _____ | 7. <u>mortuary</u> | g. pertaining to speech sounds |
| _____ <u>f</u> _____ | 8. <u>biannual</u> | h. pertaining to the opposite sex |
| _____ <u>h</u> _____ | 9. <u>heterosexual</u> | i. mineral used for pencil leads |
| _____ <u>a</u> _____ | 10. <u>posit</u> | j. to cut off the head |

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write the definitions of the words after noting the underlined word parts and studying the context of the sentences; if you are still uncertain, feel free to consult a dictionary.

Typical responses:

1. Fred's tendency for gaudiness in clothes was very much in evidence as he was wearing orange slacks, a red shirt, a purple tie, green sneakers, and an old-fashioned straw hat.

gaudiness _____ flashiness; loudness; flamboyance _____

2. Management refused to capitulate to the union's demands, so a strike costly to both sides occurred.

capitulate _____ give in; surrender; yield; concede _____

3. A small white monogram on the upper-left side of his blue sweater read "BJs."
a design with a few letters—usually a person's initials—often

monogram _____ sewn on a shirt or sweater _____

4. My aunt's heterodox religious views contrasted sharply with those held by all the churches in the community, so she never became a member of any of them.

heterodox _____ not in agreement with accepted beliefs _____

5. A number of new file cabinets and an impressively large walnut desk were juxtaposed against the south wall of his spacious new office.

juxtaposed _____ placed side by side _____

6. The manager's diatribe against the homeplate umpire could be heard throughout the stands.

diatribe _____ tirade; verbal abuses; bawling out; cursing _____

7. The houses in the new subdivision were attractive, but their homogeneity turned me off.

homogeneity _____ sameness; uniformity _____

8. If the Cubs, White Sox, Bears, Blackhawks, and Bulls would all win championships in the same year, it would certainly be an *annus mirabilis*!

annus mirabilis _____ a year of wonders or miracles

9. The state trooper warned the young woman to drive slower and more carefully in such conditions; otherwise, he said, she might discover she wasn't *immortal*, as she apparently assumed she was.

immortal _____ never dying; living forever

10. Words such as *great-grate*, *to-two-too*, and *bare-bear* are *homophones*.

homophones _____ words that sound alike but have different meanings and spellings

Learning Challenging Words from Context Clues

1. **annuity** (ə NOO ə tē)—noun

- Rosa is contributing to a financial plan that will pay her an *annuity* of guaranteed income every month after she retires.
- My grandparents' income is based upon social security payments and an *annuity* they receive four times a year.

annuity refers to financial (a) deductions (b) payments during specific times of the year _____ b _____.

2. **graphology** (gra FOL ə jē)—noun

- An expert on *graphology* is studying the suspect's handwriting to see if it corresponds to that on the ransom note.
- A *graphology* analysis indicated my friend is a confident, optimistic person, but I'm not convinced handwriting reveals that much about a person's personality.

graphology is concerned with the study of (a) handwriting (b) health _____ a _____.

3. **cacophony** (kə KOF ə nē)—noun

- The *cacophony* of music, laughter, and shouting next door made sleeping impossible.
- Before the concert began, members of the orchestra tuned their instruments separately, creating a *cacophony* of weird sounds.

cacophony refers to sounds that are (a) harsh (b) pleasant _____ a _____.

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

annuity cacophony composure diaphanous heterogeneous
graphology moribund capricious blandness homogeneous

1. Until the AMTRAK system was developed, passenger trains were practically moribund in most states.
2. Heidi suddenly felt like doing something capricious, so instead of going to work, she turned her car around and headed for the mall.
3. The soldiers looked so homogeneous in their uniforms when they marched by the reviewing stand that Jennifer couldn't pick out her husband.
4. According to experts in graphology, people's handwriting reveals a great deal about their character.
5. The racetrack was a(n) cacophony of squealing tires, gunning motors, and blaring reports from the stadium's speakers.
6. Brent said his IRA (individual retirement account) will eventually provide him with a(n) annuity, guaranteeing him a certain income for life.
7. Although the Eagles trailed throughout most of the game, they kept their composure and were able to rally and pull out a victory.
8. We had nothing in common, but despite our heterogeneous backgrounds and interests, my new roommate and I became good friends by the end of the semester.
9. Even though it's a(n) diaphanous material, gauze is a strong cloth.
10. Some critics panned the movie for its blandness, saying the dialogue was boring and the plot predictable.

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- c 1. The *opposite* of **capricious** is
- a. capable
 - b. healthy
 - c. predictable
 - d. stingy
- b 2. The *opposite* of **cacophony** is
- a. genuine
 - b. melodious
 - c. embarrassing
 - d. hilarious

- a 3. The *opposite* of **composure** is
a. frantic
b. confident
c. secretive
d. calm
- b 4. **Graphology** is associated with
a. music
b. penmanship
c. swimming
d. mathematics
- c 5. Who would most likely receive an **annuity**?
a. beginning lawyer
b. experienced electrician
c. retired teacher
d. elected official
- d 6. If a person is **heterogeneous**, he or she is likely to be interested in the
a. stock market
b. sports world
c. outdoors
d. opposite sex
- a 7. If a material is **diaphanous**, then it can
a. be seen through
b. be purchased at a reasonable price
c. rarely be made
d. resist wear
- d 8. **homogeneous : similar ::** a. large : small
b. neighborly : unfriendly
c. attractive : repulsive
d. identical : same
- c 9. **moribund : lively ::** a. winning : joyful
b. sad : depressed
c. inactive : energetic
d. complex : interesting
- d 10. **blandness : vigor ::** a. vigorous : peppy
b. peppy : dynamic
c. dynamic : exciting
d. exciting : dull

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

homogeneous annuity graphology cacophony moribund
capricious diaphanous blandness heterogeneous composure

YOUNG ADULTS AND INSURANCE

Studies confirm that the majority of skateboarders, snowboarders, hang gliders, bungee jumpers, and other thrill seekers are in their teens, twenties, and early thirties. Though heterogeneous in gender, those in this age group are homogeneous in certain traits, including their willingness to take chances; specifically, adults below the age of thirty-five are much more likely to take major risks than people in any other age group. Part of the reason is that everyday routines appear to have a(n) blandness to them that many find intolerable after a while, and even the financial security and personal composure that can result from having a steady, well-paying job soon lose their appeal to a surprisingly large number of young people.

A willingness to take risks can produce an interesting and rewarding life; however, if this lifestyle results in capricious behavior, there can be serious and lifelong consequences.

For example, many young adults pooh-poo the idea that it is critical that they have adequate medical insurance, especially if they have to buy it themselves. A significant number of these adults, despite the cacophony heard during election years about the need for universal health coverage, are uninsured because they are willing to take the risk that they won't get seriously sick or injured. This is a foolhardy decision, because a serious illness could easily result in a hospital bill of over \$100,000; a traumatic injury suffered in a car accident could exceed \$750,000. It doesn't take experts to read thin, diaphanous tea leaves or to analyze a person's writing (that is, use graphology) to know that if either of the above misfortunes happens to the uninsured, he or she will likely be spending the rest of his or her days, even when he or she is moribund, trying to pay off his or her medical bills.

Sure, it's important for young adults to invest in a(n) annuity for retirement purposes, but securing adequate medical coverage should be their top priority; willingness to take risks has its place, but not when it comes to this matter.

FEATURED WORD: capricious

Capricious—characterized by acting on an impulse, on the spur of the moment, or on a whim:

- Jack was in a capricious mood when he suddenly jumped on top of the table and began singing at the top of his lungs.

Origin: 1667 <French—*caprice*—whim <Italian—*capriccio*—a shivering; probably from *capro* (goat) referring to frisking, but another theory connects “capricious” to *capo* (head) + *riccio* (curl, frizzled) <Latin *ericius* (“hedgehog,” hair standing on end like a hedgehog). The use of “capricious” was first attested in 1594.

Family words: caprice (n), capriciousness (n), capriciously (adv)

Connotation: generally considered *negative*, but can also be a *neutral* word as it is linked to unpredictable

Image to remember: a fully clothed man suddenly jumping into a swimming pool

Write an original sentence using *capricious*:

their possessive pronoun meaning “belongs to them”:

I believe their house is located on Brighton Avenue.

there points out something or refers to a location or place:

There is the car Zachary hopes to buy someday.

Roxana is standing over there by the newsstand.

they're a contraction standing for “they are”:

I think they're planning to go to the theater with us.

Circle the correct answer:

1. The car parked over their / (there) / they're by the fire hydrant has a parking ticket tucked under one of its windshield wipers.
2. Did you know that (their) / there / they're coach used to play for Penn State?
3. When their / there / (they're) here visiting us, please make them feel welcome.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **their:** _____
2. **there:** _____
3. **they're:** _____

Learning Word Parts from Context Clues

1. **contra, contro, counter**

- She *contradicted* what Juanita had told me.
- The *controversy* was about who was responsible for paying the bill.
- Our team made several successful *counterattacks*, finally winning the game in the closing minutes of the fourth quarter.

contra, contro, and counter mean (a) against (b) support a .

2. **psych**

- *Psychosis* is a general term to indicate a severe mental disorder or disease.
- A *psychosomatic* problem is a physical disorder caused by the mind or emotions.

psych refers to the (a) body (b) mind b .

3. **semi**

- A *semicolon* (;) is part colon and part comma.
- We arranged our chairs in a *semicircle*, but after more people arrived, we made a complete circle.

semi means (a) complete (b) half b .

4. **dic**

- Sanjay's *diction* was influenced by his childhood years in England.
- Mr. Reed's *dictation* was concerned with the sales campaign.

dic has to do with (a) talk (b) intelligence a .

5. **meter, metr**

- A *barometer* measures atmospheric pressure.
- *Trigonometry* is a branch of mathematics concerned with the calculations of sides and angles of triangles.

meter and metr have to do with (a) measuring (b) solving a .

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each definition with the word part it defines.

<u> e </u>	1. contra, contro, counter	a. measure
<u> c </u>	2. psych	b. heat
<u> h </u>	3. semi	c. mind; spirit
<u> f </u>	4. dic	d. human
<u> a </u>	5. meter, metr	e. opposed to
<u> j </u>	6. terr	f. say; tell
<u> d </u>	7. anthrop	g. before
<u> g </u>	8. fore	h. half of
<u> i </u>	9. se	i. apart from; away
<u> b </u>	10. therm	j. earth

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

counter semi meter anthrop se
psych dic terr fore therm

1. A dic tator exercises absolute control; his or her word becomes the law of the land.
2. A terr ace is a strip of land with steep sides.
3. Therm odynamics is concerned with the relationships between heat and the mechanical energy of work.
4. Seth longed for the se clusion of his country home after experiencing the hustle and bustle of the city.
5. Psych oanalysis is concerned with the relationship between the conscious and unconscious minds.
6. It was a fore gone conclusion they would marry soon after graduation.
7. Anthrop oids are animals, such as apes, that resemble humans.
8. People included in this study were examined semi annually, in January and July.
9. Smoking is certainly counter productive to your otherwise good health practices.
10. A hygro meter measures the water content in the atmosphere.

Matching Words and Definitions

Use your knowledge of the underlined word parts to match the definitions and words.

<u>i</u>	1. <u>semi</u> spheric	a. official pronouncement, saying
<u>f</u>	2. <u>psycho</u> genic	b. separate, set apart
<u>j</u>	3. <u>gravi</u> meter	c. stubborn, disobedient, opposite, clashing
<u>h</u>	4. <u>terrari</u> um	d. pertaining to heat or temperature
<u>a</u>	5. <u>dictum</u>	e. association of human characteristics with nonhuman beings or things
<u>g</u>	6. <u>foreshadow</u>	f. originating in the mind
<u>c</u>	7. <u>contra</u> ry	g. to show or indicate beforehand
<u>d</u>	8. <u>therm</u> al	h. a glass case containing land animals and plants
<u>b</u>	9. <u>segregate</u>	i. shaped like half of a round figure
<u>e</u>	10. <u>anthropomorphism</u>	j. instrument used to measure gravity

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write the definitions of the words after noting the underlined word parts and studying the context of the sentences; if you are still uncertain, feel free to consult a dictionary.

Typical responses:

1. At times, Mr. McPherson reluctantly used a computer to write short messages, but he still preferred to use his old-fashioned dictaphone for letters.

dictaphone apparatus that records and reproduces dictation for transcription

2. Beth finally decided to write her term paper on anthropogenesis because she thought learning about the beginning and development of humankind would be interesting.

anthropogenesis the scientific study of the origins and development of humans

3. The veteran sergeant decided to contravene the newly commissioned lieutenant's order because he knew the order would actually result in trouble for him, the lieutenant, and the troops under their command.

contravene oppose; contradict; nullify

4. Her outstanding athletic success in high school provided her with a foretaste of the fame that could await her in college.

foretaste sample; advance indication

5. Sheila Walker, M.D., has always been interested in the mental and emotional health of people, so she has decided to specialize in *psychiatry*.

psychiatry branch of medicine dealing with mental and emotional disorders

6. The *secretion* from the gland was causing the condition.

secretion a substance that is generated and separates from cells or bodily fluids

7. After he got back from his week's jaunt, Todd checked his motorcycle's *odometer*, which showed he had traveled 2,011 miles.

odometer instrument measuring miles traveled

8. On the first day of class, our professor asked, "So what do you good people think *thermochemistry* will be about?"

thermochemistry chemistry of heat and heat-associated reactions

9. The victim was found *semiconscious* sprawled underneath a ladder.

semiconscious partially awake; not completely aware

10. Actually, dolphins, porpoises, whales, and sharks are not considered *terrestrial* animals because they live in water.

terrestrial having to do with the earth or land

Learning Challenging Words from Context Clues

1. **contraband** (KON trə BAND)—noun

- The Border Patrol arrested the pair for trying to sneak *contraband*, including stolen jewelry, into the country.
- Among the major duties of the Coast Guard is to seize all ships carrying any type of *contraband*, such as banned drugs, near our shores.

contraband refers to trade and items that are (a) priceless (b) illegal b .

2. **psychedelic** (SĪ kə DEL ik)—adjective

- Members of the rock band were wearing *psychedelic* short-sleeve shirts containing splashes of purple, blue, yellow, red, orange, and green.
- The artist who painted this *psychedelic* picture must have been hallucinating as all the people and objects in it are badly distorted.

psychedelic describes perceptions that are (a) wild (b) dignified _____ a _____ .



Rock star Jimi Hendrix created *psychedelic* effects in his music through the use of guitar feedback and distortion. (Michael Ochs Archives/Getty Images)

8. **foreboding** (fôr BŌ ding)—noun

- Matthew had a *foreboding* he wouldn't be happy living in the apartment he had verbally agreed to rent, so he called the apartment manager to tell him he had changed his mind.
- Megan's *foreboding* about going to class turned out to be justified as the instructor gave a surprise test for which she was completely unprepared.

foreboding is (a) an uneasy feeling about the future (b) an immature response _____ a _____.

9. **sedition** (si DISH ən)—noun

- After years of turmoil, the colonists finally declared their independence from Great Britain, but the British authorities took forceful steps in a futile attempt to stop the *sedition*.
- The dictator, fearing *sedition*, ordered the military to arrest the rioters and to enforce an 8:00 P.M. curfew for all citizens.

sedition is a (a) strike (b) rebellion _____ b _____.

10. **hypothermia** (HĪ pə THUR mē ə)—noun

- Although the crew members were rescued from the icy sea within minutes of their ship's capsizing, they all suffered from *hypothermia*.
- After I got home from sledding one frigid day in January, I couldn't stop shivering because of *hypothermia*, so Dad wrapped me in a couple of blankets and Mom had me drink a couple of cups of hot chocolate.

hypothermia is a body temperature that is (a) above (b) below _____ b _____ normal.

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

contraband	semicentennial	altimeter	misanthrope	sedition
psychedelic	malediction	terrain	foreboding	hypothermia
<u>malediction</u>	1. curse, damning, threat, insult, slander			
<u>misanthrope</u>	2. hater of humankind			
<u>contraband</u>	3. smuggled goods, goods prohibited in trade			
<u>sedition</u>	4. incitement of public disorder against the government, rebellion, riot			
<u>semicentennial</u>	5. fiftieth anniversary			
<u>terrain</u>	6. plot of land with reference to its natural features			
<u>hypothermia</u>	7. below normal body temperature			
<u>psychedelic</u>	8. describes distorted images or exaggerated representations			
<u>foreboding</u>	9. a strong inner certainty of a future misfortune, an omen			
<u>altimeter</u>	10. instrument used to measure altitude			

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

contraband semicentennial altimeter misanthrope sedition
psychedelic malediction terrain foreboding hypothermia

1. The wealthy man, considered a(n) misanthrope because of the nasty way he treated people throughout his life, left his entire fortune to various charitable causes.
2. After we refused to give money to the young beggar, he shouted a(n) malediction at us as we walked away.
3. When the phone rang around one in the morning, I had a(n) foreboding. I was about to receive some bad news, but, fortunately, I was wrong.
4. The plane's altimeter indicated we had quickly reached a height of nearly 7,000 feet.
5. The psychedelic picture looked like the artist had simply thrown buckets of red, purple, yellow, and black paint on the canvas.
6. Iowa, one of the leading agricultural states, has some of the richest terrain in the nation.
7. A popular rebel leader was arrested and accused of sedition by leaders of the central government.
8. Canadian customs officials checked our car, packages, and luggage for contraband before waving us on our way.
9. When we go ice fishing, we make sure we wear sufficient winter clothes and have a source of heat as there is always a danger of hypothermia because of the freezing temperatures and frigid wind.
10. The semicentennial anniversary of the Youth Center in our small community will be celebrated by special events throughout the year.

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- a 1. The *opposite* of a **malediction** is a
- a. blessing
 - b. triumph
 - c. defeat
 - d. curse

- d 2. The *opposite* of **sedition** is
a. laughter
b. reward
c. transfer
d. loyalty
- c 3. The *opposite* of **psychedelic** is
a. unhealthy
b. colorful
c. realistic
d. disturbing
- b 4. An **altimeter** is an instrument used to measure
a. precipitation
b. altitude
c. relative humidity
d. wind velocity
- b 5. **Semicentennial** is associated with the number
a. twenty-five
b. fifty
c. seventy-five
d. one hundred
- a 6. **Contraband** is associated with goods obtained by
a. illegal means
b. trading
c. credit
d. cash
- d 7. If a person is a **misanthrope**, he or she is likely to
a. enjoy entertaining
b. enjoy family reunions
c. dislike exercise
d. dislike social gatherings
- c 8. **terrain: earth::** a. earth : sky
b. sky : ocean
c. ocean : sea
d. sea : sun
- a 9. **hypothermia : hyperthermia ::** a. low : high
b. cold : frigid
c. hot : torrid
d. normal : average
- d 10. **foreboding : uneasiness ::** a. warning : relaxation
b. announcement : indifference
c. caution : promptness
d. suspicion : worry

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

contraband psychedelic semicentennial malediction altimeter
terrain misanthrope foreboding sedition hypothermia

FACTS ABOUT ANTS

If ants had “humanlike” feelings, you might think each one was a misanthrope because they cause so much damage to people’s yards, trees, and homes every year, but before you pronounce a malediction against them, keep in mind that ants also play an important role in nature. For example, ant nests, which can be found under practically any terrain, have numerous openings and tunnels, and these passageways enable air and moisture to nourish the roots of plants. In addition, seed-eating ants remove seeds from plants and transfer them to their underground storage chambers, scattering seeds in the process. Ants also feed on other insects, both living and dead, helping to control insect populations and contributing to the recycling of organic matter. And ants are a major source of food for birds, insects, and a variety of animals, including the weird-looking armadillos and aardvarks.

Here are some other interesting facts about ants:

- Except for the frozen Arctic and Antarctic, the coldest mountaintops, and a few islands, ants thrive the world over, including in deserts, swamps, and the tropics, where they are the most abundant; some species of ants live so high up in trees or other lofty elevations that an altimeter is almost needed to measure the altitude.
- There are over 11,000 species of ants.
- Both the smaller male ants and the larger queen ants have wings, but the queen ants shed their wings after starting a new colony by themselves, and the male ants die soon after breeding with a queen.
- The life span of most species of ants is usually less than six months, though some queen ants have been known to live for several years. (Obviously, then, ants never live long enough to celebrate a golden, or semicentennial, anniversary of a colony’s existence.)
- If we could run as fast for our size as ants can for theirs, we could run as fast as racehorses.

- Ants can lift twenty times their own body weight, and they work in teams to move extremely heavy things.
- Ants' combined weight is greater than the combined weight of all humans.
- Ants have the largest brains of all insects; in fact, according to some scientists, an ant's brain may possess a processing power similar to that of a computer.
- In one scientific study, in which the ants looked rather psychedelic because their backs were painted in various colored dots, findings indicated that each group of ants performed distinct tasks: the orange-dotted ants took care of the young, the yellow-dotted ants concentrated on cleaning the colony's nest, and the green-dotted ants left the nest to look for food.
- If a worker ant finds a good source for food, it leaves a trail of scent so that the other ants in the colony can find the food; the scent also enables the worker ant to find its way back to the colony.
- Ants display remarkable engineering skills; for example, they tunnel from two directions and meet exactly midway, and they build underground chambers within the colony for storing food, some of which is contraband they have stolen from other colonies. They also build underground chambers that maintain a steady temperature regardless of what the temperature is on the outside, so they never suffer from either too much heat (hyperthermia) or too much cold (hypothermia).
- Ants' various behaviors are influenced by their senses and information stored within their nervous systems, which seems to provide them with a feeling of foreboding when their territory is about to be invaded by other ants. Within a colony's population, however, there is generally no type of sedition , as ants live in a highly organized and cooperative society.

FEATURED WORD: misanthrope

Misanthrope—one who hates humankind:

- We concluded that our waiter was a misanthrope because he was rude to everyone, including children and the elderly.

Origin: 1563 <Greek—*misanthropos*—hating mankind; *misein* (to hate) and *anthropos* (mankind)

Family words: misanthropist (n), misanthropic (adj), misanthropically (adv), misanthropy (n)

Connotation: *negative*—used for a person who is antisocial, uncaring, and cruel to others

Image to remember: a hermit

Write an original sentence using *misanthrope*:

principal the chief or main one; also refers to a school administrator:

The principal reason Stacy wants to be a social worker is so she can help people. Chandler is working on his master's degree so he will be qualified to be an elementary school principal.

principle rule or standard:

Attending every class is a good principle for college students to remember. Putting 10 percent of his earnings in a savings account is a principle my brother has always followed, even when he was a newspaper carrier.

Circle the correct answer:

1. The principal / principle at the high school I attended was well liked by all the students.
2. Being considerate of other people's feelings is an excellent principal / principle to follow.
3. What was the principal / principle reason you dropped out of choir?

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **principal:** _____
2. **principle:** _____

Learning Word Parts from Context Clues

1. aster, astro

- *Asters* are flowers having petals varying from white or pink to blue that radiate around a yellow disk.
- John Glenn was among the first American *astronauts*.

aster and **astro** mean (a) modern (b) star _____ ^b .

2. peri

- Damara is not sure of the exact *perimeter* of the property her family owns, but she knows it embraces nearly 250 acres.
- The commander ordered the *periscope* raised so he could get a complete view of the submarine's surroundings.

peri means (a) around (b) wandering _____ ^a .

3. cred

- Monique is honest, so I know she'll be a *credible* witness.
- Have you ever subscribed to any particular religious *credo*?

cred is associated with (a) trust (b) deceit _____ ^a .

4. em, en

- Do you have confidence in the lawyers who have been *empowered* to negotiate a new employee's contract?
- The coach *encouraged* Tiffany to try out for the team.

em and **en** mean (a) outside (b) put into _____ ^b .

5. itis

- Ali is ill with *bronchitis*.
- The doctor prescribed aspirin for the patient's *arthritis*.

itis means (a) itch (b) inflammation _____ ^b .

6. macro, magn

- The entire universe is sometimes referred to as a *macrocosm*.
- Ellen was able to read the fine print by using a *magnifying* glass.

macro and **magn** mean (a) big (b) special _____ *a* _____ .

7. the

- *Theology* is concerned with the study of God and religion.
- An *atheist* is a person who doesn't believe in the existence of God.

the relates to (a) discussion (b) God _____ *b* _____ .

8. pseud

- *Astrology* is a *pseudoscience*, so you may be foolish to believe in it.
- A *pseudocode* is an unrelated or false program code for a particular computer's hardware.

pseud is (a) impressive (b) false _____ *b* _____ .

9. vid, vis

- The class was shown a *video* about the Everglades.
- Although some things are *invisible*, they nevertheless exist.

vid and **vis** are associated with (a) sight (b) play _____ *a* _____ .

10. gen

- A motel he built fifteen years ago became the *genesis* of his financial success.
- The child was operated on to correct a *congenital* problem with her spine.

gen relates to (a) honesty (b) beginning _____ *b* _____ .

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each definition with the word part it defines.

_____ <i>d</i> _____	1. aster, astro	a. large; great
_____ <i>h</i> _____	2. peri	b. believe; trust
_____ <i>b</i> _____	3. cred	c. birth; beginning
_____ <i>e</i> _____	4. em, en	d. star
_____ <i>i</i> _____	5. itis	e. put into
_____ <i>a</i> _____	6. macro, magn	f. false
_____ <i>j</i> _____	7. the	g. to see
_____ <i>f</i> _____	8. pseud	h. around
_____ <i>g</i> _____	9. vid, vis	i. inflammation
_____ <i>c</i> _____	10. gen	j. God

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

astro cred itis the vis
peri en magn pseud gen

1. Can you en vis ion what you'll be doing five years from now?
2. Congress en acted the bill into law last month.
3. Astro nomy, often called the science of the stars, also includes the study of planets, meteors, and other objects in the universe.
4. The ocracy is a form of government led by officials who claim to be guided by God.
5. A(n) magn ificent cathedral covered the entire block.
6. A mineral that looks identical to another one but doesn't actually contain the same composition is called a(n) pseud omorph.
7. The cred ibility of the applicant suffered when it was discovered he had exaggerated his scholastic achievements.
8. Gen esis is the first book of the Bible.
9. Peri phrasis is a roundabout way of speaking.
10. Sharon's headaches are caused by sinus itis .

Matching Words and Definitions

Use your knowledge of the underlined word parts to match the definitions and words.

- | | | |
|----------|------------------------------|---|
| <u>g</u> | 1. <u>periphery</u> | a. skeptical, unbelieving |
| <u>i</u> | 2. <u>gastritis</u> | b. to increase to a higher degree |
| <u>f</u> | 3. <u>macrophage</u> | c. to produce, cause, or give birth to |
| <u>e</u> | 4. <u>vista</u> | d. study of the physical matter of heavenly masses |
| <u>h</u> | 5. <u>pseudointellectual</u> | e. field of view; landscape |
| <u>a</u> | 6. <u>incredulous</u> | f. large one-celled animal |
| <u>j</u> | 7. <u>theism</u> | g. the outer boundary |
| <u>c</u> | 8. <u>engender</u> | h. person who fakes being well informed about scholarly matters |
| <u>d</u> | 9. <u>astrophysics</u> | i. inflammation of the stomach |
| <u>b</u> | 10. <u>enhance</u> | j. belief in the existence of God or gods |

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write the definitions of the words after noting the underlined word parts and studying the context of the sentences; if you are still uncertain, feel free to consult a dictionary.
Typical responses:

1. Diana put an asterisk beside the names of the people she intended to notify about the meeting.
asterisk _____ star-shaped figure
2. Vincent's remarks, I thought, were interesting, but peripheral at best to the main issue being discussed.
peripheral _____ relating to outer edges; distantly related; of minor relevance
3. Mike's young, credulous sister believed him when he said Spiderman was spinning a web around the entire shopping mall.
credulous _____ believing too readily; gullible
4. Age and illness have embrittled her bones to such an extent that she has to use a walker or a wheelchair to move around in her apartment.
embrittled _____ made brittle; made weak and easy to break or snap
5. The concert is canceled because the lead singer has laryngitis.
laryngitis _____ inflammation of the throat or larynx
6. The Barton family's magnanimity enabled the college to build a much needed new music building.
magnanimity _____ generosity; charitableness
7. Although they are engaged in a variety of activities throughout the day, the monks' lives are unquestionably theocentric.
theocentric _____ centered on God
8. These ancient writings, supposedly written by various biblical characters, are considered by most scholars to be pseudepigrapha.
pseudepigrapha _____ false writings, especially about biblical people

9. Leonardo da Vinci, who lived in the 15th century, is a noted painter, sculptor, architect, and engineer; he is also considered a *visionary* as he foresaw the development of the airplane centuries before it actually occurred.

visionary _____ *having foresight; seeing into the future; imaginative*

10. Samantha is finding her course in *genetics* fascinating because of what she is learning about how hereditary factors influence human development.

genetics _____ *science concerned with the study of genes or heredity*

Learning Challenging Words from Context Clues

1. **astronautics** (AS trə NOT iks)—noun

- Hideki received a bachelor's degree in physics last spring, and he is beginning a master's degree in *astronautics* this fall as he's hoping to eventually get a job with NASA (National Aeronautics and Space Administration).
- Some of the *astronautics* courses are offered by the astronomy department.

astronautics is the science concerned with space (a) below the earth's atmosphere (b) beyond the earth's atmosphere _____ *b* .

2. **peripatetic** (PER ə pə TET ik)—adjective

- The Dearborns are the most *peripatetic* people I know as they've traveled throughout the world, including Australia, New Zealand, Germany, and Brazil.
- Of all the military branches, the Navy probably offers the most *peripatetic* opportunities as its ships sail on all the oceans.

peripatetic has to do with being (a) well traveled (b) well off _____ *a* .

3. **credence** (KRĒD əns)—noun

- The discovery of primitive tools, weapons, and pottery provides *credence* to the long-held belief that this small New Mexico town was once the home of a prehistoric people.
- The sportswriter asked the athletic director if there was any *credence* in the rumor that the basketball coach had been asked to resign.

credence has to do with (a) controversy (b) trust _____ *b* .

4. **embroil** (em BROIL)—verb

- Amy’s grandparents said they didn’t want to *embroil* themselves in a family dispute when Amy asked them to help persuade her parents to buy her a car.
- Don’t *embroil* me in the conversation if it has anything to do with money, politics, or religion.

embroil means to involve in a (a) conflict (b) surprise _____ a _____ .

5. **neuritis** (noo RĪ tis)—noun

- Esperanza is taking medicine for the *neuritis* she has in one of her elbows.
- Ian has *neuritis* in his neck as a result of a field hockey injury.

neuritis refers to a (a) nerve inflammation (b) muscle strain _____ a _____ .

6. **magnanimous** (mag NAN ə mäs)—adjective

- A wealthy couple’s *magnanimous* gift provided most of the funding for the new science building.
- The announcer on public television said the station’s broadcasts were made possible by the *magnanimous* support of its listeners.

magnanimous means (a) mysterious (b) generous _____ b _____ .

7. **monotheism** (MON ə thē IZ ə m)—noun

- The ancient Greeks believed in many gods, not in *monotheism*.
- Which civilizations were among the first to follow *monotheism* rather than the worship of many gods?

monotheism is the (a) belief in one God (b) belief in no God _____ a _____ .

8. **pseudonym** (SOOD ə nim)—noun

- The author Samuel Clemens used the *pseudonym* Mark Twain.
- The movie star used a *pseudonym* while she was a patient at the hospital so she and the hospital staff wouldn’t be besieged by the media.

pseudonym refers to a (a) false name (b) hidden meaning _____ a _____ .

9. **vis-à-vis** (VĒ z ə VĒ)—preposition, adverb

- Don’t you realize a dog requires more care *vis-à-vis* a cat?
- *Vis-à-vis* your report, I found it interesting as well as comprehensive.

vis-à-vis means (a) difficult or troublesome (b) in relation to or relating to _____ b _____ .



Jay-Z is the *pseudonym* of rapper Shawn Carter. (AP Photo/Gary He)

10. generic (jə NER ik)—adjective

- Acetaminophen is the *generic* name for Tylenol and many other nonaspirin pain relievers.
- Mrs. Healy saved money by asking her doctor to prescribe a *generic* medicated skin cream rather than one with a brand name.

generic means (a) specific (b) general _____^b_____ .

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

astronautics	credence	neuritis	monotheism	vis-à-vis
peripatetic	embroil	magnanimous	pseudonym	generic
<u>vis-à-vis</u>	1. compared with or regarding			
<u>magnanimous</u>	2. charitable, generous, merciful, liberal			
<u>peripatetic</u>	3. walking, traveling about, roving			
<u>generic</u>	4. descriptive of an entire class			
<u>embroil</u>	5. to involve in a struggle, to bring into a conflict			
<u>monotheism</u>	6. belief in one God			
<u>neuritis</u>	7. inflammation of a nerve			
<u>astronautics</u>	8. the science of travel beyond the earth's atmosphere			
<u>pseudonym</u>	9. false name, pen name, name used by someone to conceal his or her true identity			
<u>credence</u>	10. belief, trust, trustworthiness			

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

- | | | | | |
|--------------|----------|-------------|------------|-----------|
| astronautics | credence | neuritis | monotheism | vis-à-vis |
| peripatetic | embroil | magnanimous | pseudonym | generic |
1. My anthropology instructor stated that there are still cultures in the world today whose religion involves the worship of many gods, so monotheism is not the center of all religious beliefs.
 2. I wasn't going to pay that much for sneakers just because they were a brand name, so, instead, I bought a less expensive generic pair.
 3. She's told so many versions of what happened that her story lacks credence, as far as I'm concerned.
 4. "George Eliot" was the pseudonym the author Mary Ann Evans (1819–1890) used because it was difficult for a woman to have her writings published under her own name in the 19th century.
 5. The coach is worried about the inexperience of his players vis-à-vis those on the other team.
 6. Fortunately, the nagging neuritis I had been suffering from in my left shoulder went away after a couple of weeks of taking aspirin.
 7. Astronautics became a popular field of study when the Space Age dawned in the early 1960s.

8. My peripatetic friend arrived from England, stayed with me for a couple of days, then took a flight to Finland.
9. Casey is a considerate and magnanimous young man, so I'm not surprised he's such a generous contributor to the hospital's fundraising efforts.
10. I really didn't want to embroil myself in my sister and her husband's argument, but before I knew it, I was right in the middle of their heated debate.

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- b 1. The *opposite* of **magnanimous** is
- simple
 - stingy
 - quiet
 - bored
- d 2. The *opposite* of **embroil** is to
- engage
 - participate
 - correct
 - prohibit
- a 3. The *opposite* of **generic** is
- special
 - common
 - happy
 - sad
- c 4. **Vis-à-vis** often suggests
- abundance
 - survival
 - comparison
 - embarrassment
- a 5. **Peripatetic** is associated with
- travel
 - competition
 - praise
 - deception
- b 6. **Monotheism** is associated with the belief in
- no God
 - one God
 - many gods
 - evolution

- d 7. A person interested in **astronautics** would be most likely to be interested in
a. oceanography
b. law
c. architecture
d. astronomy
- c 8. **credence : true ::** a. disturbance : quiet
b. send : arrive
c. reliance : authentic
d. dependable : unreliable
- a 9. **neuritis : inflammation ::** a. flu : fever
b. headache : migraine
c. pneumonia : breathing
d. arthritis : joints
- c 10. **pseudonym : alias ::** a. synonym : antonym
b. public : private
c. courage : bravery
d. deceive : restrict

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

astronautics	peripatetic	credence	embroil	neuritis
magnanimous	monotheism	pseudonym	vis-à-vis	generic

THE CASE FOR LIBERAL ARTS

High school seniors intending to attend college are often surprised to learn that many employers look favorably upon liberal-arts graduates. These employers maintain that college graduates should be grounded in broad knowledge, ethical reasoning, social responsibility, speaking and writing skills, and problem-solving abilities; a major in liberal arts, they have found, often provides the best opportunity to acquire such competencies. For example, the chief executive officer of a business involved in the study of the earth's atmosphere recently said, "Yes, we are interested in hiring graduates in astronautics, but it's equally important, if not more so, that they excel in communication and social skills. Our employees with a solid college background in liberal arts generally do."

Another employer went so far as to say, “Vis-à-vis technical and people skills, both are important, but my top priority in hiring is finding college graduates who have strong problem-solving and social skills.” Her comments give credence to the importance of good critical-thinking and interpersonal skills, skills that a liberal-arts major has many opportunities to develop.

Most employers don’t want to embroil themselves in arguments as to the specific liberal-arts courses college students should take, but they are magnanimous in both their financial support and praise for community colleges, universities, and private colleges that insist that all students, regardless of their major, receive a solid foundation in liberal arts.

But what is meant by liberal arts? Unlike monotheism (a belief in one God), which has a restricted meaning, *liberal arts* is a generic term applying to a wide array of courses, ranging from history and literature to art and music. A peripatetic person traveling from one campus to another across the country would discover a great deal of inconsistency in the designation of liberal-arts courses. For example, on some campuses, women’s studies and journalism are considered liberal-arts courses, but on others they are not. One university president, who used the pseudonym “Jackie Jones” rather than her actual name, and who insisted that the name of her university not be revealed because of the controversy on her campus regarding what courses should be included under liberal arts, said that she had actually developed neuritis in her back from sitting through hours of arguments about this matter, including over whether courses in fashion design and geology should or should not be included among the liberal arts.

While there may not be agreement on what specific courses should be designated liberal arts, the term *liberal arts* itself has always meant to indicate studies that provide general knowledge, communication abilities (reading, speaking, listening, writing), and intellectual skills (critical thinking and reasoning), as opposed to more specialized vocational or scientific skills.

Despite the confusion and even controversy that surround the liberal arts, there is general agreement among education, business, and professional people that a major in the liberal arts is worth serious consideration because of the personal enrichment and career enhancement possibilities such a major provides.

FEATURED WORD: vis-à-vis

Vis-à-vis—face to face, or compared to/contrasted with:

- Eleanor suddenly found herself vis-à-vis with an angry police officer.
- Because oil prices continue to skyrocket, people are interested in alternative fuels like ethanol vis-à-vis gasoline.

Origin: 1753 <French—*vis-à-vis*—face to face; *vis* (face)

Family word: visage (a noun referring to the features and expression of the face or to the appearance of something)

Connotation: *neutral*—a French word meaning face to face, compared to, or contrasted with

Image to remember: two people staring at each other face to face

Write an original sentence using *vis-à-vis*:

personal concerned with private matters:

My brother never shared his personal feelings with me about not making the team, but I could tell by just looking at his face that he was extremely disappointed.

personnel a group of people working for the same organization or on the same team:

The bank personnel gave a farewell party for the retiring branch manager.

People in the community were optimistic that the local high school team would do well this season because most of the personnel on the squad had gained a lot of valuable experience last year.

Circle the correct answer:

1. Kelsey is looking for a part-time job on campus, so I told her where the college's personal / personnel office is located.
2. Reggie made a personal / personnel pledge to himself that he would improve his grades this semester.
3. The platoon's personal / personnel included people from nine different states.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **personal:** _____

2. **personnel:** _____

REVIEW TEST, CHAPTERS 6–10

Word Parts

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each underlined word part with its definition.

A

- | | | |
|----------|---------------|-----------|
| <u>b</u> | 1. rebellion | a. large |
| <u>e</u> | 2. intrastate | b. war |
| <u>c</u> | 3. perimeter | c. around |
| <u>a</u> | 4. magnify | d. sight |
| <u>d</u> | 5. video | e. within |

B

- | | | |
|----------|---------------|-----------------|
| <u>d</u> | 1. hydraulic | a. star |
| <u>e</u> | 2. hemoglobin | b. inflammation |
| <u>a</u> | 3. astronaut | c. beginning |
| <u>b</u> | 4. bronchitis | d. liquids |
| <u>c</u> | 5. genesis | e. blood |

C

- | | | |
|----------|------------------|-------------|
| <u>d</u> | 1. geography | a. without |
| <u>a</u> | 2. cloudless | b. put into |
| <u>e</u> | 3. epidermis | c. false |
| <u>b</u> | 4. empower | d. earth |
| <u>c</u> | 5. pseudoscience | e. skin |

D

- | | | |
|----------|--------------|---------------|
| <u>d</u> | 1. final | a. trust |
| <u>e</u> | 2. amphibian | b. hand |
| <u>b</u> | 3. manacles | c. God |
| <u>a</u> | 4. credible | d. completion |
| <u>c</u> | 5. theology | e. both |

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

A

boun extra cap se contra

1. Concord is the cap ital city of New Hampshire.
2. The Andersons were elated because the boun tiful harvest enabled them to pay off their mortgage.

- The cottage was hard to find because it was located on a(n) _____ *se* _____ cluded part of the lake.
- The Super Bowl always features a(n) _____ *extra* _____ vaganza show during halftime.
- I'm sorry to _____ *contra* _____ dict you, but you're flat-out wrong.

B

neo ous dia psych anthrop

- There were four nurses working in the _____ *neo* _____ natal section of the hospital.
- A term referring to matters originating in the mind is _____ *psych* _____ ogenic.
- _____ *Anthrop* _____ ology involves the study of humankind's origin, behavior, and cultural development.
- The circle was large, with the _____ *dia* _____ meter measuring 36 feet.
- The victori _____ *ous* _____ candidate and his supporters celebrated for hours after the election results were in.

C

non aud ness fore therm

- Eli broke one of his _____ *fore* _____ arms when he fell from a ladder.
- The quiet _____ *ness* _____ of the dormitory was unusual for a Saturday evening.
- Would you please explain to me in _____ *non* _____ -technical terms how that gadget works?
- We were sitting so far back in the auditorium that the speaker was barely _____ *aud* _____ ible to us even though he was using a microphone.
- I turned up the _____ *therm* _____ ostat because the house was chilly.

D

pos temp hetero homo mort

- Can't _____ *hetero* _____ sexual refer either to both sexes or to the opposite sex?
- And can't _____ *homo* _____ sexual refer either to one or to the same sex?
- I _____ *temp* _____ porarily rented a car while mine was getting repaired.
- Do members of that religious faith believe that all people possess an im _____ *mort* _____ al spirit?
- Terrell was recently promoted to one of the top managerial _____ *pos* _____ itions in the company.

E

multi terr ward dia semi

1. The next day, we continued driving south _____ *ward* _____ toward the Florida Keys.
2. Our small apartment consisted of a _____ *multi* _____ purpose room where we studied, ate, watched TV, and slept.
3. The unusual ring was highlighted by several glittering _____ *semi* _____ precious stones.
4. The team's gold warm-up jerseys had two black _____ *dia* _____ gonal stripes running across the front.
5. I didn't realize that Tennessee's _____ *terr* _____ ain was so hilly and mountainous.

F

hypo ann phon dic meter

1. Unfortunately, the choir's poor _____ *dic* _____ tion on several of the songs made it difficult for the audience to understand what words were being sung.
2. Kurt knew he was becoming _____ *hypo* _____ thermic because of his daylong exposure to the bitter cold, so he was relieved to see the lodge come into view.
3. An ancient _____ *phon* _____ ograph, with some old records on top of it, was featured in the antique store's front window.
4. The baro _____ *meter* _____ has been falling for the last several hours, so I suspect we'll have a storm before nightfall.
5. Shasta passed her _____ *ann* _____ ual medical exam with flying colors.

Challenging Words

Write each word before its definition.

A

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

acrimonious	manhandle	cacophony	contemporary	neophyte
finale	moribund	bounteous	ambivalence	
<u>finale</u>	1. the end, the last section			
<u>manhandle</u>	2. perform in a rough, abusive manner			
<u>ambivalence</u>	3. uncertainty, hesitation			
<u>contemporary</u>	4. of the same time period, of the here and now			
<u>neophyte</u>	5. amateur, beginner			
<u>acrimonious</u>	6. bitter, hostile, angry, disagreeable			
<u>moribund</u>	7. near death, dying			
<u>cacophony</u>	8. harsh, unpleasant sound			
<u>bounteous</u>	9. plentiful, abundant			

B

foreboding	magnanimous	misanthrope	peripatetic	graphology
capricious	generic	malediction	monotheism	
<u>graphology</u>	1. the study of handwriting			
<u>misanthrope</u>	2. hater of humankind			
<u>malediction</u>	3. curse, threat			
<u>foreboding</u>	4. feeling of doom, omen			
<u>peripatetic</u>	5. walking about, roving			
<u>monotheism</u>	6. belief in one god			
<u>magnanimous</u>	7. generous, charitable			
<u>generic</u>	8. descriptive of an entire class			
<u>capricious</u>	9. impulsive, changeable			

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

embroil altimeter terrain sedition astronautics

Lance has always been fascinated with space travel, so he plans to get a degree in astronautics someday. As a youngster, he often daydreamed about blasting off

Crossword Puzzle

Solve the crossword by using the following words.

geopolitics multifaceted nondescript wayward annuity psychedelic
 semicentennial hypothermia neuritis vis-à-vis composure diaphanous
 heterogeneous homogeneous audible hemostat generic

	¹ m			² a	n	³ n	u	i	t	y					⁴ h		⁵ h		⁶ h
	u						o								e		o		e
	l						⁷ n	e	u	r	i	t	i	⁸ s	t		m		m
	t						d								e	e	o		o
	i		⁹ g	e	n	e	r	i	c						m	r	g		s
	f						s								i	o	e		t
	a		¹⁰ p	s	y	c	h	e	d	e	l	i	c		g	n	a		
	c						r								e	e	e		t
¹¹ g	e	o	p	o	l	i	t	i	c	s				n	n	o			
	t						p								t	e	u		
	e						t								e	o	s		
	d						¹² d	i	a	p	h	a	n	o	u	s			
														n	s				
															i				
			¹³ h	y	p	o	t	h	e	r	m	i	a						
															l				
¹⁴ w	a	y	w	a	r	d													
								¹⁵ v	i	s	-	à	-	v	i	s			
¹⁶ c	o	m	p	o	s	u	r	e			¹⁷ a	u	d	i	b	l	e		

ACROSS

2. payments throughout the year
7. inflammation of a nerve
9. general, descriptive of an entire group
10. describes distorted images or representations
11. geography's effects on relations among nations
12. transparent, delicate
13. below-normal body temperature
14. unruly, deviating from normal
15. face to face
16. calmness
17. capable of being heard

DOWN

1. many-sided, wide-ranging
3. unremarkable, lacking distinctiveness
4. dissimilar, unrelated
5. similar, related
6. instrument to stop bleeding
8. fiftieth anniversary

7. ven, vent

- The *convention* brought together educational specialists from throughout the nation.
- The *advent* of the holiday season brought ever-increasing crowds to the nearby malls.

ven and **vent** mean to (a) speak (b) come _____ *b* _____ .

8. cide

- The murder was made to look like a *suicide*.
- A police's *homicide* division has the responsibility of investigating murders.

cide means to (a) kill (b) seek _____ *a* _____ .

9. poten

- The doctor prescribed a *potent* medicine in an effort to cure the infection.
- Jessica has the *potential* of becoming the most influential person on the board of supervisors.

poten is associated with (a) price (b) power _____ *b* _____ .

10. leg

- Kirk is seeking *legal* advice in an effort to regain his former property.
- The state *legislature* is the branch of government having the responsibility for making laws.

leg is related to (a) law (b) expense _____ *a* _____ .

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each definition with the word part it defines.

_____ <i>f</i> _____	1. ped, pod	a. hundred
_____ <i>d</i> _____	2. micro	b. carry
_____ <i>j</i> _____	3. scrib, scrip	c. come; go
_____ <i>b</i> _____	4. port	d. extremely small
_____ <i>h</i> _____	5. arch	e. law
_____ <i>a</i> _____	6. cent	f. foot
_____ <i>c</i> _____	7. ven, vent	g. possessing strength; powerful
_____ <i>i</i> _____	8. cide	h. chief; ruler
_____ <i>g</i> _____	9. poten	i. killing of
_____ <i>e</i> _____	10. leg	j. writing

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

ped scrip arch ven poten
micro port cent cide leg

1. In the vault, we found an old manu scrip t containing the town's history up to the early 1900s.
2. A(n) cent ipede doesn't really have one hundred legs, does it?
3. A(n) micro be is a very small living organism.
4. It was the most important athletic e ven t in our school's history, so everyone came to the game.
5. When I was growing up, there were a few kids I didn't get along with, but my arch enemy was a bully by the name of Tommy the Terrible.
6. After his supervisors stripped him of his authority, the manager felt worthless and im poten t.
7. After Tanya had a(n) ped icure, her feet, toes, and nails looked and felt much better.
8. It's il leg al to park on this side of the street; didn't you know that?
9. Patri cide is the killing of one's father.
10. During the summer, I worked as a port er at a summer resort; some of the suitcases and baggage I carried must have weighed a ton.

Matching Words and Definitions

Use your knowledge of the underlined word parts to match the definitions and words.

- | | | |
|----------|------------------------|---|
| <u>c</u> | 1. <u>archives</u> | a. instrument that measures walking distance |
| <u>d</u> | 2. <u>prescription</u> | b. person possessing great power and authority |
| <u>h</u> | 3. <u>legitimate</u> | c. where chief or important documents are kept |
| <u>g</u> | 4. <u>microfiche</u> | d. written instruction for a specific medicine |
| <u>j</u> | 5. <u>portfolio</u> | e. to come together for an official or public purpose |
| <u>i</u> | 6. <u>centurion</u> | f. killing of a brother or a relative |
| <u>a</u> | 7. <u>pedometer</u> | g. sheet of film containing numerous pages in reduced form on one frame |
| <u>f</u> | 8. <u>fratricide</u> | h. lawful, proper |
| <u>b</u> | 9. <u>potentate</u> | i. commander of a group of one hundred soldiers in ancient Rome |
| <u>e</u> | 10. <u>convene</u> | j. a carrying case for holding papers and notebooks |

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write the definitions of the words after noting the underlined word parts and studying the context of the sentences; if you are still uncertain, feel free to consult a dictionary.
Typical responses:

1. After the band played, the candidate quickly stepped up to the podium and addressed the cheering crowd.

podium _____ *elevated platform where a speaker stands*

2. My boss is frustrating to work for because she tends to micromanage even the smallest details of everything I do.

micromanage _____ *to manage with too much attention to minor details*

3. The inscription on the monument included the dates 1941–1945.

inscription _____ *something written; etched or engraved writing*

4. The importation of foreign cars into the United States began in earnest in the early 1970s.

importation _____ *the act of bringing into the country*

5. After the central government collapsed, anarchy reigned until the military restored order.

anarchy _____ *chaos; state in which no one is in charge*

6. A centimeter is a unit of length equal to what part of a meter?

centimeter _____ *one-hundredth of a meter*

7. The teacher was gratified to see two older students intervene to settle the playground dispute between a number of third and fourth graders.

intervene _____ *to step in to settle differences; umpire; reconcile*

8. A powerful germicide is used to keep this room in sterile condition.

germicide _____ *something that kills germs*

9. The *potency* of the police force was increased by the hiring of a dozen new officers.

potency _____ the condition of possessing strength and power

10. Our community college's *paralegal* program has a well-deserved excellent reputation throughout this part of the state.

paralegal _____ relating to specialized training in law so that a person can assist an attorney

Learning Challenging Words from Context Clues

1. **podiatry** (pō DĪ ə trē)—noun

- Randy developed some foot problems after line dancing for over three hours one evening, so he's getting an appointment with a doctor of *podiatry*.
- Students of *podiatry* must take a number of anatomy and physiology courses, particularly those involving the feet.

podiatry is the study and treatment of (a) foot ailments (b) muscle strains _____ a

2. **microbiology** (MĪ krō bī OL ə jē)—noun

- Before I took *microbiology* to study bacteria and other small organisms, I had a general biology course.
- Because she plans to go to medical school, Shelly is taking a course in *microbiology* to become familiar with using a microscope as well as to learn about the structure and function of microscopic life that can help or hinder health.

microbiology is a science devoted to the study of (a) plant life (b) extremely small organisms _____ b

3. **proscribe** (prō SKRĪB)—verb

- As a result of the recent vandalism that has taken place in our state parks, the governor has written a directive that will *proscribe* entry to the parks after 7:00 P.M.
- I'll have to read the details about this diet carefully because if it does *proscribe* meat, eggs, and dairy products as you maintain, then I know it's not a diet I could stay with for very long.

proscribe means to (a) prohibit (b) prescribe _____ a

4. **portage** (POR tij)—noun, verb

- We had to *portage* our canoes over a mile before the river became navigable again.
- The climbers had to *portage* all of their supplies to the base of the mountain before nightfall.

portage means to (a) repair (b) carry _____ ^b _____ .

5. **archetype** (AR ki TĪP)—noun

- A textile factory in Lowell, Massachusetts, was the *archetype* of similar factories built throughout New England in the 1800s.
- Humphrey Bogart is the *archetype* of the hard-bitten detective that has been the hero in countless movies since the 1940s.

archetype refers to (a) the original model (b) a bad example _____ ^a _____ .

6. **centenarian** (SEN tə NAR ē ən)—noun

- This article says that life expectancy may be one hundred before too many years pass; can you imagine yourself being a *centenarian*?
- Although many friends and a number of relatives passed away when she was in her eighties and nineties, Mrs. Russell, now a *centenarian*, has kept her interest in life as well as her marvelous sense of humor.

centenarian is a person who is (a) an active senior citizen (b) one hundred years old _____ ^b _____ .

7. **convene** (kən VEN)—verb

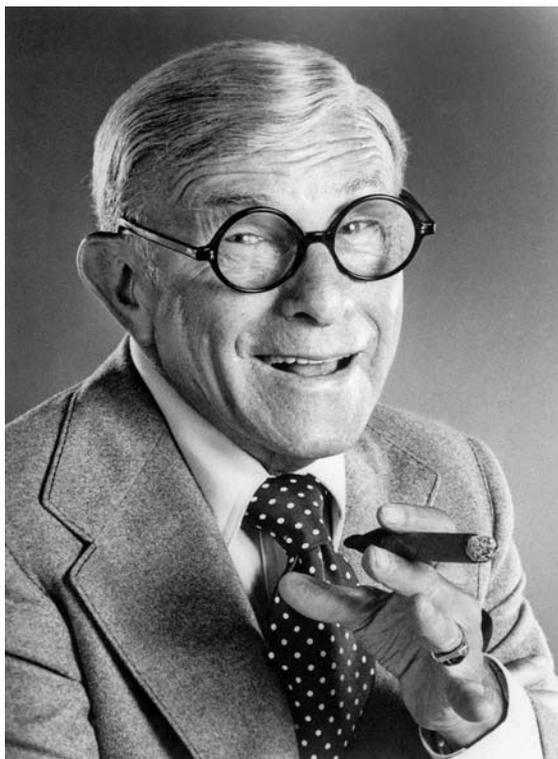
- Lawyers for both parties will *convene* this morning to see if a settlement can be reached before the matter reaches the court.
- Those interested in auditioning for the play should *convene* at the performing arts building tomorrow evening at 7:30.

convene means to (a) discuss thoroughly (b) meet together _____ ^b _____ .

8. **genocide** (JEN ə SĪD)—noun

- The shocking report accuses the top leaders of that country of plotting to murder all members of an opposition party, a *genocide* that must be prevented.
- The old science fiction movie I saw on TV the other night was about a planet of evil people, the Puxacrotans, who attempt *genocide* against all the people living on the other planets so that they, the Puxacrotans, could rule the entire galaxy.

genocide is the (a) extermination (b) organization _____ ^a _____ of a particular group of people.



Long-lived actor and comedian George Burns died in 1996, shortly after achieving *centenarian* status. (© Bettman/CORBIS)

9. **potency** (PŌT ən sē)—noun

- According to the label on the bottle, the *potency* of these vitamins expired two months ago, so I guess I'll throw this bottle away and buy a new one.
- The coach cautioned his players not to underestimate the *potency* of their next opponent, that it was a team capable of beating anyone in the conference.

potency is related to (a) conduct (b) strength _____ *b* _____ .

10. **legacy** (LEG ə sē)—noun

- The wealthy widow left her entire *legacy*, which includes numerous properties and investments, to her two nieces.
- The *legacy* I received from my grandparents is to work hard and to value family and friends above everything else.

legacy is similar to (a) an inheritance (b) a lesson _____ *a* _____ .

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

podiatry	proscribe	archetype	convene	potency
microbiology	portage	centenarian	genocide	legacy
<u>centenarian</u>	1.	a person who has reached the age of one hundred		
<u>legacy</u>	2.	money or property left legally to someone, anything handed down from the past		
<u>portage</u>	3.	act of carrying, the carrying of boats or goods overland from one navigable water to another		
<u>microbiology</u>	4.	science concerned with the study of extremely small organisms		
<u>genocide</u>	5.	systematic killing of a particular large group of people		
<u>podiatry</u>	6.	study and treatment of foot ailments		
<u>potency</u>	7.	vigor, powerfulness, strength, force		
<u>archetype</u>	8.	chief or original model after which other things are patterned		
<u>proscribe</u>	9.	to prohibit, ban, or banish		
<u>convene</u>	10.	to come together, to assemble, to meet		

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

- | | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|----------|---------|
| podiatry | proscribe | archetype | convene | potency |
| microbiology | portage | centenarian | genocide | legacy |
1. Our new manager announced she will proscribe the wearing of jeans to work starting next week because she thinks jeans are too informal for office apparel.
 2. Many scholars agree that Hitler's prolonged genocide of the Jews in Germany and elsewhere in Europe was unquestionably the vilest act of the 20th century.
 3. According to the museum guide, this 1975 computer became the archetype for the generation of computers that followed.
 4. All committee members are urged to attend the meeting, which will convene at 4:00 P.M. on Wednesday.

5. The legacy the young couple received from one of their relatives enabled them to start their own business.
6. Mr. Pratt recently became the fourth centenarian in our community as there are three other people living here who are one hundred or more.
7. My microbiology course includes a four-hour lab that meets on Thursday afternoons; that's a long time to stare through a microscope at little critters, don't you think?
8. Casey and Brook decided to canoe a different lake from us even though it meant they had to portage their canoe, life jackets, and other materials for nearly three miles.
9. The potency of the anesthesia soon had the patient in a deep sleep.
10. Two offices on the first floor will be assigned to doctors of podiatry so patients with foot problems will not have to walk so far.

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- d 1. The *opposite* of **potency** is
- a. energy
 - b. anxiety
 - c. remainder
 - d. weakness
- a 2. Someone who would be the *opposite* of an **archetype** would be a
- a. follower
 - b. leader
 - c. debater
 - d. peacemaker
- c 3. The *opposite* of a **legacy** is something that is
- a. despised
 - b. adored
 - c. held back
 - d. passed on
- b 4. **Podiatry** is most closely associated with the
- a. head
 - b. feet
 - c. back
 - d. abdomen

- _____ *a* 5. **Genocide** is most closely associated with
a. tragedy
b. triumph
c. wealth
d. poverty
- _____ *d* 6. A student majoring in **microbiology** is likely to be most interested in
a. journalism
b. history
c. literature
d. science
- _____ *c* 7. A person who is a **centenarian** is definitely
a. rich
b. healthy
c. old
d. humorous
- _____ *b* 8. **portage : carry ::** a. moist : dry
b. grip : hold
c. start : postpone
d. move : drop
- _____ *b* 9. **proscribe : permit ::** a. permit : allow
b. allow : outlaw
c. outlaw : prohibit
d. prohibit : ban
- _____ *d* 10. **convene : meet ::** a. convince : doubt
b. generalize : specify
c. corrupt : purify
d. meet : gather

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

podiatry proscribe archetype convene potency
microbiology portage centenarian genocide legacy

NEWSPAPER HEADLINES

After CAREFULLY reading through these actual headlines that have appeared in newspapers across the nation, do you think the writers should have (1) paid more attention in their journalism classes, (2) done a better job of proofreading, or (3) become comedy writers?

SOMETHING WENT WRONG IN JET CRASH, EXPERT SAYS

Really? Should we convene more experts to see what they think?

SHOT OFF WOMAN'S LEG HELPS NICKLAUS TO 66

Well, let's hope her toes are all right; otherwise, she'll need to consult an expert in podiatry.

FARMER BILL DIES IN THE HOUSE

Poor guy. I wonder what kind of legacy he left his family.

DEER KILLS 17,000

Why, slaying a population of that size is genocide! Let's put that animal on trial.

MAN STRUCK BY LIGHTNING FACES BATTERY CHARGE

He claims he has much more energy and potency now; in fact, he thinks he'll live to be a centenarian!

KIDS MAKE NUTRITIOUS SNACKS

If we are to believe the latest findings from the world of microbiology and other fields of science.

SAFETY EXPERTS SAY SCHOOL BUS PASSENGERS SHOULD BE BELTED

My goodness, don't they know laws proscribe this type of punishment?

TWO SOVIET SHIPS COLLIDE, ONE DIES

Did they have to portage the other ship across land because of serious injuries?

BAN ON SOLICITING DEAD IN TROTWOOD

This ban should serve as the archetype for similar bans for communities across the country! I'm not sure those people would have been much help anyway.

LOCAL HIGH SCHOOL DROPOUTS CUT IN HALF

Too bad, but they *were* told they would regret dropping out of school someday.

FEATURED WORD: genocide

Genocide—the deliberate and methodical killing of a racial, political, or cultural group:

- In 1994, two militia groups in Rwanda began a genocide against other people in the country that resulted in the death of at least 500,000 people by July.

Origin: 1944 <Greek—*genos* (race, kind) and *cide*, from Latin *cidere* (kill); apparently coined in a book referring to the Nazis

Family words: genocidal (adj), genocidally (adv)

Connotation: *negative*—used for the systematic extermination of an entire group of people

Image to remember: the movies *Hotel Rwanda*, *Schindler's List*, and *The Pianist*

Write an original sentence using *genocide*:

shone the past tense of the verb *shine*:

Many city lights shone brightly as our plane flew over Topeka.

shown the past tense of the verb *show*:

What film was shown in your literature class yesterday?

Circle the correct answer:

1. Taylor was shone / shown pictures of his friend's wedding.
2. The sun shone / shown in the morning, but the sky was cloudy in the afternoon.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **shone:** _____

2. **shown:** _____

Learning Word Parts from Context Clues

1. sol

- There was no one else around, so after I tired of watching TV, I played a couple of games of *solitaire*.
- For as far as I could see, the area was barren, lifeless, *desolate*.

sol means (a) alone (b) challenging _____ a _____ .

2. polis, urb

- *Indianapolis* is the largest city in Indiana.
- Over 4 million people live in this *urban* area.

polis and **urb** mean (a) liveliness (b) city _____ b _____ .

3. ish

- A *Danish* ship was unloading cargo at one of the piers.
- I apologized to my girlfriend for acting so *childish* over the unimportant matter.

ish means (a) empty of (b) descriptive of _____ b _____ .

4. ly

- Samira is a *friendly*, considerate person.
- The child said *firmly*, "No! I won't go to bed!"

ly refers to how something is (a) done (b) imagined _____ a _____ .

5. age, ance, ence, ship

- The *foliage* this fall was spectacular.
- Tomas is a good mechanic, so he's able to do his own *maintenance* for his car.
- After moving into her apartment, Clare enjoyed having more *independence*.
- My *penmanship* has never been good, so I write with a computer whenever possible.

age, ance, ence, and ship relate to (a) description or quality (b) nature or product
_____ a _____ .

6. tract

- The telephone kept *distracting* him from his work.
- I was relieved when the *extraction* of my tooth was over.

tract is related to (a) attract or pull (b) noise or pain _____ a _____ .

7. circum

- Do you know whether the *circumference* of a basketball is over twelve inches?
- *Circumlocution* is unnecessarily wordy and indirect language.

circum means (a) around (b) through _____ a _____ .

8. onym

- *Antonyms* are words with opposite meanings, such as *large* and *small*.
- Someone slipped an *anonymous* note under my windshield wiper telling me I should “learn how to park a car.”

onym refers to (a) experiences (b) words _____ b _____ .

9. photo

- The flash *photography* blinded me for a few moments.
- The *photosphere* is the visible shining surface of the sun.

photo means (a) scenic (b) light _____ b _____ .

10. dem

- *Democracy* is a form of government in which people elect their leaders.
- An *epidemic* is a disease that spreads widely and quickly among people.

dem refers to (a) people (b) vicinity _____ a _____ .

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each definition with the word part it defines.

<u>g</u>	1. sol	a. done in the manner of
<u>c</u>	2. polis, urb	b. draw; pull
<u>j</u>	3. ish	c. city
<u>a</u>	4. ly	d. name; word
<u>h</u>	5. age, ance, ence, ship	e. light
<u>b</u>	6. tract	f. people
<u>i</u>	7. circum	g. alone
<u>d</u>	8. onym	h. condition, state, or quality of
<u>e</u>	9. photo	i. around
<u>f</u>	10. dem	j. descriptive or characteristic of

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

sol ish ship circum photo
urb ly tract onym dem

1. My old high-school friend hadn't lost any of his boy _____ *ish* _____ charm.
2. The cold weather had caused the door's opening to con _____ *tract* _____, which allowed the wind to come whistling in.
3. _____ *Dem* _____ otic refers to the common people.
4. Syn _____ *onym* _____ s are words with similar meanings, such as *scary* and *frightening*.
5. The police were absolute _____ *ly* _____ flabbergasted by the startling developments.
6. Magellan was the first explorer to _____ *circum* _____ navigate the world, wasn't he?
7. Keith enjoys the peace and _____ *sol* _____ itude of fishing whenever he gets the chance.
8. At first, any Americans feared the presidency would turn into a dictator _____ *ship* _____.
9. When I was in college, my professors would sometimes distribute _____ *photo* _____ copies of their lectures.
10. Elisa is sophisticated and _____ *urb* _____ ane from having such wonderful cultural experiences in New York City.

Matching Words and Definitions

Use your knowledge of the underlined word parts to match the definitions and words.

- | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|--|
| _____ <i>c</i> _____ | 1. <u>urbanite</u> | a. surgical instrument used to draw back tissue from an incision |
| _____ <i>i</i> _____ | 2. <u>peevish</u> | b. briefly and to the point; concisely |
| _____ <i>e</i> _____ | 3. <u>impudence</u> | c. a city dweller |
| _____ <i>j</i> _____ | 4. <u>circumvent</u> | d. the measurement of the intensity of light |
| _____ <i>h</i> _____ | 5. <u>solidarity</u> | e. disrespect; rudeness |
| _____ <i>d</i> _____ | 6. <u>photometry</u> | f. false name |
| _____ <i>a</i> _____ | 7. <u>retractor</u> | g. the statistical study of human population |
| _____ <i>g</i> _____ | 8. <u>demography</u> | h. union among a group of people arising from common interests or responsibilities |
| _____ <i>b</i> _____ | 9. <u>succinctly</u> | i. annoyed; resentful |
| _____ <i>f</i> _____ | 10. <u>pseudonym</u> | j. to go around or to avoid a problem |

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write the definitions of the words after noting the underlined word parts and studying the context of the sentences; if you are still uncertain, feel free to consult a dictionary.

Typical responses:

1. Cristina said she was solely responsible for the accident, so we were not to blame anybody else.

solely _____ alone; singly

2. Do you enjoy being an urbanite, or would you rather live in the country?

urbanite _____ city dweller

3. Many families and friends seem rather clannish in this small community, don't you think?

clannish _____ maintaining a close relationship that others are not encouraged to join; cliquish; exclusive

4. I felt blatantly out of place eating in the posh restaurant because I was wearing an old pair of jeans, a sweatshirt, and sneakers.

blatantly _____ glaringly; flagrantly; notoriously

5. It was a happy day indeed when I was finally able to send the final remittance owed on my car.

remittance _____ sum of money sent or submitted

6. I had never gone horseback riding before, but fortunately my horse was tractable, so I was able to relax and have a good time.

tractable _____ easily managed

7. Do you know of an alternate route we could take to circumvent having to drive through the city?

circumvent _____ avoid, go around

8. In this simple code, each letter is *synonymous* to its numerical order in the alphabet, so “A” is equal to “1,” “B” is equal to “2,” and so on.

synonymous _____ *equivalent in meaning* _____

9. Did you know this machine was powered by *photoelectric* cells?

photoelectric _____ *relating to electric effects caused by light* _____

10. The flu was so *pandemic* during January that the schools, malls, and other places were closed for a number of days.

pandemic _____ *widespread; everywhere* _____

Learning Challenging Words from Context Clues

1. **soliloquy** (sə LIL ə kwē)—noun

- While one of the actors was on the stage alone giving a *soliloquy* during the play *Our American Cousin*, John Wilkes Booth shot President Lincoln.
- Some of the guys were watching TV and a couple were playing a spirited game of Ping-Pong; Scott, on the other hand, was staring out the window and muttering a *soliloquy* about the beauty of falling snow.

soliloquy is the act of (a) being silly (b) speaking to oneself _____ *b* _____.

2. **megalopolis** (MEG ə LOP ə lis)—noun

- Dallas, Fort Worth, and Denton, Texas, have become so densely populated that the area is now considered a *megalopolis*.
- In Minnesota, Minneapolis, St. Paul, and their nearby communities make up another *megalopolis*.

megalopolis refers to a region consisting of several (a) large adjoining cities (b) competing governments _____ *a* _____.

3. **fetish** (FET ish)—noun

- My roommate has such a *fetish* for getting good grades that he studies until after midnight every night, including weekends.
- My sister-in-law must have a *fetish* for earrings as I know she must have over one hundred pairs.

fetish is (a) an extreme attraction to (b) a perplexing opposition to _____ *a* _____.



Plants like this Lady's Mantle survive through the process of *photosynthesis*. (© Dency Kane/Beateworks/Corbis)

10. demagogue (DEM ə gog)—noun

- Many historians consider the late Senator Joseph McCarthy, who served in the Senate in the 1950s, a *demagogue* because he convinced thousands of people that the federal government was full of communists.
- She is a dangerous *demagogue* because many people believe her when she insists all the major television networks are controlled by people whose chief objective is to undermine the morality of our young people.

demagogue is a person who seeks power by appealing to people's (a) fears

(b) generosity _____ a _____.

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

soliloquy	fetish	abeyance	circumspect	photosynthesis
megalopolis	ostensibly	retraction	acronym	demagogue
<u>retraction</u>	1.	the taking back of a statement, opinion, or promise		
<u>megalopolis</u>	2.	an outsize city; an urban area consisting of several large, adjoining cities		
<u>acronym</u>	3.	a word formed from the initial letters of a group of words		
<u>demagogue</u>	4.	a person who attempts to gain power and influence by appealing to people's fears and other emotions		
<u>soliloquy</u>	5.	the act of speaking to oneself		
<u>ostensibly</u>	6.	supposedly, apparently, done in a manner to deceive		
<u>photosynthesis</u>	7.	the process by which plants form food		
<u>fetish</u>	8.	any object or idea abnormally adored, compulsion		
<u>circumspect</u>	9.	careful, proper, wisely cautious, using good judgment		
<u>abeyance</u>	10.	postponement, temporary suspension, waiting period, delay		

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

soliloquy fetish abeyance circumspect photosynthesis
megalopolis ostensibly retraction acronym demagogue

- Brian was ostensibly my pal, but it eventually became apparent he was more interested in being “friends” with my gorgeous cousin than he was in being “friends” with me.
- NATO is a(n) acronym for North Atlantic Treaty Organization.
- Although the editor was confident the information in the article was correct, he decided to print a(n) retraction rather than risk a libel suit.
- When he is alone, doesn't Hamlet whisper a remorseful soliloquy after the tragic deed is done?
- Sarah's boss said he would hold her job in abeyance while she completes her eight weeks of basic training in the Air National Guard.
- Some sociologists predict that Denver, Colorado Springs, Boulder, and Fort Collins will be a(n) megalopolis within a couple of decades because of the continuing rapid population growth in that area of the country.

7. Mr. Aoki said that although it's known that sunlight, carbon dioxide, water, and chlorophyll are involved in the process of photosynthesis that takes place in plants, the process is still not fully understood.
8. Marcela was dying to meet the attractive young man who sat near her in class, but her circumspect behavior did not give her away.
9. One of the candidates is nothing more than a(n) demagogue in my opinion because he maintains the national economy, including the Social Security system, would collapse unless he and other members of his party were elected to Congress.
10. I love anything chocolate, so I'm one of the millions of people who have a(n) fetish for this delicious food; in fact, I once saw someone wearing a sweatshirt that said, "Hand over your chocolate and no one will get hurt."

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- d 1. The *opposite* of **circumspect** is
 - a. quiet
 - b. funny
 - c. kind
 - d. careless
- b 2. The *opposite* of a **megalopolis** is a
 - a. city bordered by other large cities
 - b. region of sparsely populated villages
 - c. metropolitan area with a population of 4 million
 - d. sprawling community with high real estate taxes
- a 3. The *opposite* of a **soliloquy** is
 - a. a discussion on stage between two actors
 - b. talking to oneself on stage
 - c. a plea for help over television
 - d. praying silently in church
- c 4. The person who would be most likely to know the most about **photosynthesis** would be an expert on
 - a. insects
 - b. microbes
 - c. plants
 - d. animals
- a 5. A **retraction** is most likely to sound
 - a. apologetic
 - b. angry
 - c. accusing
 - d. arrogant

- b 6. Which of the following is an **acronym**?
- a. TELEVISION
 - b. NASA
 - c. FORD
 - d. MICHIGAN
- c 7. A **demagogue** is most likely to be
- a. wealthy
 - b. poor
 - c. bold
 - d. shy
- a 8. **fetish : fixation :: a.** fixation : compulsion
- b. compulsion : unthinking
 - c. unthinking : habit
 - d. habit : impulsive
- c 9. **abeyance : temporary :: a.** costly : inexpensive
- b. violence : delay
 - c. postponement : suspension
 - d. position: permanent
- a 10. **ostensibly : insincerity :: a.** supposedly : phoniness
- b. flashy : sincerity
 - c. honesty : insensitivity
 - d. importantly : foolishness

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

soliloquy fetish abeyance circumspect photosynthesis
megalopolis ostensibly retraction acronym demagogue

THE SULTANA TRAGEDY

In April 1865, the Civil War finally ended, but the nation's sorrow continued. On April 14, President Abraham Lincoln was assassinated, causing unprecedented mourning throughout the country. Then on April 27, the steamship *Sultana*, carrying over 2,000 Union soldiers back to their homes in the North, exploded on the Mississippi River not far from Memphis, Tennessee. Though the exact death toll is not known, respected and circumspect historians put the figure at 1,700, making the *Sultana* the greatest maritime disaster in United States history.

In Vicksburg, Mississippi, a few days after the war ended, over 2,200 Union soldiers crowded aboard the *Sultana*, which ostensibly was large enough to carry that many passengers, but in truth was built to carry less than 400. After leaving Vicksburg,

the *Sultana* struggled against the strong currents of the Mississippi River as it steamed toward Memphis. As it was planting season and many of the soldiers came from rural areas, it is speculated that some of them, while strolling *Sultana*'s deck and observing the farms bordering the river, likely were discussing photosynthesis (though not by that technical name) and other factors involved in growing crops.

The *Sultana* finally made it to Memphis. This city and the nearby towns were certainly not a megalopolis by any means, but the area was important to the river's traffic. After a short abeyance in Memphis, the *Sultana* continued on its way.

Just north of Memphis, however, the steamboat's overheated and overworked boilers suddenly exploded. Hundreds of soldiers were killed instantly while others were blown or jumped into the river's cold water. The *Sultana* quickly became engulfed in flames and began to sink. Today most captains have a fetish about having a sufficient number of life jackets aboard their ships, but the *Sultana* had none. Many of the soldiers in the water could not swim, and others were too badly injured to do so; still others couldn't swim because they were too weak after being prisoners of war for a long period of time.

The fire aboard the *Sultana* was spotted in Memphis, and rescue boats were immediately dispatched to the scene. Although many soldiers were saved, bodies continued to be found months later downriver, and many bodies were never recovered. Of the approximately 500 survivors transported to hospitals in Memphis, more than half of them soon died from burns or exposure.

None of those that did survive ever became a demagogue who tried to gain fame and fortune by appealing to people's sympathies. The survivors did, however, meet every year on April 27 until 1928, when there were only four still alive.

Even though this was the biggest shipping catastrophe in United States history, there have been no movies made, songs composed, or plays written containing a heartfelt soliloquy about the *Sultana*. Even most history books through the years have failed to mention the disaster, though one noted historian, Stephen Ambrose, wrote an article entitled "Remembering *Sultana*" for the May 2001 issue of *National Geographic*. Another lesser-known historian committed himself to writing a book about the tragedy, but he submitted a retraction of the commitment later because of his failing health.

In 1982—though no acronym, such as "USSS" (United States Ship *Sultana*), was discovered on any of the planks—investigators uncovered charred wooden planks and timbers under 32 feet of water near Memphis that they were convinced were the remains of the ill-fated *Sultana*.

Occurring just days after the bloody conflict ended, the 1,700 soldiers who lost their lives in the *Sultana* disaster were additional victims of the tragic Civil War.

FEATURED WORD: demagogue

Demagogue—a leader who obtains power through impassioned appeals to people’s fears and prejudices:

- The demagogue shouted that if he weren’t re-elected mayor, the city would soon lack adequate police and fire protection.

Origin: 1648 <Greek—*demagogos*—leader of the people; *demos* (people) and *agogos* (leader); considered a negative term since it was first used in ancient Athens

Family words: demagogic (adj), demagogism (n), demagoguery (n), demagogy (n)

Connotation: *negative*—refers to an unethical person who resorts to lies, exaggerations, slander, fear-mongering, or similar behaviors in an effort to gain power

Image to remember: a dictator

Write an original sentence using *demagogue*:

hole an empty area:

Darn it, I have a hole in my favorite sweater.

whole complete, entire:

Darcy painted the whole apartment by herself over the weekend.

Circle the correct answer:

1. My car has a hole / whole in the muffler, so it roars like a wounded lion.
2. The hole / whole room was so crowded with people I couldn't have fallen down if I had wanted to.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **hole:** _____

2. **whole:** _____

Learning Word Parts from Context Clues

1. ac

- The *acrid* smell of the fireworks lingered long after the spectacular event was over.
- Michelle's coolness under stress, as well as her *acumen* at determining which patients needed treatment first and what that treatment should be, made her an ideal emergency room doctor.

ac means (a) attractive; appealing (b) bitterly sharp; quickly aware b .

2. dys

- Major difficulty in recognizing and comprehending written words is known as *dyslexia*.
- Apparently, the patient's episodes of heart *dysrhythmia* were due to the blood pressure medicine he was taking.

dys is associated with something (a) educational (b) abnormal b .

3. err

- The shortstop's throwing *error* allowed the runner on third to score.
- My cousin's *errant* behavior was becoming increasingly common, so all of us were worried about her.

err means (a) costly; rare (b) to slip up; to stray from normal b .

4. medi

- An administrator from the school system and a representative from the post office department were selected to *mediate* the unusual dispute between the school custodians and the mail carriers.
- In high school, I was a *mediocre* student, finishing 64th in a graduating class of 128.

medi relates to the (a) middle (b) situation a .

5. be

- All of us loved our third-grade teacher because she never *belittled* us if we made a mistake or even if we misbehaved.
- He thought he had *bedazzled* his date with his charm and tales of his many accomplishments, but she never would go out with him again.

be is a prefix meaning (a) to be (b) to reverse _____ *a* _____ .

6. claim, clam

- When Ryder discovered someone had dented his car while it was parked in the parking lot, he *exclaimed*, “Who in the heck did this? I wish I could get my hands on that cowardly jerk!”
- The winning contestant’s *exclamation* of delight echoed throughout the auditorium.

claim, clam means to (a) shout (b) object _____ *a* _____ .

7. greg

- The church’s *congregation* had slowly declined over the years.
- The cattle were *segregated* based upon their breed.

greg is related to (a) groups (b) sizes _____ *a* _____ .

8. al

- “*Parental* advice,” the young man said, “is usually good advice, don’t you think?”
- His *denial* of any wrongdoing was not convincing.

al means (a) one who does (b) having the quality of _____ *b* _____ .

9. ic

- The movie has *fantastic* special effects.
- We felt *sympathetic* when we learned about all of their troubles, so we decided to help them out.

ic means (a) having the characteristic of (b) more than one _____ *a* _____ .

10. ize

- Can you *harmonize* with me on this song?
- To make sure you don’t *plagiarize*, cite all the sources you use to write your paper.

ize means (a) to do away with (b) to bring about _____ *b* _____ .

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each definition with the word part it defines.

<u> e </u>	1. ac	a. middle
<u> f </u>	2. dys	b. shout; cry out
<u> j </u>	3. err	c. to bring about
<u> a </u>	4. medi	d. to be
<u> d </u>	5. be	e. bitterly sharp; insightful
<u> b </u>	6. claim, clam	f. abnormal; impaired; faulty
<u> h </u>	7. greg	g. having the characteristic of
<u>g or i</u>	8. al	h. crowd; groups
<u>g or i</u>	9. ic	i. having the quality of
<u> c </u>	10. ize	j. to blunder; to stray from normal

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

ac err be greg ic
dys medi claim al ize

1. The laboratory supervisor cautioned the students to be particularly careful when working with the ac id because of possible burns to the skin or the eyes.
2. My egocentr ic co-worker talks constantly about himself, and it's driving me nuts.
3. We decided to be friend the stray little kitten after she purred softly when we held her.
4. As is true of many people in my small town, I often synchron ize my watch with the blowing of the factory's noon whistle.
5. My roommate's refus al to loan me his car for a couple of hours took me by complete surprise.
6. Indigestion, or dys pepsia, is usually not a cause for alarm.
7. Deliberately giving the police officer err oneous information got the speeding motorist into even more trouble.
8. Both sides have agreed to the hiring of a(n) medi ator in an effort to try to settle their long-standing dispute.
9. The principal pro claim ed Friday as "Dress-Up Day."
10. Club members will con greg ate at the hotel's banquet hall for their next meeting.

Matching Words and Definitions

Use your knowledge of the underlined word parts to match the definitions and words.

<u>f</u>	1. majestic	a. having no fixed course; wandering
<u>h</u>	2. acrimony	b. decorated; adorned
<u>i</u>	3. jeopardize	c. one who meets with others to worship
<u>b</u>	4. bedecked	d. insane; excessively excited or upset
<u>g</u>	5. dyspnea	e. located in the middle
<u>d</u>	6. maniacal	f. dignified; noble; kingly; magnificent
<u>j</u>	7. acclaim	g. difficulty breathing
<u>a</u>	8. erratic	h. hostility; resentment; anger
<u>e</u>	9. median	i. to put into danger
<u>c</u>	10. congregant	j. praise; fame; applause

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write the definitions of the words after noting the underlined word parts and studying the context of the sentences; if you are still unsure, feel free to consult a dictionary.

Typical responses:

1. We proofread the document a number of times before sending it to the printer, so we were disappointed to discover that there is at least one erratum in the bound copy.

erratum _____ an error in writing or printing _____

2. Despite the graduation last spring of a number of key instrumentalists, the director was determined that the band would maintain its reputation for excellence and not slip into mediocrity as some people seemed to think it would.

mediocrity _____ the state of being ordinary, average, or so-so _____

3. The judge ruled in favor of the claimant, awarding her \$100,000.

claimant _____ person making a claim or complaint; person who is suing _____

4. As individuals, not everyone had distinguished himself or herself, but as an aggregate, their accomplishments were impressive.

aggregate _____ total; whole _____

5. Don't you think the store owner would have more customers if he didn't have such an *acerbic* personality?

acerbic _____ *sour; bitter; sarcastic; sharp and unpleasant*

6. The sales staff at the antique store even used an *archaic* cash register.

archaic _____ *old; ancient; out of style*

7. Look, I know you don't like me and hope that I don't win, so don't *patronize* me with your expressions of "good luck" and "best wishes."

patronize _____ *to act insincerely; to be condescending; to be snooty or scornful*

8. It was frustrating when my math teacher said, "Why can't you solve these problems? They shouldn't *befuddle* you."

befuddle _____ *confuse; puzzle; fluster*

9. According to this source, the *autumnal equinox* always occurs during the third week in September.

autumnal equinox _____ *the beginning of autumn, when day and night are of equal length*

10. From all accounts that I've either heard or read, she grew up in a *dysfunctional* family; nevertheless, she is reported to be well adjusted and successful in everything she has undertaken.

dysfunctional _____ *abnormal or impaired; not operating appropriately*

Learning Challenging Words from Context Clues

1. **exacerbate** (ig ZAS ər bāt)—verb

- Hot, humid weather like we've been having lately tends to *exacerbate* his breathing problems, so he stays inside his air-conditioned apartment.
- The road construction scheduled to begin next week will no doubt *exacerbate* the traffic congestion already existing on this route.

exacerbate means to (a) worsen (b) soothe _____ *a* _____ .

2. **dystrophy** (DIS trə fē)—noun

- The annual fall telethon has raised millions of dollars to find a cure for muscular *dystrophy*, a serious disease involving the wasting away of muscles.
- Rescued after nine days of floating in a raft, the young pilot was pale, thin, uncoordinated, and so weak he was unable to stand; such *dystrophy*, the doctors said, was basically due to malnutrition.

dystrophy is usually associated with the (a) kidney (b) muscles b .

3. **aberration** (ab ə RĀ shən)—noun

- I assure you that my uncle’s temper tantrum yesterday was an *aberration* as generally he’s a pleasant person to be around.
- It is India’s dry season, so today’s heavy rainfall was an *aberration*.

aberration is always (a) bad (b) unexpected b .

4. **medieval** (med Ē vəl)—adjective

- “I mean,” Shalini exclaimed, “it’s like *medieval* for our principal to insist that we have four chaperones for the dance and that the dance must end at 11:00 P.M.! It’s like totally insane!”
- The *medieval* period, also known as the Middle Ages, dates from 500 to 1500.

medieval can mean (a) outdated (b) inadequacy a .

5. **bereft** (bə REFT)—adjective

- Despite arriving in the United States *bereft* of money, friends, and jobs, countless immigrants have succeeded in making important contributions to the country.
- Until my cousin learned to control his temper, he was almost *bereft* of friends.

bereft indicates a (a) lack (b) bias a .

6. **clamorous** (KLAM ər əs)—adjective

- The loud music, the shouting and dancing people, and the clanking dishes and glasses made for a wild and *clamorous* wedding reception.
- The magician waited patiently for the *clamorous* children to settle down before beginning his show.

clamorous is associated with (a) hubbub (b) quiet a .

7. **gregarious** (gri GAR ē əs)—adjective

- Initially, Kendon had a difficult time adjusting to college because he’s not *gregarious* among strangers.
- Jaimie is so *gregarious* and thoughtful that everyone knows and likes her.

gregarious means (a) sociable (b) generous a .



Many castles, such as Raglan Castle, were built during the *medieval age*. (David Lyons/Alamy)

8. **colloquial** (kə LŌ kwē əl)—adjective

- The disk jockey's folksy, *colloquial* speaking style won him a loyal audience over the years.
- My political science professor presents her lectures in a relaxed manner using *colloquial* rather than elaborate language.

colloquial refers to language that is (a) impressive (b) commonly used b .

9. **sophomoric** (sɒf ə MOR ik)—adjective

- A few members of my dorm still enjoy short-sheeting beds, removing light bulbs from the hallways, spraying shaving cream all over the bathrooms, and other such *sophomoric* pranks; I wish they'd grow up.
- After gaining a smattering of knowledge and experience, there are always a few medical students who become rather *sophomoric* in attitude and behavior, convinced they now know as much or more than their professors.

sophomoric is associated with (a) immaturity (b) sorrow a .

10. ostracize (OS trə sīz)—verb

- Unfortunately, at my high school, the “in” group would *ostracize* others simply because they didn’t wear the “right” clothes.
- A month or two after their wedding, one influential church member wanted to *ostracize* the couple after he learned that both had previously been married and divorced.

ostracize means to (a) flatter (b) snub _____ b _____ .

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

exacerbate	dystrophy	aberration	medieval	bereft
clamorous	gregarious	colloquial	sophomoric	ostracize
<u>gregarious</u>	1.	seeking and enjoying the company of others		
<u>exacerbate</u>	2.	to make a condition worse		
<u>sophomoric</u>	3.	exhibiting immaturity; impressed with one’s knowledge when, in fact, it is limited		
<u>medieval</u>	4.	old-fashioned; belonging to the Middle Ages		
<u>bereft</u>	5.	lacking or deprived of something		
<u>dystrophy</u>	6.	wasting away of muscles and nerves		
<u>colloquial</u>	7.	characteristic of everyday language		
<u>ostracize</u>	8.	to exclude from a group		
<u>aberration</u>	9.	deviation from what is proper or expected; irregularity		
<u>clamorous</u>	10.	continuously noisy		

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

exacerbate	dystrophy	aberration	medieval	bereft
clamorous	gregarious	colloquial	sophomoric	ostracize

1. Summer’s business slump proved to be a temporary _____ *aberration* _____ as sales returned to normal in early fall.
2. I may be _____ *medieval* _____, but I still believe wedding guests should wear suits and dresses, not jeans and slacks.
3. When you speak to them, use _____ *colloquial* _____ language; don’t try to impress them with fancy, high-sounding words.

4. Children _____ *bereft* _____ of parental love are often insecure.
5. Salvatore is a popular waiter because of his _____ *gregarious* _____ nature as his customers appreciate his pleasant chatter and friendliness.
6. Those snobs _____ *ostracize* _____ anyone who isn't as rich as they are.
7. Because of some type of _____ *dystrophy* _____, he had a difficult time walking without some type of assistance.
8. You will certainly _____ *exacerbate* _____ your sprained ankle if you attempt to play basketball today.
9. As part of the initiation process, candidates used to have to sing their school songs, howl like wolves, recite the names of the presidents, and do other such _____ *sophomoric* _____ stunts, but, fortunately, those juvenile requirements were abolished over a decade ago.
10. The party became so wild and _____ *clamorous* _____ that the police had to be called to break it up.

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- _____ *c* _____ 1. The opposite of **gregarious** is
 - a. polite
 - b. curious
 - c. shy
 - d. friendly
- _____ *d* _____ 2. The *opposite* of **bereft** is
 - a. painful
 - b. panicky
 - c. peppy
 - d. plentiful
- _____ *a* _____ 3. The *opposite* of **clamorous** is
 - a. quiet
 - b. exciting
 - c. sadly
 - d. noisily
- _____ *d* _____ 4. **Colloquial** is associated with language that is
 - a. regrettable
 - b. vague
 - c. necessary
 - d. conversational

West Virginia. For a number of years, the families were on friendly terms, even intermarrying. Then the Civil War (1861–1865) erupted.

Except for one aberration, Asa McCoy, members of both families sympathized with the South. However, Asa McCoy joined the Union troops and served for a year before being discharged after he broke a leg, resulting in dystrophy in that limb.

After Asa returned to his Appalachian home in Kentucky, he was approached by Jim Vance, a relative of the Hatfields. Vance warned Asa in the unique colloquial language of that region that a group of Confederate supporters, included members of the Hatfield clan, would soon be “visiting him.” Fearing for his life, Asa hid in a cave, but he was soon found and shot to death, setting the stage for a feud reminiscent of the medieval feuds of 500–1500.

Relations between the Hatfields and McCoy remained tense but without further bloodshed for a time; then in 1878, Old Randall McCoy and Floyd Hatfield got into a bitter quarrel over a pig. A trial was held in an effort to determine the lawful owner. The verdict hinged on Old Randall’s nephew, Bill Staton, who, no doubt to the surprise of many people, testified that Floyd Hatfield was the rightful owner of the pig. A few months later, Bill Staton was shot to death by Paris and Sam McCoy.

Star-crossed lovers from the clans then became involved in the long and deadly feud. Old Randall McCoy had an attractive and gregarious daughter, Roseanna, who enjoyed social get-togethers. At one of these noisy, clamorous events, she met Johnse Hatfield, who was attractive but rather sophomoric, apparently believing he was wiser and more mature than he actually was. Nevertheless, Roseanna fell in love with Johnse, and she became pregnant. She assumed that she and Johnse would marry. However, her brothers kidnapped Johnse, saying they were going to take him “to jail.” Roseanna knew better, so she rode to “Devil Anse” Hatfield’s home to tell him what had happened. “Devil Anse” quickly got his sons and some neighbors, and they succeeded in rescuing Johnse before he suffered any harm from the McCoy brothers. Johnse, though, never returned to Roseanna, even after she gave birth to their daughter, Sarah Elizabeth, who died in infancy. Johnse added to Roseanna’s misery by marrying her sixteen-year-old cousin, Nancy McCoy. Roseanna was now ostracized by both her family and the Hatfields. Bereft of family and friends, Roseanna broke down emotionally and physically, dying before she was thirty years old.

The tragedies continued as three of Old Randall's sons exacerbated the feud by murdering Ellison Hatfield, stabbing him twenty-six times, then shooting him in the back. The Hatfields retaliated by capturing the three McCoy brothers and then killing them. The Hatfields also broke into the home of Mary McCoy Daniels, whipped Mary and her daughter, and later shot to death Jeff McCoy, Mary's brother.

The Hatfield-McCoy feud, which started in 1863 with the death of Asa McCoy, finally ended in 1888 after eight Hatfields were found guilty of murder, with one of them being publicly hanged and seven sentenced to life imprisonment. However, an indication that the feud was truly over occurred in June 2000, when the Hatfields and McCoys held a joint reunion in Pikeville, Kentucky.

FEATURED WORD: *sophomoric*

Sophomoric—(1) characteristic of a sophomore; (2) intellectually smug; immature:

- The young man tried to impress the panel members by asking what he thought were thought-provoking questions, but they were actually sophomoric inquiries, causing all of the members to smile and a number of them to laugh.

Origin: 1688 <Greek—*sophos* (wise) and *moros* (foolish, dull)

Family words: sophomorical (adj), sophomorically (adv)

Connotation: *negative*—describes a person who exhibits great immaturity and lack of judgment

Image to remember: a prankster

Write an original sentence using *sophomoric*:

conscience a person's sense of right and wrong:

My conscience bothered me until I finally paid back the money I had borrowed from Shannon a couple of months ago.

conscious being awake, alert, aware:

The patient was conscious about an hour after the surgery was completed.

Are you conscious of the fact that we have a biology test tomorrow?

Circle the correct answer:

1. Trish suddenly became conscience / conscious of the fact that her remarks had upset her friend, so she apologized.
2. His conscience / conscious told him not to argue with the police officer, so he didn't.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **conscience:** _____
2. **conscious:** _____

10. trepidation (trep ə DĀ shən)—noun

- Sydney approached her first flying lesson with *trepidation*, but afterward she was so thrilled she couldn't wait for her next lesson.
- Most people have feelings of *trepidation* when they are told they need to undergo hospital tests.

trepidation is (a) fear (b) shyness _____ a _____ .

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

alienation	deleterious	hypothetical	impeccable	gullible
collateral	felicitous	immutable	impunity	trepidation

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| <u>deleterious</u> | 1. destructive, harmful |
| <u>hypothetical</u> | 2. forming a reasonable opinion but without sufficient evidence or proof |
| <u>impeccable</u> | 3. perfect, flawless, unblemished |
| <u>alienation</u> | 4. separation due to hostility or suspicion, isolation |
| <u>gullible</u> | 5. easily deceived, trustful |
| <u>felicitous</u> | 6. appropriate, timely |
| <u>trepidation</u> | 7. fear, terror, alarm |
| <u>collateral</u> | 8. security pledged in return for a loan |
| <u>impunity</u> | 9. freedom from punishment, exemption |
| <u>immutable</u> | 10. permanent, changeless |

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

alienation	deleterious	hypothetical	impeccable	gullible
collateral	felicitous	immutable	impunity	trepidation

1. Erin used her house as _____ *collateral* _____ for a loan to expand her jewelry store.
2. Because these old coins are in _____ *impeccable* _____ condition, they are worth much more than their face value.
3. Ironically, change is one of life's _____ *immutable* _____ laws.
4. Kindergarten helps children learn they must consider the effects of their acts on others, that they can't behave with _____ *impunity* _____.

5. Carrie eventually realized she should stop dwelling on her disappointment about not receiving the promotion because her preoccupation with this matter was having a(n) deleterious effect on her emotional state as well as on her family.
6. Rob is so gullible he actually believed me when I told him I was offered a movie contract even though I've never even been in a school play.
7. Kwan's felicitous arrival with the car saved me from being late to work.
8. My hypothetical reasoning as to why Imogene broke up with Clint is that she has a crush on somebody else, but I'm just guessing.
9. The alienation and suspicion initially existing between the two neighbors gradually dissolved as they became better acquainted.
10. Despite his trepidation about flying, a fear that developed four years ago when he had flown during a severe thunderstorm, Eddie was determined to fly to California to visit his friend.

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- d 1. **Alienation** suggests
- a. movement
 - b. participation
 - c. harmony
 - d. division
- a 2. The opposite of **impeccable** is
- a. imperfect
 - b. impossible
 - c. impatient
 - d. immovable
- d 3. The word most closely associated with **collateral** is
- a. pleasure
 - b. pity
 - c. popularity
 - d. promise
- a 4. **Impunity** suggests
- a. exception
 - b. hastiness
 - c. weakness
 - d. disapproval

- c 5. Who is likely to be the most **gullible**?
- angry parent
 - experienced lawyer
 - young child
 - senior citizen
- b 6. A **hypothetical** conclusion is always
- accurate
 - uncertain
 - acceptable
 - unpopular
- d 7. The word most closely associated with **deleterious** is
- health
 - beauty
 - success
 - ruin
- a 8. **felicitous : unfortunate ::**
- boring : inspiring
 - graceful : skillful
 - impatient : restless
 - honest: trustworthy
- b 9. **trepidation : trembling ::**
- frightening : giggling
 - fear : shaking
 - dread : encouraging
 - foolishness : threatening
- c 10. **immutable : changeable ::**
- changeable : adjustable
 - adjustable : flexible
 - flexible : rigid
 - rigid : unyielding

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

deleterious	hypothetical	impeccable	alienation	gullible
felicitous	trepidation	collateral	impunity	immutable

CELEBRITY WORSHIP

Are you interested in the lives of celebrities? Using hypothetical reasoning, I'd say the answer is "yes," as studies indicate that people from six to sixty generally are. Of course, the degree of interest varies. Most people have only a passing interest because they are so involved in their own activities and relationships that they have little time or energy to devote major attention to "star watching." However, for some people, being

engrossed with the lives of celebrities results in alienation from families and friends. Such obsessed worshipers seem compelled to learn every scrap of information they can about their favorite celebrity, devouring magazines, newspapers, blogs, and other Internet sites, many of which are far from impeccable sources. For example, many bloggers appear to believe they can, with absolute impunity, write anything they want about celebrities, and gullible fans will believe it, even when the “information” is so absurd that most two-year-olds would know better.

Unfortunately, there are also a few mentally unbalanced individuals who identify so strongly with their idol that they become stalkers. A few years ago, a man from the Midwest borrowed thousands of dollars from a bank, using his house as collateral, so that he could move to Los Angeles to be near his “only love,” a popular television actress. The actress naturally became filled with trepidation as she began to see this man hanging around outside her apartment day and night. It was felicitous that the security personnel at the apartment complex had also become aware of this stalker’s presence, and with their help, she secured a court order banning the man from not only the apartment complex area but also from the studio lot where she worked. The man soon moved back to the Midwest, much to the relief of the actress.

For a minority of people, then, celebrity worship can be deleterious to their emotional and mental health; however, for most people, it’s a welcome diversion from their regular routines. In addition, psychologists say it’s also an immutable fact that admiring accomplished people and having appropriate idols can inspire us to strive toward our life’s goals. Celebrity worship, then, like most things in life, is fine if not taken to the extreme—and if the celebrities are actually worthy role models.

FEATURED WORD: hypothetical

Hypothetical—derived from *hypothesis*, an assumption taken to be true for the purpose of argument or investigation:

- So, Jason, let me ask you a hypothetical question: If you were on a long car trip without a spare tire, what would you do if you had a flat 100 miles from nowhere?

Origin: 1588 <Greek—*hypothesis*; *hypo* (under) and *thesis* (a placing, proposition)

Family words: hypothesis (n), hypothesize (v), hypothetical (adj), hypothetically (adv)

Connotation: *positive* or *neutral*—often reflects the positive use of speculation, logical reasoning, and imagination

Image to remember: a police officer speculating as to what caused a car accident

Write an original sentence using *hypothetical*:

MASTERING CONFUSING WORDS

weather / whether

weather atmospheric conditions:

April weather in the Midwest is unpredictable, with chilly rains one day and sunny, summerlike temperatures the next.

whether means “if”:

I don’t know whether Joss is coming with us, do you?

Circle the correct answer:

1. I can’t remember weather / whether Kinsey or Serena is the oldest daughter in the family.
2. During the summer, what’s the weather / whether like in Arkansas?

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **weather:** _____
2. **whether:** _____

5. **nebulous** (NEB yə ləs)—adjective

- My grandparents' retirement plans are still in the *nebulous* stage, but they have talked about spending the winter months in Florida.
- Brianna's *nebulous* ideas about how to correct the computer problem finally crystallized into a clear solution.

nebulous means (a) unclear (b) exciting _____ a _____ .

6. **sagacious** (sə GĀ shəs)—adjective

- Due to their stockbroker's *sagacious* advice over the years, my in-laws are financially comfortable today.
- Jada is not only well informed about the details of the project, but she's also *sagacious* when it comes to the engineering procedures that will be used.

sagacious means (a) courageous (b) wise _____ b _____ .

7. **specious** (SPĒ shəs)—adjective

- Based upon the information contained in his resume, the personnel director felt the applicant had given *specious* responses to some of her questions, so she recommended he not be hired.
- My tennis opponent told me he was just an average player, a *specious* statement because I knew he had been among the top finishers in several tournaments in our area.

specious means (a) modest (b) misleading _____ b _____ .

8. **redundant** (ri DUN dənt)—adjective

- Erika said the professor of her criminal law class had been *redundant* today as he had previously lectured on the rights of the accused.
- I know I'm being *redundant*, but if you want to buy my car, be sure to call me by 5:30 this evening.

redundant refers to unnecessary (a) abruptness (b) repetition _____ b _____ .

9. **repudiate** (rē PŪ dē āt)—verb

- I not only disagree with you, but I'm also sure Pam will *repudiate* your claim that this is an unfriendly neighborhood in which to live.
- The senator is confident her voting record will *repudiate* her opponent's charge that she is no friend of the environment.

repudiate means to (a) contradict (b) confirm _____ a _____ .

10. viable (VĪ ə bəl)—adjective

- Because of the unexpectedly high estimates from several carpenters, the Bayers decided the only *viable* choice for them was to remodel their old house themselves.
- Mr. Francis’s law enforcement background made him a *viable* candidate for the sheriff’s position.

viable means (a) surprising (b) practical _____ *b* _____ .

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

debacle	deprivation	garrulous	meticulous	nebulous
sagacious	specious	redundant	repudiate	viable
<u>repudiate</u>	1.	to deny, to reject as untrue or unjust		
<u>viable</u>	2.	practical, workable, capable of succeeding		
<u>meticulous</u>	3.	precise, particular, thorough, exacting		
<u>debacle</u>	4.	complete failure, disaster		
<u>garrulous</u>	5.	talkative, wordy		
<u>deprivation</u>	6.	a lack of the usual comforts and necessities of life, a hardship		
<u>specious</u>	7.	false, misleading		
<u>redundant</u>	8.	unnecessarily repetitious, excessive		
<u>sagacious</u>	9.	intelligent, clever, wise		
<u>nebulous</u>	10.	hazy, vague, indistinct, incomplete		

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-------------|-----------|------------|----------|
| debacle | deprivation | garrulous | meticulous | nebulous |
| sagacious | specious | redundant | repudiate | viable |
1. Trey is often so garrulous it’s virtually impossible to get a word in edgewise.
 2. The pharmaceutical company had to repudiate its advertising claim regarding the healing power of its new arthritis medicine because research studies clearly indicate the medicine isn’t effective.
 3. Although my grandmother never had the opportunity to go to college, she’s the most sagacious person I know, so I seek her advice whenever I have a problem.
 4. Engineers say the only viable solution for preventing floods in this part of the state is to construct a series of dams.

5. Our double date turned into a(n) debacle because after our car broke down, we arrived too late to attend the concert, so the other couple ended up pouting the rest of the evening.
6. Alex said the major deprivation he experienced as an only child was a lack of companionship.
7. Isn't it redundant to say someone is a "rich" millionaire?
8. Archaeologists have been conducting meticulous excavations in the Middle East for many years in an effort not to damage anything they might uncover.
9. Some people believe car salespeople often make specious statements when trying to make a sale, but I've found them to be honest in their conversations with me.
10. If the film had a major point, it was too nebulous for me to figure out.

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- b 1. The *opposite* of **sagacious** is
a. interesting
b. foolish
c. expensive
d. ill
- a 2. The *opposite* of **specious** is
a. honest
b. common
c. noisy
d. sharp
- c 3. The *opposite* of **viable** is
a. impatience
b. impressive
c. impractical
d. impolite
- d 4. A **meticulous** person is
a. unfaithful
b. colorful
c. dull
d. thorough
- b 5. A **garrulous** person is certainly *not*
a. opinionated
b. brief
c. weak
d. popular

- b 6. **Deprivation** suggests
a. elegance
b. poverty
c. sensitivity
d. defiance
- d 7. If the person talking to you was being **redundant**, you would probably feel
a. confused
b. fascinated
c. encouraged
d. bored
- c 8. **nebulous : cloudy :: a.** dark : pale
b. vague : plain
c. hazy : fuzzy
d. bright : gloomy
- a 9. **repudiate : evil :: a.** embrace : good
b. deny : virtue
c. commit : crime
d. support : wickedness
- b 10. **debacle : commotion :: a.** failure : triumph
b. success : celebration
c. riot : ceremony
d. victory : disturbance

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

debacle deprivation garrulous meticulous nebulous
sagacious specious redundant repudiate viable

I'M BACK!

Though the actual number of adults ranging in age from twenty to thirty-four who move back to live with their parents remains somewhat nebulous , most sociologists believe the figure to be at least 18 million, which is approximately one-third of those falling into that age group. Careful, meticulous research reveals the intriguing finding that households in the higher income brackets are significantly more likely to have adult children living at home than those in the lower income brackets. Another interesting discovery that has remained more or less constant the past several years is that slightly over half of those about to graduate from college indicate they will be moving back home to live with their parents. Should, then, their college education be

considered a debacle of some sort? According to our most respected and sagacious social analysts, the answer is an emphatic “No!” Then why do so many college graduates and other young adults appear to repudiate the opportunity to live on their own? Actually, to assume that all these college graduates are willingly denying themselves such an opportunity would be specious reasoning, as there are a variety of valid reasons why they are again living at home.

For example, one friendly and garrulous recent graduate talked at some length about why he and a number of his classmates had moved back home after graduation. In his case, he had moved back home so he could more quickly pay off his college debts. He also said that three of his classmates had moved back home because they had not been successful so far in finding jobs. Two other classmates, though employed, chose to live at home because they realized the only way they could afford an apartment in the trendy suburban area close to where they worked was to give up many of the comforts they were accustomed to, an unreasonable deprivation, at least in their minds. Another classmate intended to go to graduate school, and living at home was the only viable way she could afford to do so.

It would be redundant to repeat the results of other studies because they largely reveal similar findings relating to why young adults move back home. However, others do mention that some people move back home to prepare for their marriages while others do so because of divorce. Regardless of the reasons, studies reveal that most parents are happy to have their children living with them again—particularly if it’s only temporary.

FEATURED WORD: sagacious

Sagacious—describes someone who is keenly insightful and wise:

- The judge was sagacious, fair, and even-tempered.

Origin: 1540–1550 <Latin—*sagax* (wise) and *ous* (full of)

Family words: sagaciously (adv), sagaciousness (n), sagacity (n)

Connotation: *positive*—associated with wisdom and excellent judgment

Image to remember: Albert Einstein

Write an original sentence using *sagacious*:

MASTERING CONFUSING WORDS

complement / compliment

complement something that completes or brings to perfection:

Asante's three-point shooting ability serves to complement the scoring ability of the back-court players.

compliment to praise:

Did you compliment Asante for his good game?

Circle the correct answer:

1. I would like to complement / compliment all of you for volunteering to clean the park this first day of spring.
2. Do you think paint or wallpaper would best complement / compliment the furniture in this room?

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **complement:** _____

2. **compliment:** _____

Learning Challenging Words from Context Clues

1. **catharsis** (kə THAR sis)—noun

- Attending basketball games is a *catharsis* for Elliot because he's able to rid himself of stress by cheering for his favorite team.
- As a *catharsis* for her anger and disappointment, Julia took a long, brisk walk.

catharsis is most related to (a) cleansing (b) saving a .

2. **dearth** (DURTH)—noun

- There was a *dearth* of applicants for the city manager's position, so the city council is going to re-advertise the position.
- A *dearth* of hometown fans at the important game was a disappointment to the coaches, players, and cheerleaders as many of the bleachers were empty.

dearth is associated with (a) insufficiency (b) inactivity a .

3. **guile** (GĪL)—noun

- Are you suggesting the charges against the defendant were dismissed because of her lawyer's *guile* rather than because of her innocence?
- The reporter's *guile* gained him entrance to the celebrities' wedding.

guile is most related to (a) logic (b) trickery b .

4. **lethargy** (LETH əɹ jē)—noun

- Lying around all day watching television leads to *lethargy*, not vitality.
- Tasha's *lethargy* the past few days is due to her recent bout with the flu.

lethargy is most related to (a) outbursts of anger (b) the blahs b .

5. **affinity** (ə FIN ə tē)—noun

- Dillon's lifelong *affinity* for sports led to a coaching career.
- Emily's *affinity* for dancing was apparent the first time she stepped onto a dance floor.

affinity refers to (a) an inclination for (b) a confusion about a .

Spies like the character of James Bond are masters of *clandestine* behavior.
(© Bettmann/Corbis)



Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

catharsis	guile	affinity	dichotomy	banal
dearth	lethargy	affluence	enigma	clandestine
<u>banal</u>	1.	common, lacking originality, stale, boring		
<u>guile</u>	2.	deceit, trickery		
<u>enigma</u>	3.	puzzle, mystery		

<u>lethargy</u>	4. sluggishness, a lack of energy
<u>clandestine</u>	5. done in secrecy, hidden
<u>dichotomy</u>	6. division into two parts, a split
<u>catharsis</u>	7. discharge of pent-up emotions, a cleansing
<u>affinity</u>	8. a natural liking or ability for, an attraction to
<u>dearth</u>	9. lack, scarcity, insufficiency
<u>affluence</u>	10. wealth, riches, prosperity

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

catharsis guile affinity dichotomy banal
dearth lethargy affluence enigma clandestine

1. A punching bag in his basement serves as a(n) catharsis for Jerry, so whenever he gets tense or angry, he heads downstairs to flail away it.
2. Nick, after sprawling on the couch for a couple of weeks after school got out, eventually overcame his lethargy and went looking for a job.
3. He decided to move to Omaha because of a(n) dearth of employment opportunities in his small hometown.
4. My obnoxious uncle bragged that his recent business success was due to his “exceptional cleverness,” which most people, including me, would call guile, not “exceptional cleverness.”
5. The newspaper editorial accused the school board of holding clandestine rather than public meetings about the proposed school budget.
6. Actually, most people in the community know there is a(n) dichotomy among the board members because six members favor the proposed budget while the other six members oppose it.
7. In certain social situations when people don’t know each other too well, they will often talk about the weather or other banal subjects just to make conversation.
8. Alfred Hitchcock’s films, such as *Rear Window*, always contain a(n) enigma that most moviegoers find intriguing to try to unravel.

9. Despite his lifelong _____ *affinity* _____ for candy, desserts, and other sweets, Jay has never been overweight.
10. A person must be of considerable _____ *affluence* _____ to buy a Midwestern farm.

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- _____ *b* _____ 1. The *opposite* of **banal** is
a. old-fashioned
b. fresh
c. common
d. insensitive
- _____ *b* _____ 2. The *opposite* of **guile** is
a. cleverness
b. frankness
c. exaggeration
d. anger
- _____ *d* _____ 3. The *opposite* of **affluence** is
a. anxiety
b. happiness
c. abundance
d. poverty
- _____ *d* _____ 4. **Lethargy** suggests
a. snobbery
b. brilliance
c. maturity
d. fatigue
- _____ *c* _____ 5. **Enigma** is most closely associated with a(n)
a. location
b. obligation
c. riddle
d. organization
- _____ *a* _____ 6. If people do something in a **clandestine** manner, then they do it
a. secretly
b. openly
c. skillfully
d. awkwardly

- c 7. **Catharsis** is most closely associated with
a. illness
b. travel
c. purification
d. caution
- c 8. **dearth : expensive ::** a. plenty : costly
b. many : priceless
c. abundant : cheap
d. saving : free
- a 9. **affinity : fondness ::** a. attraction : devotion
b. expectation : surprise
c. bitterness : love
d. appeal : hate
- d 10. **dichotomy : unity ::** a. abbreviation : shortening
b. mutiny : revolt
c. loyalty : praiseworthy
d. division : wholeness

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

catharsis	guile	affinity	dichotomy	banal
dearth	lethargy	affluence	enigma	clandestine

ROBERT LINCOLN

Abraham and Mary Lincoln had four children, all sons, but only the eldest, Robert, lived to reach adulthood. Edward (1846–1850) died from diphtheria at age four in Springfield, Illinois; William (1850–1862) died from typhoid fever at eleven in Washington, D.C., during his father’s presidency; and Thomas (1853–1871), called Tad, died from tuberculosis at eighteen in Chicago.

Robert Lincoln was born in Springfield, Illinois, in 1843. He graduated from Harvard University in 1864, ranking thirty-second in that class of ninety-nine graduates. He then attended Harvard Law School for a time. During the last year of the Civil War (1861–1865), Robert served as a captain on General Grant’s staff.

On the morning of April 14, 1865, the day of his father’s assassination by John Wilkes Booth, Robert was back in Washington and had breakfast with his family. He had been present when General Lee had surrendered to General Grant at Appomattox, Virginia, a week earlier, and he told his family the details relating to this momentous event. In the process, he showed his father a photograph of General Lee. After viewing

the picture for some time, President Lincoln indicated he thought General Lee's face reflected goodness, not guile .

That evening, President and Mrs. Lincoln attended a play, *Our American Cousin*, at Ford's Theater. Robert decided not to accompany his parents, but instead chose to spend a quiet and what might be considered banal evening in his room at the White House. He likely was experiencing fatigue and lethargy as a result of the climactic events he had recently witnessed that ended the Civil War.

Earlier that day, John Wilkes Booth had held a(n) clandestine meeting with his co-conspirators. Booth's motive for assassinating President Lincoln is not considered a(n) enigma to historians because it was well known that Booth had a strong affinity for the South during the war. In addition, Booth, emotionally unstable throughout his twenty-six-year-old life, had developed a pathological hatred of Lincoln, viewing him as a ruthless dictator. By killing President Lincoln and members of his Cabinet, the latter of which Booth had assigned to his co-conspirators, Booth apparently thought he would put the federal government in such disarray that the South might have a chance to resume and win the war. In any instance, Booth felt that killing Lincoln would avenge the South and serve as a gratifying catharsis for his pent-up hatred of the president. He also thought he would be viewed as a hero in the South and eventually in all of the world's history books.

A month after his father's assassination, Robert, his mother, and his brother Tad moved to Chicago. Robert took law courses at the University of Chicago, and he was admitted to the bar in 1867. The following year, Robert married Mary Eunice Harlan. Over the course of the next few years, they had two daughters (Mary and Jessie) and one son (Abraham, but called "Jack").

During the 1870s, Robert Lincoln became a prosperous Chicago lawyer, and he and his family never suffered from a dearth of life's necessities but led a life reflecting the affluence his successful career had made possible. In 1881 President James Garfield appointed Robert secretary of war (what we now call secretary of defense), and he served in this capacity until 1885. (Ironically, as well as tragically, President Garfield became the second president to be assassinated.) He later served as the United States minister to England and as president of the Pullman Company in Chicago, which made sleeper cars for the railroad. He died at his summer home in Manchester, Vermont, in 1926, just days short of his eighty-third birthday.

There was an undeniable dichotomy between Abraham and Robert Lincoln, both in appearance and in personality; in particular, whereas Abraham Lincoln was tall and slender, his son Robert was short and stocky; in addition, Robert was much more reserved and introverted than his famous father. Nevertheless, Robert's life was one of accomplishments and of honor. (The last person to have direct lineage to Abraham Lincoln was Robert's grandson Robert "Bud" Beckwith, who died in 1985 without leaving any heirs.)

FEATURED WORD: clandestine

Clandestine—something done in secret, often for improper reasons:

- Some of the king's closest advisers held a clandestine meeting to plot his overthrow.

Origin: 1566 <Latin—*clandestinus*—secret, hidden; *clam* (secretly) from base of *celare* (to hide)

Family words: clandestinely (adv), clandestineness (n)

Connotation: *negative*—associated with unlawful acts done in secrecy

Image to remember: thieves meeting in a back room to plot their next crime

Write an original sentence using *clandestine*:

coarse rough, vulgar, indecent:

Shay had to use coarse sandpaper to remove the coat of paint from the old table. However, his coarse language almost caused the paint to blister and come off by itself.

course plan, route, school subject:

The course of action recommended by her lawyer was to file a legal complaint. The cross-country course is at least five miles long, according to Bruno. I enjoy my chemistry course, but I find it difficult and time-consuming.

Circle the correct answer:

1. Did you continue with your foreign language coarse / course this semester?
2. Occasionally, our coach gets angry, but I've never heard him use coarse / course language.
3. The coarse / course we took on our car trip followed the beautiful Connecticut River for many miles.
4. The texture of the cloth was coarse / course and heavy.
5. The coarse / course to follow for good dental health includes brushing and flossing the teeth after every meal if at all possible.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **coarse:** _____
2. **coarse:** _____
3. **course:** _____
4. **course:** _____
5. **course:** _____

Learning Challenging Words from Context Clues

1. **cogent** (KŌ jənt)—adjective

- There are many good reasons for not smoking, but those having to do with health are the most *cogent*.
- The newlyweds bought the insurance policy after Mr. Downey presented them with a number of *cogent* reasons for doing so.

cogent means (a) disturbing (b) persuasive _____ *b* _____ .

2. **rationalize** (RASH ə nə līz)—verb

- Sometimes we *rationalize* our mistakes rather than taking direct steps to correct them.
- Megan will often *rationalize* her son's misbehavior by saying he's just high-spirited, not deliberately naughty.

rationalize means to (a) make excuses for (b) overreact _____ *a* _____ .

3. **sordid** (SOR did)—adjective

- The *sordid* details of the mayor's private life may jeopardize his chances for reelection.
- Migrant workers should never have to endure *sordid* working conditions, such as being housed in abandoned railroad boxcars.

sordid means (a) hidden (b) shameful _____ *b* _____ .

4. **eclectic** (ē KLEK tik)—adjective

- The government adopted an *eclectic* approach rather than a single one in attempting to solve the unemployment problem.
- Ms. Henderson's *eclectic* teaching techniques, ranging from individual instruction to class field trips, result in impressive scholastic achievements by her students.

eclectic means (a) complicated (b) various _____ *b* _____ .

10. ephemeral (i FEM əɹ əl)—adjective

- The popularity of men’s leisure suits proved to be *ephemeral* as they are no longer sold or worn.
- Although many children’s interest in taking piano lessons proves to be *ephemeral*, Angelina continued to take lessons until she graduated from high school.

ephemeral means (a) unpopular (b) short-lived _____ b .

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

cogent sordid usurp parochial acquiesce
rationalize eclectic inundate perfunctory ephemeral

- usurp 1. seize control of, move in on, trespass
 perfunctory 2. performed in an uninterested or routine manner
 sordid 3. disgraceful, shameful
 ephemeral 4. lasting a short time, fleeting
 parochial 5. limited or narrow in viewpoint
 cogent 6. convincing, persuasive
 inundate 7. to overwhelm, to overflow
 eclectic 8. from many sources, various
 acquiesce 9. to agree to, to submit to
 rationalize 10. to explain away, to justify

Fill-Ins with Challenging Words

In each space, write the appropriate word from those listed below.

cogent sordid usurp parochial acquiesce
rationalize eclectic inundate perfunctory ephemeral

1. Although he had planned to spend the day working on his car, Andrew reluctantly decided he had better _____ acquiesce to his supervisor’s request to work on Saturday.
2. I don’t think there is any valid excuse for your discourtesy to Kirsten, so don’t try to _____ rationalize your rude behavior to me.
3. After the heavy rain, the overflow from the creek began to _____ inundate the road leading to town.
4. Fatima has _____ eclectic interests, ranging from photography to scuba diving.

5. The couple's pledge to always remain together proved to be ephemeral as they broke up three weeks later.
6. The Pinettes, a retired couple, are anything but parochial in their interests because they enjoy traveling, attending concerts, refinishing furniture, bowling, and canoeing.
7. Every soap opera seems to have at least one major character who leads a(n) sordid life—a life full of deception, infidelity, and crime.
8. The dental hygienist gave me a number of cogent reasons for flossing my teeth after every meal, including the prevention of gum disease.
9. When the student pilot did a casual check of the plane before takeoff, his instructor sternly lectured him for making such a(n) perfunctory inspection.
10. The new custodian was told never to usurp a teacher's authority by disciplining students.

Checking Your Word Power

After selecting your response, put the letter in the space provided.

- b 1. The *opposite* of **acquiesce** is to
- a. agree
 - b. refuse
 - c. endorse
 - d. prove
- c 2. The *opposite* of **cogent** is
- a. smart
 - b. forceful
 - c. vague
 - d. happy
- a 3. The *opposite* of **perfunctory** is
- a. precise
 - b. tardy
 - c. inconsiderate
 - d. calm
- d 4. We are most likely to **rationalize** our
- a. income
 - b. dreams
 - c. triumphs
 - d. mistakes

- b 5. The person most likely to **usurp** authority is a(n)
 a. boss
 b. rebel
 c. police officer
 d. athlete
- b 6. A person with **eclectic** musical interests would probably
 a. like only one type of music
 b. like many types of music
 c. be unable to read music
 d. be an accomplished musician
- a 7. On the other hand, a person with **parochial** musical interests would probably
 a. like only one type of music
 b. like many types of music
 c. be unable to read music
 d. be an accomplished musician
- c 8. **sordid : honorable ::** a. quiet : silent
 b. sorrow : grief
 c. dirty : clean
 d. funny : dishonorable
- d 9. **inundate : overwhelm ::** a. overwhelm : challenge
 b. challenge : admit
 c. admit : invent
 d. invent : create
- a 10. **ephemeral : passing ::** a. temporary : brief
 b. momentary : enduring
 c. impulsive : thoughtful
 d. vanishing : appearing

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

cogent	sordid	usurped	parochial	acquiesced
rationalizing	eclectic	inundated	perfunctory	ephemeral

ELIZABETH BLACKWELL, M.D.

Elizabeth Blackwell (1821–1910) was the first woman to earn a medical degree in the United States. She was born in England, but she and her family moved to the United States when she was eleven. Her father’s occupational pursuits in New York failed, so he moved the family to New Jersey and eventually to Cincinnati in an attempt to establish a successful business. Unfortunately, Mr. Blackwell died before doing so, leaving

his family without any financial resources. To support themselves, Elizabeth, her sisters Anna and Marian, and their mother opened a private school.

During the next few years, Elizabeth taught in Cincinnati as well as in communities in Kentucky and North and South Carolina. From childhood on, Elizabeth always had eclectic interests, ranging from literature to natural science, but during her relatively brief teaching career, she developed a particular interest in medicine, an interest that proved to be enduring rather than ephemeral. She eventually decided to become a doctor, rationalizing that many women would prefer to consult with a woman physician about their health problems than with a male doctor.

After studying privately with male doctors, who supported her efforts after listening to her cogent reasons as to why they should help her realize her goal of becoming a physician, Elizabeth inundated the medical schools in the Northeast with admission applications. However, most of the colleges gave her application only perfunctory attention because of their parochial view, the predominant one for that period, that only men possessed the necessary intellectual, emotional, and physical capacities to become doctors, so her admissions requests were quickly rejected.

However, when administration officials at Geneva Medical College in Geneva, New York, received Elizabeth's application, they decided to poll the students on whether she should be admitted. The students, apparently believing the matter was a joke, nonchalantly acquiesced to her admission request. However, when they discovered that Elizabeth's application was for real, they were at first shocked, then angry.

After Elizabeth arrived at the college and started to attend classes, many students shunned her and some professors openly resented her, even to the extent of prohibiting her from attending certain classroom medical demonstrations, deeming them inappropriate for a woman. Students and professors alike seemed convinced that Elizabeth had usurped a slot in the medical school that rightfully belonged to a man. Over time, however, students and professors came to admire her for her abilities and persistence. In 1849, Elizabeth graduated first in her class, becoming the first woman to graduate from medical school in the United States.

After further study in France and England, Elizabeth opened a clinic in 1853 in one of the most sordid slums in New York City. Her sister Emily, who had also become a doctor, and Dr. Marie Zakrzewsha, an immigrant from Poland, joined her medical staff. In addition, a number of the city's leading male physicians supported her clinic by serving as consultants. As the years passed, she helped to establish the New York

Infirmary for Women and Children, as well as the Women’s Central Association of Relief during the Civil War; inspired the creation of the U.S. Sanitary Commission; and, with her sister, opened a medical college for women that existed for thirty-one years. She died in 1910 at the age of eighty-nine.

Medical historians agree that Dr. Elizabeth Blackwell deserves much of the credit for the fact that today nearly 30 percent of all doctors in the United States are women and that this percentage will probably grow significantly within the next few years.

FEATURED WORD: **parochial**

Parochial—(1) refers to a church parish or church school; (2) also means narrowly restricted in scope or outlook:

- Michael attended parochial schools from kindergarten through high school.
- I had parochial views about music in high school, refusing to listen to any type of music except rap and hard rock.

Origin: <French—*parochial* <Latin—*parochialis*—of a parish. *Parochial* to describe a church school dates from the mid-1700s. *Parochial* as a word meaning “limited or narrow in scope or outlook” dates from 1847.

Family words: parochialism (n), parochially (adj)

Connotation: *neutral* or *negative*—neutral when referring to schools with a specific religious affiliation, negative when referring to people who are narrow-minded

Image to remember: a Catholic school

Write original sentences using the two common meanings of *parochial*:

1. _____

2. _____

breath a noun that refers to the act of inhaling and exhaling:

Bettina took a deep breath before diving into the water.

breathe a verb that means inhaling and exhaling air:

It was difficult to breathe in the stuffy, hot room.

Circle the correct answer:

1. A respirator was helping the elderly patient to breath / breathe.
2. My sister was holding her breath / breathe to keep from laughing during the minister's long prayer.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **breath:** _____

2. **breathe:** _____

REVIEW TEST, CHAPTERS 11–17

Word Parts

Matching Word Parts and Definitions

Match each underlined word part with its definition.

A

- | | | |
|----------|--------------|-----------------|
| <u>c</u> | 1. port | a. hundred |
| <u>e</u> | 2. arch | b. killing of |
| <u>a</u> | 3. cent | c. carry |
| <u>d</u> | 4. ven, vent | d. come, go |
| <u>b</u> | 5. cide | e. chief, ruler |

B

- | | | |
|----------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| <u>e</u> | 1. circum | a. light |
| <u>c</u> | 2. onym | b. condition, quality of |
| <u>a</u> | 3. photo | c. name, word |
| <u>d</u> | 4. dem | d. people |
| <u>b</u> | 5. age, ance, ship | e. around |

C

- | | | |
|----------|----------------|--------------------------|
| <u>d</u> | 1. claim, clam | a. abnormal, faulty |
| <u>c</u> | 2. greg | b. to bring about |
| <u>e</u> | 3. al | c. crowd, group |
| <u>a</u> | 4. dys | d. shout, cry out |
| <u>b</u> | 5. ize | e. having the quality of |

D

- | | | |
|----------|---------|-------------------------------------|
| <u>c</u> | 1. ac | a. to blunder, to stray from normal |
| <u>a</u> | 2. err | b. having the quality of |
| <u>e</u> | 3. medi | c. bitterly sharp, insightful |
| <u>d</u> | 4. be | d. to be |
| <u>b</u> | 5. ic | e. middle |

E

- | | | |
|----------|---------------|--------------------------|
| <u>b</u> | 1. sol | a. done in the manner of |
| <u>e</u> | 2. polis, urb | b. alone |
| <u>d</u> | 3. ish | c. draw, pull |
| <u>a</u> | 4. ly | d. descriptive of |
| <u>c</u> | 5. tract | e. city |

Fill-Ins with Word Parts

Select the appropriate word part so the proper word is formed in each sentence.

ped micro scrib poten leg

1. Their young daughter was enjoying _____ *scrib* _____ bling in her coloring book with her new crayons.
2. Is it _____ *leg* _____ al to park on this side of the street?
3. Though the _____ *micro* _____ scopes we used in the laboratory were obviously old, they were powerful and easy to focus.
4. I have heard of manicures, but what are _____ *ped* _____ icures?
5. Wow! That's the most _____ *poten* _____ t cup of coffee I've ever drunk. I'll be awake all night!

Challenging Words

Matching Challenging Words and Definitions

Write each word before its definition.

A

cogent sordid usurp eclectic rationalize acquiesce

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <u>rationalize</u> | 1. to explain away, to justify |
| <u>sordid</u> | 2. shameful, disgraceful |
| <u>eclectic</u> | 3. various, from many sources |
| <u>acquiesce</u> | 4. to agree to, to submit to |
| <u>cogent</u> | 5. persuasive, convincing |
| <u>usurp</u> | 6. to overthrow, to seize control of |

B

podiatry proscribe archetype convene potency microbiology

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| <u>proscribe</u> | 1. to prohibit, to ban, to outlaw |
| <u>potency</u> | 2. strength, powerfulness |
| <u>archetype</u> | 3. original model after which other things are patterned |
| <u>microbiology</u> | 4. the study of extremely small organisms |
| <u>podiatry</u> | 5. study and treatment of foot ailments |
| <u>convene</u> | 6. to meet, to assemble, to come together |

C

inundate perfunctory ephemeral catharsis guile affinity

- guile 1. deceit
ephemeral 2. temporary, fleeting, lasting for just a short time
affinity 3. natural liking for or ability to do, a strong attraction to
inundate 4. to overflow, to flood, to overwhelm
catharsis 5. a cleansing, a release of pent-up emotions
perfunctory 6. done in an unenthusiastic, superficial, or routine manner

D

dichotomy banal dearth lethargy affluence enigma

- affluence 1. wealth, prosperity, riches
dearth 2. scarcity, insufficiency
enigma 3. mystery, puzzle
banal 4. run of the mill, lacking originality, boring, stale
lethargy 5. sluggishness, lack of energy
dichotomy 6. division into two parts, split

E

debacle deprivation garrulous meticulous nebulous specious

- meticulous 1. precise, extremely particular, thorough
debacle 2. complete failure
nebulous 3. hazy, vague, murky
garrulous 4. talkative, gabby
specious 5. misleading, deceitful, false
deprivation 6. hardship, lack of the necessities of life

F

dystrophy ostracize hypothetical immutable impeccable gregarious

- immutable 1. changeless, constant
dystrophy 2. wasting away of muscles
impeccable 3. spotless, flawless
hypothetical 4. assumed, inferred, supposed
gregarious 5. sociable, friendly, companionable
ostracize 6. to exclude, to shut out

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the words listed below.

bereft	alienation	aberration	exacerbate
repudiates	deleterious	sophomoric	clamorous

A BLIP ON PRO FOOTBALL'S RADAR SCREEN

Professional football fans, from the mildly interested to the most loyal, enthusiastic, and clamorous ones, are justifiably awed by the extraordinary abilities of today's players. Unfortunately, though, it's no longer an aberration to read in the sports pages about some pro player being arrested for a serious offense, such as a DUI, possession of drugs, or a physical assault. Such criminal behavior has resulted in the alienation of many once-devoted pro football fans. Other fans have become disenchanted when a multimillionaire player on their favorite team repudiates a generous three-year contract offer, insisting instead that the contract be for six years, contain a no-cut clause, and be for gazillions of dollars. If the resentful team owners eventually cave in to such outrageous demands, the player will often exacerbate the smoldering situation by demanding he also be given a huge signing bonus.

There are also too many professional football players who are bereft of good old-fashioned sportsmanship and humility. Some players dance and sashay in the end zone after scoring a touchdown, while others jump wildly up and down while pounding their chest after making a tackle. Deleterious behaviors like the preceding demonstrate a lack of respect for both their opponents and the game itself. These classless players act as if they had just won World War II all by themselves. Their attention-seeking and childish behavior is a major turn-off to many longtime fans of the game.

Yes, every season professional football teams draw thousands of fans to their stadiums, and millions more watch the games on television. Yet for some fans, the integrity of pro football is undermined by the sometimes criminal and often sophomoric behavior of too many of its players.

- c 4. **ostensibly : insincerity ::** a. honesty : insensitivity
b. importantly : surprisingly
c. supposedly : phoniness
d. impressively : insecurity
- a 5. **fetish: fixation ::** a. fixation : compulsion
b. compulsion : talent
c. talent : justice
d. justice : dishonorable
- c 6. **portage: transport ::** a. establish : estimate
b. formal : irregular
c. essential : necessary
d. defend : carry

Mastering Confusing Words

Circle the correct answer.

1. I wasn't (conscience / conscious) of the fact that Amanda had finished her degree requirements last semester.
2. Do you think a green sofa would (complement / compliment) or clash with the room's other colors?
3. We've had so much dreary (weather / weather) this month that I can't remember the last time the sun (shone / shown).
4. It was wonderful to (breath / breathe) fresh air again after being cooped up in the lab all afternoon.
5. I would like to (complement / compliment) Jaden for the (coarse / course) of action he recommended because I think it will settle our problem once and for all.
6. We were both out of (breath / breathe) after running to catch the bus before it left, but we made it in time.
7. There was a large (hole / whole) in the heel of one of the socks, so I threw the (hole / whole) pair away.
8. Do you know (weather / whether) Aleah has to work this evening?

Crossword Puzzle

Solve the crossword by using the following words.

genocide felicitous abeyance photosynthesis clandestine
 acronym collateral circumspect parochial retraction legacy
 sagacious fetish trepidation soliloquy demagogue proscribe

	1	a	c	r	o	n	y	m			2	p	a	r	o	c	h	i	a	l			
		b																					
3	f	e	t	i	s	h																	
		y																					
		a				4	c												5	s			
		n				i					6	s	a	7	g	a	c	i	o	u	s		
		c				r								e					l			8	t
9	r	e	t	r	a	c	t	i	o	n				n					i				r
						u								o					l				e
						m								c					o				p
10	p	h	o	t	o	s	y	n	t	h	e	s	i	s					q				i
						p								d					u				d
						11	d	e	m	a	g	o	g	u	e				y				a
						c																	t
12	c	o	l	l	a	t	e	r	a	l				13	l	e	g	a	c	y			i
																							o
14	c	l	a	n	d	e	s	t	i	n	e												n
15	f	e	l	i	c	i	t	o	u	s													
														16	p	r	o	s	c	r	i	b	e

ACROSS

- formed from the first letters in a series of words
- limited or narrow in viewpoint
- extreme attraction, obsessive fixation
- wise
- a taking back
- process by which plants make food for themselves
- person who seeks power by appealing to people's fears
- security pledged in return for a loan
- inheritance
- done in secret
- fortunate, timely, appropriate
- to prohibit

DOWN

- temporary suspension
- cautious
- speech to oneself
- extermination of a whole group of people
- fear, dread

This page intentionally left blank

Part **TWO** Academic Terms

Part Two of *Building Vocabulary for College* enables you to become familiar with many of the academic terms associated with subjects you probably will be required to study in college, such as history, as well as those you may elect to take, such as computer science. Learning the definitions of these terms is unquestionably an asset as they often hold the key to understanding the fundamental concepts presented in college courses.

The academic terms and definitions featured in the twelve chapters of Part Two are similar to those you would find in the glossaries of textbooks. The prefixes, suffixes, and roots you studied in Part One have been underlined so you can use your knowledge about them to deepen your understanding of the academic terms.

STUDYING THE ACADEMIC TERMS

- Take advantage of pictures and other visual aids that may be available to acquaint you with some of the academic terms.
- As you were directed to do with the challenging words in Part One, familiarize yourself with each academic term's pronunciation, part of speech, and definition, noting (1) the word is spelled phonetically so you will know how it is pronounced; (2) a space separates each syllable, with the accented syllable printed in capital letters; (3) whether the term contains an underlined word part you have studied; (4) vowels with long sounds have a line over them; (5) the schwa sound—*uh*—is represented by ə, which resembles a reversed, upside-down *e*; and (6) the term's part of speech.

Examples: connotation (kən ə TĀ shən)—noun
mutation (mū TĀ shən)—noun

Note: The pronunciation given for each term in Part Two is a common one, but there may be other acceptable pronunciations.

- Read the sample sentence that follows the term's definition to deepen your understanding of the term.

DOING THE EXERCISES

- Follow the directions for completing the chapter's four sets of exercises.
- Complete the **Featured Word** and **Mastering Confusing Words** lessons.
- Be prepared for review tests after completing chapters 18–23 and chapters 24–29.

Learning Literature and Composition Terms from Context Clues: Set 1

Literature and composition embrace all human experiences—common, unique, sad, joyful, expected, unexpected, disenchanting, and inspirational. These subjects can provide excellent opportunities to gain valuable insights into life. The following terms are commonly used in both literature and composition, so knowledge of them will be beneficial to you.

1. bibliography (bib lē OG rə fē)—noun

A list of books and other readings on a particular subject.

A research paper's *bibliography* must list all the sources used for information.

2. connotation (kon ə TĀ shən)—noun

A word's suggested meanings or emotional associations, as contrasted to its strict, exact meaning.

The denotation of *home* is “residence,” but the *connotation* of *home* suggests feelings of love and security.

3. denotation (dē nō TĀ shən)—noun

The strict, exact meaning of a word.

The *denotation* of *father* is “male parent.”

4. figures of speech (FIG yərs uv SPĒCH)—noun

Expressions in which the words are not meant in their literal sense but are intended to be interpreted in an imaginative way.

To present information in an original and colorful manner, writers often use *figures of speech*, such as metaphors, personification, and similes (see below).

5. genre (ZHAN rə)—noun

A category or type of literature, such as novel, autobiography, or short story.

Biography, an account of a person's life, is the most popular *genre* of literature for many readers.

6. literal (LIT ə r ə l)—adjective

Refers to the strict meaning of a word or phrase.

The *literal* meaning of *mother* is “female parent.”

7. metaphor (MET ə fər)—noun

A figure of speech in which two unlike things are compared or one thing is said to be another thing; the word *like* or *as* is not used in the comparison. (See *simile* below.)

“On Saturday evenings, Whitney’s car was a panther that slinked down Main Street, daring anyone or anything to challenge it” is an example of a *metaphor*.

8. personification (pər sən ə fa KĀ shən)—noun

A figure of speech in which a thing is given human qualities or performs human actions.

“The tulips danced and smiled when the old gardener came their way” is an example of *personification*.

9. prose (PRŌZ)—noun

The ordinary form of language; that is, writing or speech that is not poetry.

Novels and short stories are almost always written in *prose*.

10. simile (SIM ə lē)—noun

A figure of speech in which two unlike things are compared by using the word *like* or *as*.

“The frisky puppy is like an unguided missile” is an example of a *simile*.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 1

Match each definition with the term it defines.

<u> e </u>	1. prose	a. imaginative expressions
<u> i </u>	2. genre	b. adjective referring to the exact meaning of a word or phrase
<u> g </u>	3. bibliography	c. noun referring to the actual meaning
<u> c </u>	4. denotation	d. giving a thing human qualities
<u> f </u>	5. connotation	e. writing that is not poetry
<u> b </u>	6. literal	f. suggested meaning of a word
<u> a </u>	7. figures of speech	g. list of readings or references
<u> h </u>	8. simile	h. comparison using <i>like</i> or <i>as</i>
<u> j </u>	9. metaphor	i. form of literature
<u> d </u>	10. personification	j. comparison not using <i>like</i> or <i>as</i>

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 1

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

bibliography	figures of speech	metaphor	simile
connotation	genre	personification	
denotation	literal	prose	

1. “Grover’s motorboat is like a rocket” is a simile.
2. “Diego was a perfectly tuned machine; he ran relentlessly mile after mile” is a metaphor.
3. Personification, metaphors, and similes are figures of speech.
4. Most magazines are written in prose.
5. At the end of your term paper, include a bibliography containing all the references you have used.
6. The connotation of the word *football* includes fall afternoons, marching bands, and roaring crowds.
7. The denotation of the word *football* includes a game with eleven players on each team.
8. Poetry is another genre of literature.
9. “The tree stuck out its leg and tripped me” is personification.
10. The literal meaning of *morning* is the time between 12:00 A.M. and 12:00 P.M.

Related Meanings: Set 1

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| 1. prose | <u>No</u> rhyming words |
| 2. genre | <u>No</u> family history |
| 3. bibliography | <u>Yes</u> list of readings |
| 4. denotation | <u>Yes</u> word’s actual meaning |
| 5. connotation | <u>No</u> word’s opposite meaning |
| 6. literal | <u>No</u> reading ability |
| 7. figures of speech | <u>Yes</u> fanciful expressions |
| 8. simile | <u>No</u> comparison without <i>like</i> or <i>as</i> |
| 9. metaphor | <u>No</u> comparison with <i>like</i> or <i>as</i> |
| 10. personification | <u>No</u> sociable |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 1

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in literature and composition. Answers will vary.

1. **bibliography** _____

2. **connotation** _____

3. **denotation** _____

4. **figures of speech** _____

5. **genre** _____

6. **literal** _____

7. **metaphor** _____

8. **personification** _____

9. **prose** _____

10. **simile** _____

Learning Literature and Composition Terms from Context Clues: Set 2

1. **alliteration** (ə lit ə RĀ shən)—noun

The repetition of the first sound, usually a consonant, in a series of words.
“Francis is fair, frank, friendly, and famous” is an example of *alliteration*.

2. **hyperbole** (hī PUR bə lē)—noun

A figure of speech in which exaggerated words are used for emphasis.
“The closet in my room is so small that an ant wouldn’t have enough room to turn around” is an example of *hyperbole*.

3. **plagiarism** (PLĀ jə riz əm)—noun

The copying of words or ideas of another writer and then presenting them as one’s original work.
You must give credit to the author of the words you are using; otherwise, you will be guilty of *plagiarism*.

4. **satire** (SAT īr)—noun

The use of sarcastic humor to expose injustice or stupidity.
The sports columnist’s *satire* was obvious when she wrote that the owner of the basketball team should feel guilty for not buying his star player a luxurious house because the player was making “only” 27 million dollars a year.

5. **analogy** (ə NAL ə jē)—noun

A comparison in which similarities are found between two unlike things.
An *analogy* is often expressed as a simile, as in “The football game was like a battle between gladiators.”

6. **antagonist** (an TAG ə nist)—noun; **protagonist** (prō TAG ə nist)—noun

The antagonist is the character in a story who opposes the hero or heroine, known as the protagonist.
In John Updike’s “The Christian Roommates,” Lester Spotted Elk was the *antagonist* of Orson, the *protagonist*, when Orson was in high school.

7. **canon** (KAN ən)—noun

The works of an author that are considered authentic.
Romeo and Juliet is just one of over thirty plays included in William Shakespeare’s *canon*.

8. flashback (FLASH bak)—noun

An interruption in the flow of a story, play, or film to present action that occurred earlier.

A *flashback* in the movie showed the old man as a college student.

9. foreshadowing (fōr SHAD ō ing)—noun

A hint in the story or drama of some coming event, often a tragic one.

The king’s nightmare was a *foreshadowing* of the tragic battle that would result in his death the next day.

10. synopsis (si NOP sis)—noun

A summary of the main points of a story or other literary work.

Our assignment was to write a *synopsis* of Katherine Mansfield’s short story “The Garden Party.”

11. anthology (an THOL ə jē)—noun

A book or collection of selected writings.

Our literature class is using an *anthology* containing short stories, poems, and plays.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 2

Match each definition with the term it defines.

- | | | |
|----------|------------------|---|
| <u>h</u> | 1. hyperbole | a. hero or leading character in a story |
| <u>e</u> | 2. alliteration | b. authentic works of an author |
| <u>i</u> | 3. antagonist | c. hint in the story of a coming event |
| <u>k</u> | 4. flashback | d. representing the words or ideas of another author as one’s own |
| <u>g</u> | 5. synopsis | e. a string of words with the same initial sound |
| <u>a</u> | 6. protagonist | f. sarcastic humor |
| <u>c</u> | 7. foreshadowing | g. summary |
| <u>l</u> | 8. anthology | h. exaggeration for the sake of effect |
| <u>j</u> | 9. analogy | i. person who opposes the hero |
| <u>b</u> | 10. canon | j. comparison of unlike things |
| <u>f</u> | 11. satire | k. interruption in a story to present a previous scene |
| <u>d</u> | 12. plagiarism | l. collection of selected writings |

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 2

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

alliteration	satire	protagonist	foreshadowing
hyperbole	analogy	canon	synopsis
plagiarism	antagonist	flashback	anthology

1. The protagonist in this story is a young woman who eventually triumphs over her chief antagonist, an evil man who seeks revenge against her and her family.
2. I'm writing a(n) synopsis of Robert Frost's poem "The Death of the Hired Man," which is contained in the anthology of poems, essays, plays, and short stories we're using in our American literature class.
3. As the ship slowly sinks to the bottom of the ocean, there is a(n) flashback of the captain as a young man eagerly enlisting in the Navy.
4. The author uses a comical analogy, comparing the young girl's mind to a glass of fizzy root beer.
5. There is no question Shakespeare wrote *King Lear*, so that is why it is included in the Shakespearean canon.
6. "Bruce brutally batted ball after ball" is an example of alliteration.
7. "I drove a million miles during my week's vacation" is obviously hyperbole.
8. Max didn't want to be guilty of plagiarism, so he put quotation marks around the words and cited the author's name in his bibliography.
9. In his letter to the editor, Rex used bitter humor, or satire, to voice his criticisms about the school's new parking regulations.
10. The wilted rose in the bride's wedding bouquet provided a(n) foreshadowing that the couple's love would not endure.

Related Meanings: Set 2

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | | |
|-----------------|------------|---|
| 1. plagiarism | <u>No</u> | summarizing a play |
| 2. alliteration | <u>Yes</u> | series of words with the same first sound |
| 3. satire | <u>No</u> | concluding remarks |
| 4. hyperbole | <u>Yes</u> | overstatement |
| 5. flashback | <u>Yes</u> | return to a previous time |
| 6. synopsis | <u>No</u> | comparison of unlike things |
| 7. antagonist | <u>Yes</u> | opponent |
| 8. analogy | <u>No</u> | a summary |

- | | | |
|-------------------|------------|--|
| 9. anthology | <u>No</u> | study of myths and primitive religions |
| 10. canon | <u>Yes</u> | genuine books of an author |
| 11. protagonist | <u>Yes</u> | hero |
| 12. foreshadowing | <u>Yes</u> | indication of a coming event |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 2

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in literature and composition. Answers will vary.

1. alliteration _____

2. hyperbole _____

3. plagiarism _____

4. satire _____

5. analogy _____

6. antagonist _____

7. protagonist _____

8. canon _____

9. flashback _____

10. foreshadowing _____

11. synopsis _____

12. anthology _____

Completing a Passage: Literature and Composition

A

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the terms listed below.

denotation	simile	genres	personification	bibliography
metaphor	prose	literal	connotation	figures of speech

LITERARY TERMS

Figures of speech play a prominent role in both prose and poetry. For example, the simile “Tyrone was like a tornado on the basketball floor,” the metaphor “Tyrone was a tornado on the basketball floor,” and the personification “The tornado spread its arms to embrace three entire counties before it breathed its last” could appear not only in poetry but also in such varied genres as biography and science fiction.

To test the validity of the preceding assertion, make a random bibliography of a variety of books and poems, and then scan through them to see if you can identify examples of how figures of speech enrich and empower the writing. Chances are that you will find many examples.

Denotation and connotation are also important contributors to writing. Denotation refers to the literal or dictionary meaning of a word (*bomb*—an explosive weapon), whereas connotation refers to the associated or suggested meaning of a word (*bomb*—a miserable failure).

To illustrate to yourself how words have both denotative and connotative meanings, write down the dictionary meaning of *rat*, and then list what meanings you associate with this word.

B

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the terms listed below.

protagonist	alliteration	antagonist	canon	synopsis	analogy
anthology	flashbacks	foreshadowing	hyperbole	satire	plagiarism

SUE GRAFTON’S MYSTERY NOVELS

For thousands of mystery fans, the canon of “must read” mystery novels is incomplete unless it includes the extensive anthology of Sue Grafton’s books. The titles of her numerous novels are almost in alliteration, as the first is entitled *A Is for Alibi*, the second *B Is for Burglary*, the third *C Is for Corpse*, and so on through over half of the alphabet—and she’s still writing. The protagonist in all of Grafton’s

novels is a young woman private investigator, Kinsey Millhone; however, the antagonist in each book can vary from a vicious young man to a sweet old lady.

Grafton's novels are unquestionably unique, so she certainly can't be accused of plagiarism. Her books feature passion, humor, suspense, danger, and sarcastic satire to describe the people and situations with which Kinsey becomes entangled. Grafton also uses flashbacks to give readers a glimpse into a character's past as well as foreshadowing to drop hints of what may happen in the future. It is certainly hyperbole to say that writing a synopsis of a Grafton mystery novel is as easy as writing one about the performance of a well-crafted car, because such an analogy does not take into account the unpredictable twists, turns, and surprises a Grafton book always contains.

FEATURED WORD: hyperbole

Hyperbole—a figure of speech in which exaggeration is used for emphasis or effect:

- In the first fifteen minutes after she bought her first cell phone, my daughter called everyone she knew and 300 people she didn't.

Origin: 1529 <Latin—*hyperbole* <Greek—*hyperballein* (to throw over or beyond), from *hyper* (beyond) and *bol* (stem of *ballein*, meaning to throw)

Family words: hyperbolic (adj), hyperbolical (adj), hyperbolically (adv), hyperbolize (v)

Image to remember: Someone telling a story in an exaggerated and dramatic way

Write an original sentence using *hyperbole*:

loose not tight, unfastened:

My seven-year-old brother has some loose teeth.

One of the bolts on the swing set was loose, so I tightened it.

lose to suffer defeat or to misplace:

After leading the entire game, I didn't think the Bulldogs would lose, but they did.

Valerie, did you lose your Spanish book?

Circle the correct answer:

1. I thought the Mustangs would loose / lose the game after their star player fouled out, but they hung on and won by three points.
2. One of the hinges on the back door is loose / lose.
3. Don't loose / lose the car keys again, young man.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **loose:** _____

2. **lose:** _____

Learning Oral Communication Terms from Context Clues: Set 1

Because communicating with family, friends, associates, and countless others plays such a key role in our lives, college students, regardless of their majors, are usually required to take at least one course in oral communications (speech) to enhance their ability to interact formally and informally with others, whether in a one-to-one, small-group, or large-group situation. The terms presented in this and the following lesson are among those frequently used in introductory oral communication courses. In addition, a review of the **literature** and **composition** terms preceding these lessons is advisable as many of these words are also used in oral communication courses.

1. **venue** (VEN yoo)—noun

The place where communication, such as a speech, takes place.

Often, *venue* refers not only to the place where communication takes place, but also to the specific occasion and purpose of the communication.

2. **context** (KON tekst)—noun

The environment in which communication takes place.

Context includes the physical, social, and psychological conditions existing when communication takes place.

3. **encoding** (en KÖHD ing)—noun

The transformation of a thought into a message.

Encoding includes all the mental processes involved in converting ideas, feelings, opinions, and so forth into messages.

4. **decoding** (dē KÖHD ing)—noun

The transformation of a message into meaning.

Decoding includes all the mental processes involved in converting messages into meaning.

5. **catalyst** (KAT ə list)—noun

Anything that improves communication.

Humor can often serve as a *catalyst* for enriching communication.

6. noise (noiz)—noun

Anything that hinders communication.

Preoccupation with factors unrelated to the speaker’s remarks is an example of communication *noise*.

7. speaking (SPEEK ing) **voice** (vois)—adjective + noun

Refers to the basic factors relating to speech.

The basic factors relating to *speaking voice* include **volume** (loudness, softness), **pitch** (highness, lowness), **inflections** (variations of pitch), **tempo** (speaking rate), **tone** (attitude toward a subject, such as humorous or serious), **diction** (choice and use of words), and **pronunciation**.

8. active (AK tiv) and **passive** (PAS iv) **voice** (vois)—adjectives + noun

A verb is in the active voice when the subject of the sentence does the action the verb describes:

Karen washed the car.

A verb is in the passive voice when it acts upon the subject:

The car was washed by Karen.

Generally, it is best to use the *active voice* for both writing and speaking because it produces more direct, powerful, and interesting communication than the *passive voice* does.

9. enunciation (i NUN sē Ā shən)—noun

Refers to the correct and precise pronunciation of words.

In casual conversations, it’s usually okay for us to mispronounce or slur certain words, such as saying “accidently” instead of “accidentally” and “wif” instead of “with,” but in more formal speaking situations, we should make sure our *enunciation* of all words is appropriate.

10. impromptu speaking (im PROMP too SPEEK ing)—adjective + noun

Speaking done with little or no advance preparation.

Though always a challenge, *impromptu speaking* can be effective and rewarding if the speaker focuses upon one or two main ideas and then provides specific examples for clarification or support.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 1

Match each definition with the term it defines.

- | | | |
|------------------|------------------------|--|
| <u> f </u> | 1. venue | a. transformation of a message into meaning |
| <u> c </u> | 2. context | b. when the subject of the sentence does the action the verb describes |
| <u> i </u> | 3. encoding | c. the environment in which communication takes place |
| <u> a </u> | 4. decoding | d. anything that hinders communication |
| <u> h </u> | 5. catalyst | e. speaking done with little or no advance preparation |
| <u> d </u> | 6. noise | f. the place where communication takes place |
| <u> j </u> | 7. speaking voice | g. the correct and precise pronunciation of words |
| <u> b </u> | 8. active voice | h. anything that improves communication |
| <u> k </u> | 9. passive voice | i. transformation of a thought into a message |
| <u> g </u> | 10. enunciation | j. refers to the basic factors relating to speech |
| <u> e </u> | 11. impromptu speaking | k. when the verb acts upon the subject |

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 1

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

venue encoding catalyst speaking voice passive impromptu
context decoding noise active enunciation

1. “The meal was cooked by Jeff” is in the passive voice, whereas “Jeff cooked the meal” is in the active voice.
2. My instructor gave me three minutes to prepare for a(n) impromptu speech on my favorite movie.
3. My emotions and thoughts whirled around before encoding took place; then I was able to explain why *Sleepless in Seattle* was my favorite movie.
4. The venue for Dr. Wallace’s speech will be the convention room on the first floor of the Dickson Inn on Essex Street.
5. Good acoustics is a(n) catalyst contributing to effective communication.
6. His enunciation of some words was faulty as he said “incidentally” instead of “incidentally” and “chocolate” instead of “chocolate.”
7. Today’s class was devoted to speaking voice, so we discussed such matters as volume, tone, and tempo when we gave a speech.
8. The decoding of a complex message can be aided by listing the main ideas it contains and then writing a summary of the ideas in your own words.

9. The context, or environment, in which a speech takes place includes a number of physical, social, and psychological factors, such as the size of the room, the room's temperature, and the ages, backgrounds, and attitudes of the listeners.
10. In oral communications, the term noise doesn't refer only to loud, disturbing sounds; it refers to anything hampering the effective interchange of information.

Related Meanings: Set 1

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write *Yes* in the space; if they are unrelated, write *No*.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|------------|---|
| 1. catalyst | <u>Yes</u> | something that aids communication |
| 2. context | <u>No</u> | interpretation of a message |
| 3. speaking voice | <u>No</u> | oral commands |
| 4. impromptu speaking | <u>Yes</u> | talking on the spur of the moment |
| 5. active and passive voices | <u>No</u> | the loudness and softness of sound |
| 6. decoding | <u>Yes</u> | conversion of messages into meaning |
| 7. venue | <u>Yes</u> | location where a speech is given |
| 8. noise | <u>No</u> | sound effects used to aid communication |
| 9. enunciation | <u>No</u> | feedback provided by an audience |
| 10. encoding | <u>Yes</u> | conversion of thoughts into messages |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 1

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in oral communications. *Answers will vary.*

1. **venue** _____

2. **context** _____

3. **encoding** _____

4. **decoding** _____

5. **catalyst** _____

6. noise _____

7. speaking voice _____

8. active voice _____

9. passive voice _____

10. enunciation _____

11. impromptu speaking _____

Learning Oral Communication Terms from Context Clues: Set 2

1. **transitions** (tran ZISH əns)—noun

Words and phrases a speaker uses to move from one major point to another.

Examples of *transitions* often used by speakers include these: **to add information**—and, also, in addition, furthermore, moreover, besides; **to compare**—similarly, likewise, by the same token, in the same vein; **to contrast**—but, on the other hand, yet, however, although, in contrast, on the contrary, nevertheless; **to relate time**—then, when, afterward, meanwhile, during, thereafter; **to clarify**—for example, for instance, specifically; **to emphasize**—more important, to be sure, indeed, as long as, provided that, unless; **to show cause and effect**—as a result, because, therefore, thus, then, since, hence; **to summarize**—therefore, in summary, consequently, as a result.

2. **kinesics** (kə NĒS ɪks)—noun

Refers to body movements or body language.

Communication is influenced by *kinesics*, or body movements, which include gestures, posture, facial expressions, and eye behavior.

3. rapport (ra POR)—noun

A harmonious or sympathetic connection between a speaker and his or her audience.

To communicate effectively, speakers must establish *rapport* with their audience; humor is often used for this purpose.

4. premise (PREM is)—noun

An assertion made by a speaker that serves as a basis for an argument or for a conclusion.

The speaker's *premise* was that students should not have to pay to attend any athletic or musical events on campus because they already pay an activity fee each semester.

5. fallacies (FAL ə sēs)—noun

Mistakes in reasoning.

Among the common *fallacies* speakers sometimes commit are these: **Hasty Generalization**—basing a conclusion on too little evidence; for example, saying “Connecticut drivers are reckless” based on seeing only two Connecticut motorists driving in this manner. **Either–Or**—stating there are only two alternatives when there are more than that; for example, saying “To avoid a vitamin C deficiency, a person must drink either orange or grape juice every day” when in truth there are numerous other sources of vitamin C. **Ad Hominem**—attacking the person personally rather than the person's argument; for example, saying “Lawrence argues he's the best candidate for the school board, but I know for a fact he wasn't popular in high school, and besides, he's divorced.” **Prestige Jargon**—using impressive language in an attempt to gain importance or acceptance of an argument; for example, saying “A student should faithfully attend his or her classes as there is a plethora of research connoting a positive correlation between a student's class attendance and his or her overall scholastic performance,” instead of simply saying, “Students should attend their classes because good attendance is related to good grades.”

6. nonsexist language (NON SEKS ist LANG gwij)—adjective + noun

Communication reflecting gender fairness.

To avoid stereotyping, insensitivity, and unfairness, speakers should use *nonsexist language*. For example, speakers should say police officers, **not** policemen or policewomen; mail carriers, **not** mailmen or mailwomen; sales representatives, **not** salesmen or salesladies; humankind, **not** mankind.

7. **objective** (əb JEK tiv)—adjective
subjective (səb JEK tiv)—adjective

When speakers are objective, personal feelings or biases do not influence their remarks; however, when speakers are subjective, their personal feelings or biases do influence their remarks.

It is appropriate for speakers to be *objective* when they state the facts involved in an experience, event, or outcome; on the other hand, it is appropriate for speakers to be *subjective* when they remark about their reactions regarding the experience, event, or outcome.

8. **critique** (kri TEEK)—noun

A careful, in-depth review of something, such as a movie, book, piece of artwork, organization, or product.

The speaker gave a *critique* of the student support programs currently existing on campus. For the most part, she was complimentary of the programs and the people responsible for them; however, she felt the financial aid office was significantly understaffed.

9. **deduction** (dē DUK shən)—noun
induction (in DUK shən)—noun

Deduction is reasoning that starts with an accepted principle and leads to specific instances that support the accepted principle.

Induction is the drawing of a conclusion after gathering appropriate information.

A speaker can often use *deduction* and/or *induction* to justify his or her opinions, assumptions, conclusions, and suggestions, as in these examples: **Deduction**—At the study skills seminar, the speaker urged us to devote the majority of our studying time on the information our instructors emphasize in class; he said numerous studies conducted over the years indicate that most college students who follow this principle achieve high grades. **Induction**—The speaker also said the data he has collected during the past eight semesters reveal that students who study at the same time and at the same place usually achieve higher grades than students who study at various times and at various places; therefore, he has concluded that studying at a specific time and at a specific place is another principle college students would be wise to follow.

10. **multimedia presentation** (MUL ti MĒ dē ə PREZ ən TĀY shən)—adjective + noun

A talk or similar event that uses several forms of communication, such as slides, videos, and films.

The speaker's *multimedia presentation* was impressive as she used a computer to display various charts, photographs, and video clips on a large screen.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 2

Match each definition with the term it defines.

- | | | |
|----------|-----------------------------|---|
| <u>h</u> | 1. transitions | a. mistakes in reasoning |
| <u>j</u> | 2. kinesics | b. a talk that uses a variety of sources, such as graphs and slides |
| <u>g</u> | 3. rapport | c. communication reflecting gender fairness |
| <u>i</u> | 4. premise | d. reasoning that draws a conclusion after making observations |
| <u>a</u> | 5. fallacies | e. reflecting personal feelings or biases |
| <u>c</u> | 6. nonsexist language | f. reasoning that begins with an accepted principle |
| <u>k</u> | 7. objective | g. harmonious connection between speaker and audience |
| <u>e</u> | 8. subjective | h. connections between words and phrases |
| <u>l</u> | 9. critique | i. assertion that serves as a basis for an argument |
| <u>f</u> | 10. deduction | j. body movements |
| <u>d</u> | 11. induction | k. lacking personal feelings or biases |
| <u>b</u> | 12. multimedia presentation | l. in-depth review of a product, organization, or event |

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 2

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

transitions kinesics rapport premise fallacies nonsexist language
objective subjective critique deduction induction multimedia

1. Our instructor's use of kinesics, especially his gestures and facial expressions, effectively convey his sense of humor as well as the main points he wishes to stress during class discussions.
2. The speaker's basic assumption was that all college students enjoy team sports, and since we were college students, we all enjoyed team sports; however, his premise was faulty from the beginning because a number of my friends and I don't care about team sports at all.
3. The speaker also used induction as he said he had observed over the years that students gain an average of ten pounds during their first year of college, so he has concluded that we will too; but I sure hope he's wrong, at least in my case.
4. I appreciate Professor Libby's use of transitions, such as "for example" or "for instance," when she explains difficult concepts.

5. She has excellent rapport with us as she calls on us by name and obviously appreciates what we have to say.
6. Although jury members may not like the looks of the defendant, they should remain objective and base their verdict on the evidence presented during the trial.
7. Today's history class was particularly interesting because of Dr. Hewitt's multimedia presentation, which included newspaper articles, photos, and film clips about World War II.
8. "Flight attendant" instead of "stewardess" is an example of nonsexist language.
9. Attacking a person personally instead of his or her argument and making a hasty generalization are examples of fallacies.
10. Although Todd and Bridget's love for that part of the city obviously influenced their decision about which apartment to rent, I think it was okay for them to be subjective in this instance, don't you agree?
11. My deduction is that it's important to feel "at home" where you live, even if where you live causes some minor inconveniences.
12. In communications class today, Jarrett gave an impressive critique of last weekend's rock concert. Although he praised the band's musicianship and choice of numbers, he said the lead singer overpowered the other singers and that the band's sound system was inadequate, at least for Hudson Hall, the place where the concert was held.

Related Meanings: Set 2

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | | |
|----------------------------|------------|---|
| 1. subjective | <u>No</u> | insulting |
| 2. rapport | <u>Yes</u> | harmony |
| 3. fallacies | <u>No</u> | jokes |
| 4. transitions | <u>Yes</u> | connecting words |
| 5. objective | <u>No</u> | agreeable |
| 6. multimedia presentation | <u>Yes</u> | talk using various audio and visual aids |
| 7. induction | <u>Yes</u> | drawing a conclusion after gathering evidence |
| 8. premise | <u>No</u> | obligation |
| 9. nonsexist language | <u>No</u> | stereotyping talk |
| 10. critique | <u>Yes</u> | careful evaluation |
| 11. deduction | <u>No</u> | brief speech |
| 12. kinesics | <u>Yes</u> | body language |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 2

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in oral communications. Answers will vary.

1. transitions _____

2. kinesics _____

3. rapport _____

4. premise _____

5. fallacies _____

6. nonsexist language _____

7. objective _____

8. subjective _____

9. critique _____

10. deduction _____

11. induction _____

12. multimedia presentation _____

Completing a Passage: Oral Communications

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the terms listed below.

enunciation rapport active venue multimedia
impromptu catalyst passive premise

SPEECH GUIDELINES

If you are scheduled to speak formally rather than in a(n) impromptu manner, one of the first things you need to consider, after deciding on a topic appropriate for your audience, is the venue. If, for example, you will be speaking in a fairly small room before twenty to thirty people, then you might decide that a(n) multimedia presentation, such as PowerPoint and video clips, would enrich your speech.

Another initial consideration is whether the purpose of your speech is to inform, entertain, persuade, inspire, or motivate. When your purpose is to persuade, it is particularly important that your major assertion or premise is clear and supported as specifically as possible, such as with facts and examples.

Keep in mind your audience: Will they be people who are familiar or unfamiliar with your topic? What will be the age range of most of them? Would humor serve as an effective catalyst to establish rapport with them, or should you adopt some other approach?

Research the topic of your speech to make sure your information is up-to-date, although you certainly can use a personal story or two, especially if it helps to make abstract or confusing information clearer. Whenever possible, speak in the active rather than in the passive voice, as it is more direct, powerful, and interesting. And be sure your enunciation is precise and your voice loud enough so everyone can hear; you may want to consider using a microphone.

Finally, it's generally best to make sure your speech doesn't exceed twenty minutes, as even the best audiences can become restless or overloaded with information in that amount of time.

FEATURED WORD: rapport

Rapport—a relationship exhibiting mutual trust and emotional connection:

- Excellent rapport between the conductor and orchestra was evident throughout the concert.

Origin: <French—*rapporter*—bring back; *re* (again) and *apporter* (to bring) (the “harmonious connection” meaning dates from the mid-1800s)

Image to remember: people enjoying each other’s company

Write an original sentence using *rapport*:

MASTERING CONFUSING WORDS

threw / through

threw pas tense of *throw*:

Stan threw his tools in the back of his pickup and left for work.

through from one side to the other; also means completed:

Dora looked through her clothes to find something she thought would be appropriate to wear to the party.

When Ramon got through painting the porch, it was six o’clock, so he decided to call it a day.

Circle the correct answer:

1. Lance walked threw / through the computer lab looking for someone to help him.
2. I threw / through the trash into the waste basket.
3. Ashley wondered if she’d ever get threw / through writing her paper.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **threw:** _____
2. **through:** _____

Learning Psychology Terms from Context Clues: Set 1

Psychology is devoted to the systematic study of behavior as well as to the motives for that behavior. Psychology has been found to be an appropriate college major for not only students planning a career in this field, but also for students planning careers in law, business, social work, teaching, and other professions as well. Mastery of the psychological terms included in this chapter can contribute to your basic understanding of this intriguing subject.

1. control group (kən TRŌL GROOP)—adjective + noun

A group of subjects (people or other organisms) exposed to all the features of a particular experiment except for the variable being studied (see 3). The characteristics of the control group are always matched as closely as possible to those of the experimental group, and the control group is often “treated” with a *placebo* (see 4) instead of the actual variable.

2. experimental group (ik SPER ə MEN təl GROOP)—adjective + noun

A group of subjects exposed to the variable being investigated in an experiment. The researcher is attempting to discover the effects of the variable on the subjects. The people in the experimental and control groups are of the same age and state of health and follow the same diet and physical routine. However, those in the *experimental group* are receiving a daily vitamin D pill to see if this vitamin can help to reduce their bone loss as they age. Those in the *control group*, rather than receiving a vitamin D pill, are being given a *placebo* (see 4). The experimental and the control groups are unaware which of them is receiving the real variable and which one is receiving the fake one, that is, the placebo.

3. variable (VAR ē ə bəl)—noun

In an experiment, the condition or factor that can be changed or manipulated. (In 2, vitamin D was the *variable*.)

4. placebo (plə SĒ bō)—noun

An inactive substance used as a control in an experiment to determine the effectiveness of a medicinal drug or treatment; because a *placebo* has no medicinal value, it can serve as a valid comparison to the drug or treatment being tested. However, it can also produce psychological benefits because people sometimes feel better simply because they are taking what they believe is “medicine.”

The experimental group was given a daily vitamin D pill, whereas the control group was given a pill that looked like a vitamin D pill but was actually a *placebo* containing sugar.

5. empirical (em PIR ə kəl)—adjective

Relating to what has been precisely experienced or observed in experiments.

The *empirical* facts were recorded so that the experiment could be evaluated.

6. hypothesis (hī POTH ə sis)—noun

A logical explanation that needs further investigation before it can be said to be true.

The *hypothesis* that poliomyelitis was caused by a virus proved to be true when the virus was identified in the 1950s.

7. cognitive (KOG nə tiv)—adjective

Relating to knowing, understanding, and thinking.

A major stage in a child’s *cognitive* development is reached when he or she becomes capable of abstract reasoning.

8. intrinsic motivation (in TRIN sik mō tə VĀ shən)—adjective + noun

A reason or desire for action that comes from within the individual.

Carolyn wants to prove to herself that she can improve her grades, so her commitment to additional study time for every subject she’s taking is the result of *intrinsic motivation*.

9. extrinsic motivation (eks TRIN sik mō tə VĀ shən)—adjective + noun

A reason or desire for action that comes from outside the individual.

Maddox’s increased studying this semester results from *extrinsic motivation*, as his parents promised to give him \$1,000 if he improves all his grades.

10. introvert (IN trə VURT)—noun

A person concerned mainly with his or her own thoughts and feelings.

An *introvert* can become so obsessed with himself or herself that he or she has little social interaction with others.

11. extrovert (EK strə VURT)—noun

A person who has an outgoing, friendly personality.

Latoya is an *extrovert*, so she felt right at home mingling with all the guests.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 1

Match each definition with the term it defines.

<u> e </u>	1. variable	a. an inactive substance often used in experiments
<u> i </u>	2. introvert	b. logical explanation that will be tested for its validity
<u> j </u>	3. experimental	c. person with a friendly, outgoing personality
<u> d </u>	4. extrinsic	d. motivation coming from outside an individual
<u> f </u>	5. empirical	e. factor manipulated in an experiment
<u> c </u>	6. extrovert	f. evidence directly experienced or observed
<u> b </u>	7. hypothesis	g. motivation coming from within an individual
<u> g </u>	8. intrinsic	h. group exposed to all features of the experiment except for the variable
<u> k </u>	9. cognitive	i. person concerned mainly with his or her own feelings
<u> h </u>	10. control	j. group exposed to all features of the experiment, including the variable
<u> a </u>	11. placebo	k. term associated with intellectual abilities

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 1

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

introvert experimental extrovert empirical intrinsic control
placebo cognitive hypothesis extrinsic variable

- As people mature, their cognitive skills become more developed, so they are capable of solving more complex problems.
- Niacin was the variable used in the experiment to see if it would help to reduce high cholesterol readings. My folks were in the experimental group, so they received a daily niacin capsule; another couple I know were in the control group, so they were given a(n) placebo, which was simply a capsule with nothing in it.
- The empirical evidence gathered from the experiment indicated that niacin could help reduce cholesterol to some extent.
- Roger is a(n) extrovert, as he loves to be around people and talk about every subject imaginable.
- Intrinsic motivation is apparently responsible for Rory working out every other day in the weight room, as he said he hopes to make the varsity football team next season.

6. I'm surprised Rory is so motivated to be on the debate team; because I seldom see him around other people, I assumed he was a(n) introvert.
7. My hypothesis is that he has probably overcome much of his former shyness and lack of sociability because he's older and has made some friends.
8. Olivia is practicing the flute a couple of hours every day because of extrinsic motivation, as her grandparents promised her a Florida vacation in the spring if she did so.

Related Meanings: Set 1

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|------------|--|
| 1. extrinsic motivation | <u>No</u> | comes from within a person |
| 2. extrovert | <u>Yes</u> | life of the party |
| 3. variable | <u>No</u> | unrealistic expectations |
| 4. empirical | <u>Yes</u> | observed evidence in an experiment |
| 5. intrinsic motivation | <u>No</u> | due to threats of punishment |
| 6. experimental group | <u>Yes</u> | those in an experiment subjected to the variable |
| 7. introvert | <u>Yes</u> | one who is self-obsessed |
| 8. cognitive | <u>Yes</u> | intellectual capacities |
| 9. hypothesis | <u>No</u> | insightful, accurate |
| 10. control group | <u>Yes</u> | those in an experiment not subjected to the variable |
| 11. placebo | <u>No</u> | an experimental drug |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 1

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in psychology. Answers will vary.

1. **empirical** _____

2. **control group** _____

3. **extrinsic motivation** _____

4. **cognitive** _____

5. **extrovert** _____

6. **intrinsic motivation** _____

7. **experimental group** _____

8. **hypothesis** _____

9. **variable** _____

10. **introvert** _____

11. **placebo** _____

Learning Psychology Terms from Context Clues: Set 2

1. **ego** (Ē gō)—noun
2. **id** (ID)—noun
3. **superego** (SOO pər Ē gō)—noun

Ego, id, and superego are terms associated with Sigmund Freud (1856–1939), the founder of psychoanalysis. The **ego** is the conscious part of the personality and is responsible for logical thinking.

The **id** is the instinctive part of the personality, including the sexual and aggressive instincts, that seeks immediate gratification. Freud maintained that the id is the first system to develop within a person because it is most closely related to the biological realm. The id is the “home” of all psychological energy, or libido (Latin for “lust”).

The **superego** is the moralistic part of the personality, including beliefs about what conduct is right or wrong.

The **ego** has to resolve the conflicting demands of the *id*, *superego*, and external reality. The *id* is the pleasure-loving, selfish side of a person’s personality that seeks immediate gratification regardless of consequences. The *superego*, or conscience, is largely a product of parental and societal influences.

4. psychoanalysis (SĪ kō ə NAL ə sis)—noun

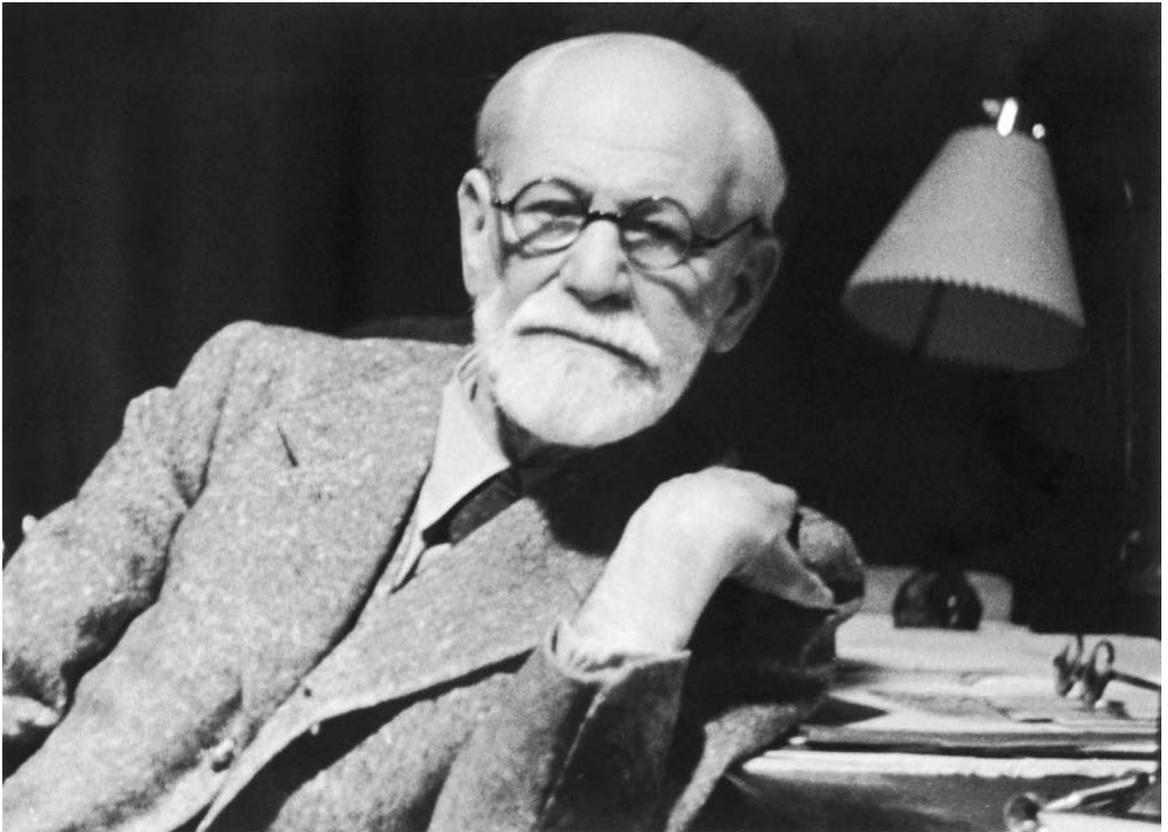
Method of treating emotional disorders through free association: having the patient talk freely about personal experiences, particularly those relating to childhood and dreams.

Sigmund Freud developed *psychoanalysis*, a method that encourages the patient to use free association, that is, to discuss anything that comes to mind, in the hope that hidden emotional conflicts will be uncovered.

5. defense mechanisms (də FENS MEK ə NIZ əms)—adjective + noun

Unconscious strategies used to protect ourselves against unpleasant emotions or to maintain our self-images.

Repression (selective forgetting) and rationalization (excuse making) are common *defense mechanisms*.



Sigmund Freud introduced the practice of *psychoanalysis* to help patients understand their hidden desires and emotions. (AP Photo/Sigmund Freud Museum)

6. therapeutic (ther ə PŪ tik)—adjective

Relating to the treatment of disease, especially something intended to bring about healing.

Kara says that playing her clarinet has a *therapeutic* effect on her when she is emotionally upset.

7. neurosis (nyoo RŌ sis)—noun

An emotional disorder characterized by anxiety or other symptoms. A neurosis is not due to a physical or mental disease, and the sufferer does not lose contact with reality. A neurosis is not as severe a disorder as a *psychosis* (see below).

Claustrophobia is a common *neurosis* in which a person becomes extremely anxious in enclosed places, such as in an elevator or in a small room without windows.

8. psychosis (sī KŌ sis)—noun

A severe mental disorder involving personality disorganization and a lack of contact with reality.

A person suffering from a *psychosis* is considered insane.

9. psychosomatic (SĪ kō sō MAT ik)—adjective

Relates to the presence of physical symptoms that are due to emotional causes.

Psychosomatic is the term often used to reflect the influence the mind can have on the body. For example, a patient may have severe headaches because of stress (psychosomatic related), not because of some physical problem.

10. Oedipus complex (ED ə pəs kəm PLEKS)—adjective + noun

A psychoanalytic theory that children commonly have a subconscious sexual attraction to the parent of the opposite sex and hostility for the parent of the same sex. *Oedipus* comes from Greek mythology in which a son unwittingly kills his father and marries his mother.

The *Oedipus complex*, a theory developed by Freud to explain conflicts between a child and his or her parent of the opposite sex, is not subscribed to by all psychologists.

11. behavior therapy (bē HĀV yər THER ə pē)—adjective + noun

A psychological approach for treating emotional disturbances that emphasizes taking direct physical action to restore good mental and emotional health. The goal of behavior therapy is to help the patient modify and gain control over unwanted behavior. Gradually exposing the individual to situations he or she finds difficult to experience is a technique often used in this therapy.

Dr. Lown used *behavior therapy* to help her patient overcome his fear of elevators. The first week, she had her patient travel to the second floor and then back on an elevator; she gradually increased the number of floors the patient traveled until his anxiety regarding elevators was overcome.

12. cognitive therapy (KOG nə tiv THER ə pē)—adjective + noun

The goal of this type of therapy is to help individuals change unproductive thought patterns to those that are more realistic and beneficial. Many therapists use a combination of cognitive-behavior therapies in working with their patients.

After being counseled for several months in *cognitive therapy* techniques, my friend is confident he can now cope with his public speaking fears.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 2

Match each definition with the term it defines.

- | | | |
|----------|------------------------------|--|
| <u>c</u> | 1. therapeutic | a. refers to physical complaints related to emotional disorders |
| <u>l</u> | 2. psychoanalysis | b. the part of the personality concerned with right and wrong |
| <u>i</u> | 3. defense mechanisms | c. a term used for the positive treatment of illnesses |
| <u>k</u> | 4. behavior therapy | d. a psychological approach designed to help the individual change harmful thought patterns to more constructive ones |
| <u>h</u> | 5. ego | e. the theory that children often have an unconscious sexual attraction to the parent of the opposite sex |
| <u>j</u> | 6. psychosis | f. the instinctive part of the personality that seeks immediate gratification |
| <u>b</u> | 7. superego | g. an emotional disorder in which the individual retains contact with reality |
| <u>f</u> | 8. id | h. the part of the personality responsible for logical thinking |
| <u>g</u> | 9. neurosis | i. attitudes or strategies used to protect one's emotions or self-image |
| <u>d</u> | 10. cognitive therapy | j. a severe mental disorder in which the person has lost contact with reality |
| <u>e</u> | 11. Oedipus complex | k. a psychological approach that emphasizes gaining control over unwanted behavior rather than spending significant time exploring the individual's past mental and emotional histories |
| <u>a</u> | 12. psychosomatic | l. a psychological approach that uses talk (free association) to explore an individual's childhood as well as his or her dreams in an effort to uncover the root causes of emotional distress |

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 2

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

cognitive	ego	psychosis	psychoanalysis	id
therapeutic	Oedipus complex	intrinsic	psychosomatic	
defense mechanisms	behavior	superego	neurosis	

1. An individual who lacks contact with reality and has major personality disorganization is suffering from a(n) psychosis.
2. The id seeks immediate gratification regardless of the consequences, while the superego strives to maintain moral standards; the ego, responsible for logical thinking, attempts to reconcile the two.
3. Although my business partner is often plagued by anxiety, he is able to meet his responsibilities; nevertheless, he's seeing a psychologist for help in overcoming his neurosis.
4. Exercise has been found to be therapeutic for the relief of stress.
5. After someone else was given the promotion he had also requested, Ted said that was okay with him because the salary raise wasn't much, and besides, he didn't think he would like the people he would have had to work with anyway. Ted's statements represent the possible use of defense mechanisms.
6. During psychoanalysis, in which Martin talked a lot about his childhood, the psychiatrist suggested that Martin had possessed a(n) Oedipus complex when he was a youngster, and that was the reason he had never been able to get along well with his father.
7. Valerie was flabbergasted when the doctor stated his belief that her back pain was due to psychosomatic problems, not physical ones.
8. When treating certain patients, numerous psychologists often combine cognitive therapy, which stresses the development of healthy thought patterns, and behavior therapy, which stresses direct physical action to overcome emotional problems.
9. Intrinsic motivation comes from within a person.

Related Meanings: Set 2

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

1. cognitive therapy Yes psychological treatment stressing logical thought patterns
2. ego Yes logical, conscious side of one's personality
3. defense mechanisms No motivational strategies
4. neurosis No lack of a sense of reality

5. Oedipus complex	<u>No</u>	abnormal fear of strangers
6. therapeutic	<u>Yes</u>	helpful to healing
7. superego	<u>Yes</u>	honest and moral side of one's personality
8. behavior therapy	<u>Yes</u>	psychological treatment emphasizing action
9. psychosomatic	<u>Yes</u>	root of physical problem lies in an emotional disorder
10. psychosis	<u>No</u>	healthy cleansing of emotions
11. id	<u>Yes</u>	instinctive, selfish side of one's personality
12. psychoanalysis	<u>Yes</u>	psychological treatment with emphasis on rambling talk, or free association, to uncover hidden causes of emotional problems

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 2

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in psychology. Answers will vary.

1. **superego** _____

2. **therapeutic** _____

3. **behavior therapy** _____

4. **psychosomatic** _____

5. **id** _____

6. **Oedipus complex** _____

7. **defense mechanisms** _____

8. **psychoanalysis** _____

9. **psychosis** _____

10. cognitive therapy _____

11. ego _____

12. neurosis _____

Completing a Passage: Psychology

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the terms listed below.

intrinsic motivation	psychosis	therapeutic	ego
defense mechanisms	psychoanalysis	cognitive therapy	
neurosis	psychosomatic	behavior therapy	

PANIC ATTACKS

Panic attacks are sudden onsets of intense fear, anxiety, and a feeling of unreality; they are often accompanied by sweating, dizziness, and a pounding heartbeat. People from all walks of life, including athletes, singers, actors, broadcasters, ministers, teachers, doctors, and many others, have been the victims of panic attacks.

All of the causes of panic attacks have not been identified, but stress and emotional problems are generally thought to be major ones. People experiencing a panic attack for the first time often think they are having a heart attack, stroke, or some other medical catastrophe, including “going crazy.” Understandably, they will frequently rush to the nearest emergency room. After undergoing a medical exam, they may be told that there is nothing wrong with them physically, which suggests that their problem may be psychosomatic in nature. Although grateful to be told they are okay physically, it is often a blow to a panic attack sufferer’s ego to be told that an emotional disorder may have triggered their terrible discomfort.

Panic attacks are one of the most common psychological problems in our society, as figures indicate that one out of every twenty people experiences a panic attack sometime in his or her life. People with a chronic panic disorder suffer from a neurosis, not a psychosis, as they do not lose touch with reality despite the anxiety that so often overwhelms them. Such people frequently rearrange major parts of their lives in an effort to avoid having a panic attack. For example, if they had their first attack while shopping at a mall, attending a movie, or driving a car, they will completely avoid these activities, sometimes becoming so fearful

they seldom leave home, using all sorts of defense mechanisms to explain their puzzling behavior to friends and family members.

Fortunately, people who suffer from panic attacks can be helped by therapeutic medicines and effective counseling techniques. Regarding the latter, both behavior therapy and cognitive therapy, with their emphasis on action and correct thought patterns, have a history of success in helping people to overcome their panic attacks. Psychoanalysis, though requiring more time because of the free association talk involved, can also be helpful; however, many psychologists prefer a combination of the other two methods.

For many sufferers, intrinsic motivation leads them to seek help, but whatever motivates a person to get help, he or she is wise to do so, as from 70 to 90 percent of those who receive treatment are eventually freed from their terrifying panic attacks.

FEATURED WORD: psychosomatic

Psychosomatic—pertaining to the relationship between body and mind:

- In the interview, the doctor was quoted as saying he believed that over half of all illnesses are triggered by psychosomatic factors, so he urged his colleagues to be aware of patients' emotional backgrounds when exploring the causes of their physical complaints.

Origin: late 1930s <Greek—*psyche* (mind) and *soma* (body)

Family words: psychotherapy (n), psychotherapeutics (n)

Image to remember: person being counseled to improve his or her emotional situation in order to overcome his or her physical problems

Write an original sentence using *psychosomatic*:

farther refers to physical distance:

We decided not to hike any farther because it was getting dark.

further indicates to a greater extent or degree:

The happy couple said they would announce their plans in further detail in a couple of weeks.

The governor said the budget would take further study before a final decision could be reached.

Circle the correct answer:

1. After moving to the Southwest, Hakeem had no farther / further problems with asthma.
2. How much farther / further is it to the coast?
3. Until farther / further notice, Essex Street will be closed for repairs.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **farther:** _____

2. **further:** _____

Learning Sociology Terms from Context Clues: Set 1

Sociology is concerned with the systematic study of human society, including the social interactions among nations, communities, and families. Sociology includes many subfields, such as gerontology, social psychology, and religious and educational sociology, among many others. Mastery of the terms in this lesson and the following lesson can give you insight into this interesting and valuable social science.

1. acculturation (ə kul chə RĀshən)—noun

Modification of a culture as a result of contact with another culture.

The *acculturation* of the Japanese to many aspects of Western culture began after World War II.

2. agrarian (ə GRAR ē ən)—adjective

Relates to rural life, agricultural groups, and farm ownership.

The United States has moved from a predominantly *agrarian* to an urban society.

3. culture (KUL chər)—noun

The patterns of life shared by the members of a society and transmitted from one generation to another.

Eating three meals a day is part of our *culture*.

4. demography (di MOG rə fē)—noun

The statistical study of human populations, such as information about the number of births, deaths, and marriages.

A study of *demography* reveals that one of the highest birthrates in the United States occurred in the late 1940s.

5. mores (MŌR āz)—noun

Social norms that reflect the moral standards of a society.

Marrying a close relative is opposed by the *mores* of most societies.

6. peer group (PĒR GRŌOP)—noun + noun

A grouping of individuals of the same general age and social position.

As a child becomes older, his or her *peer group* has more influence.

7. sibling (SIB ling)—noun

One of two or more individuals having one common parent; a brother or sister.
Jack, my oldest *sibling*, is studying law at a university in New Jersey.

8. social norms (SŌ shəl NORMZ)—adjective + noun

Standards that guide people in what they should or should not do in any particular social situation.

Laws are serious and formal *social norms*.

9. stereotype (STER ē ə tīp)—noun; verb

A standardized image applied to individuals who are identified with a particular group (noun); to make a stereotype of (verb).

The *stereotype* of the cowboy of the Old West is that of a fearless, rugged, independent man.

10. urbanism (UR bə niz əm)—noun

Patterns of life characteristic of cities.

Some of the benefits of *urbanism* include access to outstanding museums, theaters, and restaurants.

11. values (VAL yōōz)—noun

Ideas about what is good, proper, wise, and worthwhile.

Achieving success in work is one of society's *values*.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 1

Match each definition with the term it defines.

<u> e </u>	1. social norms	a. adopting new patterns of life
<u> g </u>	2. mores	b. a fixed view of individuals
<u> i </u>	3. values	c. customs and values shared by a society
<u> c </u>	4. culture	d. a brother or sister
<u> k </u>	5. peer group	e. standards for social behavior
<u> b </u>	6. stereotype	f. refers to country life and farming
<u> h </u>	7. demography	g. guides that provide moral standards
<u> a </u>	8. acculturation	h. study of population figures
<u> j </u>	9. urbanism	i. ideas about what is beneficial
<u> f </u>	10. agrarian	j. refers to cities
<u> d </u>	11. sibling	k. individuals of similar backgrounds

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 1

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

acculturation	demography	social norms	values
sibling	mores	stereotype	agrarian
culture	peer group	urbanism	

1. A word referring to city life is urbanism.
2. Guides that help us to decide how we should behave when in public are social norms.
3. Because friends are important to all of us, we wish to be accepted by our peer group.
4. Human population figures have to do with the subject of demography.
5. Do you know whether Todd's sibling is a brother or a sister?
6. Strict guides concerned with society's important moral standards are called mores.
7. Getting a good education is one of the values of our society because of education's personal and vocational benefits.
8. A person who is overly aggressive, loud, and deceptive is the stereotype many people have of a used-car salesman.
9. Iowa and Nebraska are considered agrarian states because of the importance of agriculture to their economy.
10. Laws, religion, and manners are part of our culture.
11. A United States citizen who moves to the Philippines undergoes a(n) acculturation process because of the necessity to acquire new ways of functioning in a different society.

Related Meanings: Set 1

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | | |
|------------------|------------|--------------------------|
| 1. social norms | <u>Yes</u> | behavior guides |
| 2. mores | <u>Yes</u> | moral guidelines |
| 3. values | <u>Yes</u> | ideals |
| 4. culture | <u>No</u> | advanced civilization |
| 5. peer group | <u>No</u> | those of the upper class |
| 6. stereotype | <u>Yes</u> | common image |
| 7. demography | <u>No</u> | study of land |
| 8. acculturation | <u>No</u> | universal praise |

- | | | |
|--------------|------------|-------------------|
| 9. urbanism | <u>Yes</u> | relates to cities |
| 10. agrarian | <u>Yes</u> | rural |
| 11. sibling | <u>No</u> | cousin |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 1

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in sociology. Answers will vary.

1. **acculturation** _____

2. **agrarian** _____

3. **culture** _____

4. **demography** _____

5. **mores** _____

6. **sibling** _____

7. **peer group** _____

8. **social norms** _____

9. **stereotype** _____

10. **urbanism** _____

11. **values** _____

Learning Sociology Terms from Context Clues: Set 2

1. bureaucracy (bū ROK rə sē)—noun

Government structure operated by numerous offices and officials, with clearly defined responsibilities; often characterized by the following of inflexible rules and the creation of endless red tape.

The Duncans did not let the irritating *bureaucracy* discourage them from attempting to adopt a child.

2. ethnic group (ETH nik GRŌŌP)—adjective + noun

A group within a society that shares the same traits, such as race, nationality, religion, language, and customs.

Immigrants from Germany were an *ethnic group* that helped to settle Cincinnati, Ohio.

3. ethnocentrism (eth nō SEN triz əm)—noun

The attitude that one's own race, nation, or culture is superior to all others.

When people are initially exposed to a different culture, they may fall victim to *ethnocentrism*, a feeling that the new culture is inferior to the one to which they are accustomed.

4. folkways (FŌK wāz)—noun

Social customs approved by society; unlike mores, folkways are not considered morally significant, so they are not strictly enforced.

One of the *folkways* in our society is that a person should dress at least fairly formally when attending church, but it is not considered a serious offense if someone shows up wearing jeans.

5. Malthusian theory (mal THOO zē ən THĒ ə rē)—adjective + noun

Thomas R. Malthus's (1766–1834) theory that if population is not controlled, the result will be famine, war, and other tragedies.

The *Malthusian theory* was one of the first theories to predict that world hunger would result if population growth got out of control.

6. matriarchal family (mā trē AR kəl FAM ə lē)—adjective + noun

A family headed by the mother.

Because my father was frequently absent on business trips, ours was a *matriarchal family*; mother was dominant and made the major family decisions.

7. patriarchal family (pā trē AR kəl FAM ə lē)—adjective + noun

A family headed by the father.

A *patriarchal family* is most often portrayed in American literature, that is, a family dominated by the father's influence.

8. sanction (SANK shən)—noun

A mechanism of social control for enforcing a society's standards.

Because of the recent disturbances involving young people, the city council has enacted a 10:00 P.M. curfew for all teenagers; this *sanction* will be in effect for the remainder of the summer.

9. status (STĀ tās)—noun

A person's social standing in society.

Doctors enjoy a high social *status* in most communities.

10. utopia (ū TŌ pē ə)—noun

An imaginary place where everything is perfect.

Some young people yearn to go to Hollywood because they think this city must be *utopia*.

11. gerontology (JER ən TOL ə jē)—noun

The scientific study of aging.

As the population continues to grow and life expectancy increases, more sociologists are specializing in *gerontology* than ever before.

12. geriatrics (JER ē AT riks)—noun

The branch of medicine dealing with the diseases and care of the elderly.

My grandparents' doctor is Dr. Rostelli, a specialist in *geriatrics*.

Matching Academic Terms and Definition: Set 2

Match each definition with the term it defines.

<u>l</u>	1. matriarchal family	a. perfect community
<u>g</u>	2. patriarchal family	b. scientific study of aging
<u>e</u>	3. geriatrics	c. organization with rigid rules
<u>a</u>	4. utopia	d. punishment or approval
<u>h</u>	5. ethnocentrism	e. medicine specializing in the treatment of the elderly
<u>j</u>	6. Malthusian theory	f. people sharing certain characteristics
<u>b</u>	7. gerontology	g. father dominant
<u>d</u>	8. sanction	h. belief that one's own culture is the best
<u>k</u>	9. status	i. customs not strictly enforced
<u>f</u>	10. ethnic group	

c 11. bureaucracy
 i 12. folkways

- j. the idea that uncontrolled population leads to serious problems
- k. one's position in society
- l. mother dominant

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 2

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

bureaucracy	folkways	patriarchal family	utopia
ethnic group	Malthusian theory	sanction	geriatrics
ethnocentrism	matriarchal family	status	gerontology

1. Marybeth was accused of ethnocentrism after stating that England's culture is superior to the culture of any other country.
2. People who are of French descent have been a significant ethnic group in Maine's history.
3. The newspaper's editor blamed the state bureaucracy for the endless paperwork involved in the proposed construction of a new city bridge.
4. According to Malthusian theory, controlled population growth is essential to avoid serious societal problems.
5. Because his father died when Wallis was only two years old, he was raised in a(n) matriarchal family.
6. My Aunt Dolores was a part of a(n) patriarchal family; her father dominated all family matters.
7. Because of the growth in our aging population, there is a need for more doctors specializing in geriatrics.
8. Among the folkways in our society is the expectation that store clerks will be courteous to customers.
9. An example of a(n) sanction in the military is demotion to a lower rank.
10. Mr. Porter, a popular coach and biology teacher, enjoys a respected status in the community.
11. Maura's idea of utopia is Arizona because of its warm, dry climate and its opportunities for geological exploration.
12. After Peyton received her B.A. in sociology, she decided to pursue a master's degree in gerontology as she is interested in learning more about the aging process.

Related Meanings: Set 2

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write *Yes* in the space; if they are unrelated, write *No*.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|------------|---|
| 1. gerontology | <u>No</u> | medical specialty concerned with the diseases of children |
| 2. matriarchal family | <u>Yes</u> | family headed by mother |
| 3. patriarchal family | <u>Yes</u> | family headed by father |
| 4. bureaucracy | <u>Yes</u> | structure with numerous regulations |
| 5. utopia | <u>Yes</u> | heaven on earth |
| 6. ethnocentrism | <u>No</u> | dictator in power |
| 7. Malthusian theory | <u>No</u> | belief that earth formed 10 thousand years ago |
| 8. folkways | <u>Yes</u> | traditions expected to be observed |
| 9. sanction | <u>Yes</u> | something that tends to reinforce or discourage certain actions |
| 10. status | <u>No</u> | penalty for misbehavior |
| 11. ethnic group | <u>No</u> | individuals in local power |
| 12. geriatrics | <u>Yes</u> | medical specialty concerned with the aged |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 2

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in sociology. Answers will vary.

1. **bureaucracy** _____

2. **ethnic group** _____

3. **ethnocentrism** _____

4. **folkways** _____

5. **gerontology** _____

6. **Malthusian theory** _____

7. matriarchal family _____

8. patriarchal family _____

9. geriatrics _____

10. status _____

11. utopia _____

12. sanction _____

Completing a Passage: Sociology

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the terms listed below.

urbanism	stereotype	bureaucracy	ethnocentrism	ethnic group
status	social norms	peer groups	demography	agrarian

OPINION POLLS

The growth of creditable opinion polls dates back to the 1930s, when government, business, and educational organizations began to need more systematic methods for gathering information. Sociologists played a major part in the growth of opinion polls and other data-gathering techniques as the heart of their work involves demography, that is, the statistical study of birth, deaths, marriages, and other such information.

By having available the data provided by opinion polls, sociologists are able to identify shifts, if any, in the nation's social norms, such as whether something once considered socially unacceptable has now become socially acceptable. Opinion polls also help sociologists determine whether the status of people engaged in various occupations has undergone a change; for example, a recent poll revealed that the social ranking of cosmetologists (cosmetics specialists) has risen significantly in the last decade while the ranking of car salesmen has remained the same, an indication that people continue to stereotype them as slick and dishonest people.

Government officials are also interested in the information yielded by polls because they must stay current regarding all matters affecting the people, whether those are related to urbanism (cities) or agrarian (rural) life. However, after studying this information, they often add even more rules and regulations to an already complex bureaucracy. Politicians and businesspeople also rely on opinion polls to identify voters' attitudes and consumers' views on existing or new products.

To have validity, an opinion poll must be a representative sample that accurately mirrors the population under study. For example, if a poll's purpose is to gather information about the religious views of students attending U.S. colleges, then steps must be taken to ensure that the polling sample is sufficiently large and varied so that it truly represents these students. In such a poll, the opinions of peer groups are essential, but efforts must be made to rule out the domination of any one ethnic group because students who share the same race, language, customs, and nationality would not be representative of all students attending U.S. colleges. And because most people express at least a degree of ethnocentrism when it comes to cultural matters (which includes religious views), efforts must also be made to poll college students from foreign countries as well as those from the United States.

Though many people are skeptical of the accuracy of opinion polls, sociologists and others have faith in them if they are based on a representative sample of the group under study, if the polling questions (and interviews, if conducted) are free of bias and well written, and if the data gathered are analyzed correctly.

FEATURED WORD: gerontology

Gerontology—the scientific study of the biological, psychological, and sociological factors involved in the aging process:

- Gerontology, the scientific study of aging, is a subfield of sociology.

Origin: 1903, coined in England <Greek—*geron* (old man) and <French—*logie* (study of)

Family words: gerontological (adj), gerontologist (n)

Image to remember: elderly people, retirees

Write an original sentence using *gerontology*:

desert (1) dry, barren land; (2) forsaking one's duty:

This part of the state would be a desert if it weren't for irrigation.

We didn't ask Mike to go with us on our weeklong fishing trip because we knew he would never desert his business responsibilities for that period of time.

dessert the last course of a meal, often pastries or ice cream:

Gingerbread with lots of whipped cream is my son's favorite dessert.

Circle the correct answer:

1. We decided not to have any desert / dessert because we were too full from the delicious dinner.
2. Various kinds of flowers bloom in late winter and early spring in the desert / dessert areas of the Southwest.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **desert (meaning #1):** _____
2. **desert (meaning #2):** _____
3. **dessert:** _____

Learning United States History and Political Science Terms from Context Clues: Set 1

The United States is a republic, which means that the citizens exercise the powers of government through representatives. To meet this responsibility, citizens need to understand the country's heritage and political system; this is the overriding reason students are required to study history and government. In this regard, knowledge of the terms in this and the following two lessons is useful for the study of history and political science.

1. **amendment** (ə MEND mənt)—noun

A change or addition to the Constitution, the basic document establishing the framework of the federal government. There are currently twenty-six amendments to the Constitution.

The Thirteenth *Amendment* to the United States Constitution forbids slavery.

2. **Bill of Rights**—noun + preposition + noun

Adopted in 1791 soon after the Constitution went into effect, the first ten amendments to the Constitution are known as the Bill of Rights. It is concerned with such important freedoms as religion and speech.

Trial by jury is one of the important provisions in the *Bill of Rights*.

3. **boycott** (BOI kət)—noun or verb

An economic means of influencing another nation or business by refusing to purchase its products.

After the British government enacted the Stamp Act, colonial merchants decided to *boycott* English goods, especially tea.

4. **branches of government**—noun + preposition + noun

The United States federal government comprises three branches:

legislative (LEJ is lā tiv)—
adjective, noun

Congress, made up of the House of Representatives and the Senate, which makes the laws

executive (ig ZEK yə tiv)—
adjective, noun

the president, who enforces the laws

judiciary (joo DISH ē ə r ē)—
adjective, noun

the Supreme Court, which interprets the laws

5. checks and balances (CHEKS ănd BAL əns əs)—noun + conjunction + noun

Rights and procedures in the Constitution that reserve certain privileges to each of the three branches of government and that enable each branch to check, or limit, the powers of the other two.

Among the *checks and balances* existing in our government are the following: Congress (legislative) has the power to remove from office the president and Supreme Court justices; the president (executive) can refuse to sign bills passed by Congress and has the power to appoint Supreme Court justices when vacancies occur; the Supreme Court (judiciary) can declare bills approved by Congress and signed into law by the president unconstitutional.

6. eminent domain (EM ə nənt dō MĀN)—adjective + noun

The power of the government to acquire private property for public purposes.

The state government's power of *eminent domain* forced the O'Connors to sell a section of their farm so the highway could be altered.

7. laissez-faire (les ā FĀR)—adjective

Characterized by an economic policy that opposes government interference in business affairs.

Both presidential candidates stated they favor the *laissez-faire* doctrine, or government noninterference, when it came to such economic concerns as wages and prices.

8. lobbyist (LOB bē ist)—noun

A person who represents a special interest group that seeks to influence either the passage or defeat of certain bills.

The *lobbyist* for the oil company appeared before the committee to argue for the bill that would allow new offshore oil drilling.

9. ratification (rat ə fə KĀ shən)—noun

A power held by a legislative body to approve proposed agreements and amendments.

The Senate's *ratification* is necessary before the treaty becomes official.

10. veto (VĒ tō)—noun or verb

The president's refusal or act of refusing to sign a bill into law.

The president said he would *veto* the education bill passed by Congress.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 1

Match each definition with the term it defines.

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------------------|--|
| <u> d </u> | 1. branches of government | a. legislative power to approve certain government actions |
| <u> g </u> | 2. amendment | b. first ten amendments to the Constitution |
| <u> b </u> | 3. Bill of Rights | c. non-interference |
| <u> h </u> | 4. checks and balances | d. legislative, executive, judicial |
| <u> e </u> | 5. veto | e. president's refusal to sign a bill |
| <u> a </u> | 6. ratification | f. representative for a special concern |
| <u> i </u> | 7. boycott | g. change in the Constitution |
| <u> c </u> | 8. laissez-faire | h. ways government branches can limit one another |
| <u> j </u> | 9. eminent domain | i. refusal to buy |
| <u> f </u> | 10. lobbyist | j. government's right to secure private property |

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 1

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

amendment	branches of government	laissez-faire	veto
Bill of Rights	checks and balances	lobbyist	
boycott	eminent domain	ratification	

1. The Bill of Rights guarantees numerous personal freedoms.
2. Believing in as few restrictions on business as possible, the president is encouraging Congress to follow his laissez-faire philosophy.
3. The striking workers are urging people to boycott the company's products.
4. Some historians believe a(n) amendment to the Constitution should be adopted to simplify presidential elections.
5. The president remains confident that the Senate's ratification of the treaty will occur in two or three days.
6. The governor has suggested that the legislature exercise its right of eminent domain to enlarge the state park near the coast.
7. The three branches of government are the legislative, the executive, and the judicial.
8. The president warned that he would veto any bills requiring an increase in taxes.
9. Mr. Tapley is a(n) lobbyist for an environmental organization.
10. The checks and balances contained in the Constitution are designed to prohibit any branch of government from exceeding its powers.

Related Meanings: Set 1

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write *Yes* in the space; if they are unrelated, write *No*.

- | | | |
|---------------------------|------------|---|
| 1. branches of government | <u>No</u> | legislative, executive, treasury |
| 2. amendment | <u>Yes</u> | addition to or change in the Constitution |
| 3. Bill of Rights | <u>No</u> | first twelve amendments |
| 4. checks and balances | <u>No</u> | economic safeguards |
| 5. veto | <u>Yes</u> | president's disapproval of a bill |
| 6. ratification | <u>No</u> | presidential appointment |
| 7. boycott | <u>Yes</u> | refusal to buy |
| 8. laissez-faire | <u>No</u> | economic controls |
| 9. eminent domain | <u>No</u> | power to declare war |
| 10. lobbyist | <u>Yes</u> | representative for a special group |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 1

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in United States history and political science.

Answers will vary.

1. **amendment** _____

2. **Bill of Rights** _____

3. **boycott** _____

4. **branches of government** _____

5. **checks and balances** _____

6. **eminent domain** _____

7. **laissez-faire** _____

8. **lobbyist** _____

9. **ratification** _____

10. **veto** _____

Learning United States History and Political Science Terms from Context Clues: Set 2

1. filibuster (FIL ə bus tər)—noun

A technique by which a minority of senators attempts to block the passage of a bill through continuous talk, thus delaying the vote.

The *filibuster* in the Senate has lasted six hours so far, so the controversial bill has never come to a vote.

2. impeachment (im PĒCH mənt)—noun

The constitutional procedure for removing the president and other high federal officials from office for illegal activities.

Andrew Johnson, who served as president from 1865 to 1869 after the assassination of Abraham Lincoln, and William Clinton, who served as president from 1993 to 2000, are the only presidents to have faced *impeachment*; both were acquitted by the Senate.

3. lame duck (LĀM DUK)—adjective + noun

An elected official whose influence is weakened because he or she is soon to leave office, as a result of either an election defeat or a law that prohibits another term.

The senator, a *lame duck* as a result of losing the fall election, announced he would be joining a Washington, D.C., law firm after his senate term expires.

4. red herring (RED HER ing)—adjective + noun

An irrelevant topic that diverts attention from the main issue.

The candidate running against the senator angrily claims that the senator's remarks about her divorce years ago is a *red herring* to draw attention away from his poor record regarding such important matters as education, universal medical coverage, and the national debt.

5. appropriation (ə PRŌprē Ā shən)—noun

A grant of money to finance a government program.

Congress has approved an *appropriation* to improve the interstate highway system.

6. entitlement (en TĪ təl mənt)—noun

A law requiring the government to pay money to people who meet specific eligibility requirements.

Workers who have social security payments deducted from their salaries are eligible for an *entitlement* when they retire.

7. patronage (PĀ trə nij)—noun

The power given to political leaders to make appointments to government positions and to award contracts and favors to friends and supporters.

Patronage can lead to abuses, but it can also lead to benefits if political leaders appoint only well-qualified people to government positions.

8. referendum (REF ə REN dəm)—noun

An electoral device by which voters can either approve or disapprove of an action taken by their state legislature.

The *referendum* indicated overwhelming approval of the proposed dam project.

9. gerrymandering (JER ē MAN dər ing)—noun or verb

Establishment of a voting district in such a way as to give an advantage to one political party.

The Democrats accused the Republicans of *gerrymandering* the boundaries of the metropolitan area to obtain a voting advantage during elections.

10. sedition (sə DISH ən)—noun

Actions causing public disorder or rebellion against the government.

An illegal attempt to overthrow the government is called *sedition*.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 2

Match each definition with the term it defines.

<u> e </u>	1. referendum	a. officerholder whose term is almost over
<u> g </u>	2. red herring	b. power to make appointments and grant favors to supporters
<u> i </u>	3. appropriation	c. redrawing voting boundaries to gain an election advantage
<u> f </u>	4. filibuster	d. public disorder against the government
<u> b </u>	5. patronage	
<u> a </u>	6. lame duck	

- | | | |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| <u>h</u> | 7. impeachment | e. enables citizens of a state to vote on action taken by its legislature |
| <u>c</u> | 8. gerrymandering | f. continuous talk designed to stop a bill from coming to a vote |
| <u>j</u> | 9. entitlement | g. something that distracts from the chief issue |
| <u>d</u> | 10. sedition | h. method of removing high government officials from office |
| | | i. money budgeted for a government program |
| | | j. requires the government to pay money to qualified people |

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 2

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

filibuster appropriation referendum impeachment entitlement
gerrymandering lame duck patronage sedition red herring

- When Grover Cleveland became president, he exercised his power of patronage by appointing thousands of Democrats to postal positions.
- A(n) entitlement is a financial obligation the government has to people meeting specific criteria.
- Congress's appropriation for space research has been increased for next year.
- Attempts to overthrow the government through sabotage are considered sedition.
- A state referendum to be held this fall will enable the voters of this state to express their feelings regarding the controversial environmental law.
- Gerrymandering is a term dating back to 1812 when Elbridge Gerry, the governor of Massachusetts, had the boundaries of voting districts redrawn to gain an election advantage.
- The newspaper editorial maintains that the crime issue is a(n) red herring that blurs the city's major problem, which, in the editor's opinion, is skyrocketing property taxes.
- The mayor, now a(n) lame duck, said she will resume her teaching career after her present term expires.
- Many historians believe President Nixon would have faced certain impeachment if he hadn't resigned after the Watergate scandal.
- The senator's filibuster lasted nine hours in an effort to delay the vote on the bill.

Related Meanings: Set 2

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write *Yes* in the space; if they are unrelated, write *No*.

- | | | |
|-------------------|------------|---|
| 1. red herring | <u>Yes</u> | smokescreen that keeps attention away from the main issue |
| 2. impeachment | <u>No</u> | presidential inauguration |
| 3. lame duck | <u>No</u> | officerholder found guilty of a crime |
| 4. filibuster | <u>Yes</u> | stalling talk |
| 5. patronage | <u>No</u> | rebellion against the government |
| 6. referendum | <u>Yes</u> | voters approve or reject an action of the state legislature |
| 7. sedition | <u>No</u> | a bill that has been enacted into law |
| 8. entitlement | <u>No</u> | officerholder's authority to appoint supporters to political jobs |
| 9. gerrymandering | <u>No</u> | political bribery |
| 10. appropriation | <u>No</u> | the seizing of illegal goods crossing state lines |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 2

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your master of its meaning as used in United States history and political science. Answers will vary.

1. **filibuster** _____

2. **impeachment** _____

3. **lame duck** _____

4. **red herring** _____

5. **appropriation** _____

6. **entitlement** _____

7. **patronage** _____

8. referendum _____

9. gerrymandering _____

10. sedition _____

Completing a Passage: United States History and Political Science

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the terms listed below.

laissez-faire	impeachment	judicial	appropriation	red herring
executive	lobbyist	sedition	legislative	boycott

WILLIAM H. SEWARD

The candidate heavily favored to win the Republican nomination for president in 1860 was William H. Seward, a senator from the state of New York. Seward, born in 1801, had also been a successful lawyer and a popular New York governor. He was well acquainted with all areas of governmental responsibilities, including those of the legislative, executive, and judicial branches. In addition, he was aware that the slavery issue was no red herring intended to distract voters from the important issues of the coming national election; he knew slavery was the main issue that had to be dealt with once and for all. Seward had been an abolitionist (person in favor of abolishing slavery) for many years. However, to the utter shock of many at the convention, including Seward, Abraham Lincoln of Illinois won the Republican nomination and later the national election that followed in the fall.

After the election, Lincoln selected Seward to serve in his Cabinet as secretary of state. Like many other members of the Cabinet, Seward initially underestimated Lincoln's political skills and intelligence as well as his determination to stamp out all acts of sedition against the federal government. Soon, however, Seward and most of the others came to realize that Lincoln was a remarkable man who was uniquely gifted to lead the nation during the worst crisis it had ever faced. Along with Secretary of War Stanton, Seward became one of Lincoln's closest allies, admirers, and friends throughout his presidency.

During the Civil War, Seward was successful in persuading the European nations to adopt a policy of noninterference, or laissez-faire, regarding the conflict, and many of these nations also agreed to boycott cotton and other products from the South.

On April 14, 1865, only days after Lee surrendered to Grant, President Lincoln was shot at Ford's Theater by John Wilkes Booth (he died on April 15). While this tragedy was taking place, one of Booth's co-conspirators, Lewis Powell, entered Seward's bedroom and repeatedly attacked him with a knife, slashing deep gashes in his face and neck. Only the fact that Seward was wearing a heavy neck brace because of a recent accident prevented Powell from landing a fatal blow.

Remarkably, Seward eventually recovered from both his carriage injuries and his knife wounds; tragically, however, Frances, his wife, and Fanny, one of his daughters, never recovered from the shock and anxiety caused by Lincoln's assassination and Powell's vicious attack on the family. Mrs. Seward died just three months later, and Fanny passed away the following year.

Seward, despite his injuries and deep personal sorrow, continued to perform his secretary of state duties, serving throughout President Andrew Johnson's extremely difficult term in office. In 1867, Seward secured an appropriation from Congress to purchase Alaska from Russia for \$7,200,000. Critics of that day labeled the purchase "Seward's Folly" and "Seward's Icebox," but time has shown it to be the best territorial purchase ever made by the United States. Around this time, Congress, unhappy with President Johnson's policies, conducted impeachment proceedings against the president. Though President Johnson was eventually cleared by the slimmest of margins, his presidency was never free from bitter conflicts between him and Congress.

After Ulysses S. Grant was elected president in 1868, Seward finally retired from public life, but unlike so many retired politicians before and after him, he did not become a lobbyist for those seeking to do business with the federal government. Instead, Seward traveled around the world for fourteen months before returning to his beloved home in Auburn, New York, where he died in 1872.

William H. Seward was a hardworking, effective, and faithful servant to his nation during a critical time in its history, and as a result, he is fairly ranked among the best of those who have served our country as secretary of state.

FEATURED WORD: laissez-faire

Laissez-faire—a government’s policy of non-interference in the nation’s businesses and in the affairs of other countries:

- During the 19th century, the federal government followed a laissez-faire approach in the development of the nation’s industries and businesses.

Origin: <French—*laissez* (let) and *faire* (to do)

Family words: laissez-faireism (n)

Image to remember: people who are tolerant of opinions other than their own

Write an original sentence using *laissez-faire*:

capital (1) a town or city that serves as the official seat of government; (2) wealth in the form of money or property:

Washington, D.C., is the capital city of the United States.

The couple raised enough capital to start a restaurant of their own.

capitol refers to the building where legislators meet:

Congress meets in the Capitol Building in Washington, D.C.

Circle the correct answer:

1. Much of my aunt's capital / capitol is invested in U.S. Savings Bonds.
2. The dome on the capital / capitol building looks like it is made of gold.
3. Is Trenton the capital / capitol of New Jersey?

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **capital (meaning #1):** _____
2. **capital (meaning #2):** _____
3. **capitol:** _____

Learning Legal Terms from Context Clues: Set 1

The legal terms included in this chapter are among those that must be understood to gain insight into the fundamental concepts presented in introductory paralegal, law enforcement, criminal justice, and other such courses.

1. acquittal (ə KWIT əl)—noun

The finding of the court or jury that the defendant is not guilty.

After the defendant's *acquittal* was announced, her family rushed to embrace her.

2. adjudicate (ə JOO də kāt)—verb

To settle by legal decision as a judge or jury does; to judge.

A judge will *adjudicate* the divorce settlement, including custody of the children.

3. bail (BĀL)—noun

Security, usually in the form of money, used to release an accused person prior to a trial or hearing.

The defendant would forfeit a *bail* of \$10,000 if he failed to appear at his hearing.

4. booking (BOOK ing)—noun

The process of entering the suspect's name, the offense with which the suspect is charged, and other pertinent information in the official arrest record.

An officer at the police station used a computer to complete the *booking*; he typed information about the suspect and the crime with which he was charged.

5. commute (kə MYOOT)—verb

To reduce a guilty person's sentence or punishment.

The judge *commuted* the prisoner's sentence from eight to five years.

6. culpability (kul pə BIL ə tē)—noun

Blameworthiness; guiltiness.

The stockbroker admitted his *culpability* for the illegal business practices members of his firm had been following.

7. indict (in DĪT)—verb

To formally charge a person with a criminal offense.

The grand jury is deliberating whether to *indict* the driver for vehicular manslaughter.

8. perjury (PUR jə rē)—noun

Lying under oath.

Because it was later established that the defense witness had lied, she was indicted for *perjury*.

9. recidivism (ri SID ə viz əm)—noun

Relapsing into a previous behavior pattern, especially criminal behavior.

Because of the state's high rate of repeat offenders during the past decade, a special governor's commission has recommended new prison reform and rehabilitation programs in an effort to reduce such *recidivism*.

10. tort (TORT) **law**—noun + noun

Law that is concerned with wrongful acts resulting in injury or damage for which people can seek legal satisfaction.

Tort law is a branch of civil law (as opposed to criminal or contract law) concerned with compensating individuals for personal injury, property damage, or other losses.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 1

Match each definition with the term it defines.

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|--|
| <u> f </u> | 1. culpability | a. to reduce the severity of the punishment |
| <u> j </u> | 2. tort law | b. process of entering suspect's name and other information in the official arrest record |
| <u> g </u> | 3. recidivism | c. lying under oath |
| <u> b </u> | 4. booking | d. to judge |
| <u> i </u> | 5. indict | e. a "not guilty" verdict |
| <u> d </u> | 6. adjudicate | f. the deserving of fault or blame |
| <u> a </u> | 7. commute | g. backsliding to previous behavior |
| <u> e </u> | 8. acquittal | h. security posted to gain the release of the accused before the trial |
| <u> h </u> | 9. bail | i. to formally charge a person with a crime |
| <u> c </u> | 10. perjury | j. branch of law specializing in personal injury and property damage cases |

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 1

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

acquittal bail commuted indict recidivism
adjudicate booking culpability perjury tort law

1. The driver acknowledged his culpability for the accident as he confessed to running a red light.
2. Libel suits are among the concerns of tort law.
3. The grand jury decided not to indict the suspect because of a lack of compelling evidence.
4. Researchers are constantly attempting to identify the causes of recidivism so steps can be taken to help former criminals lead productive lives and stay out of prison.
5. Though she knew her testimony would prove damaging to her friend's defense, she resolved to tell the truth about the incident rather than commit perjury.
6. The booking of the suspect took considerable time because he was most uncooperative, even refusing to give his name, address, and date of birth.
7. The suspect's family rushed to embrace him after his acquittal.
8. Because his client has been a model prisoner, the lawyer is confident his client's sentence will be commuted from twenty to ten years.
9. The business partners couldn't reach an agreement, so they consulted an expert in contract law to adjudicate the matter.
10. The accused remained in jail after failing to raise the necessary money for his bail.

Related Meanings: Set 1

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | |
|-----------------|---|
| 1. indict | <u>Yes</u> charge with a crime |
| 2. acquittal | <u>Yes</u> free from the accusation |
| 3. perjury | <u>No</u> hung jury |
| 4. adjudicate | <u>Yes</u> judge |
| 5. tort law | <u>No</u> having to do with the legality of contracts |
| 6. recidivism | <u>Yes</u> backsliding into crime |
| 7. commute | <u>No</u> plead a case |
| 8. bail | <u>No</u> flee before a trial |
| 9. booking | <u>No</u> reduction of a sentence |
| 10. culpability | <u>No</u> lying under oath |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 1

Write an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in law. Answers will vary.

1. **acquittal** _____

2. **adjudicate** _____

3. **bail** _____

4. **booking** _____

5. **commute** _____

6. **culpability** _____

7. **indict** _____

8. **perjury** _____

9. **recidivism** _____

10. **tort law** _____

Learning Legal Terms from Context Clues: Set 2

1. **appeal** (ə PĒL)—noun

The request for a new hearing of a case already tried.

After the guilty verdict was announced, the defendant's lawyer immediately announced she would seek an *appeal*.

2. **change of venue** (CHĀNJ uv VEN yoo)—noun + preposition + noun

A change in the place of the defendant's trial, generally from the county where the crime was committed to another judicial district.

The judge agreed to the defense lawyer's request for a *change of venue* because of the widespread publicity about the crime.

3. **concurrent sentencing, consecutive sentencing** (kən KUR ənt, kən SEK yə tiv)—nouns

Concurrent sentencing is when two or more sentences are handed out on the same occasion to be served during a common time period.

Consecutive sentencing is when two or more sentences are handed out on the same occasion and the time to be served is to be equal to the sum of the sentences.

The defendants, found guilty on all charges, hoped to receive *concurrent sentencing*; however, they received *consecutive sentencing*, so they must serve five years in prison for each crime they committed.

4. **extradite** (EK str ə dīt)—verb

To transfer an accused person to the authorities with the legal jurisdiction to try the case.

Texas officials agreed to *extradite* the suspect to Florida, where she had escaped from prison.

5. **felony** (FEL ə nē)—noun

A major crime punishable by death or a long prison sentence.

Kidnapping is a *felony* punishable by death in many states.

6. **misdemeanor** (mis də MĒ nər)—noun

A crime punishable by a fine and/or imprisonment, usually for less than a year; a misdemeanor is a less serious crime than a felony.

The protestors were warned they would be charged with a *misdemeanor* unless they stopped blocking the entrance to the building.

7. **subpoena** (sə PĒ nə)—noun

A legal order requiring a person to appear in court to give testimony.

The *subpoena* requires the supervisor to testify in court regarding the safety procedures being followed on the day the accident occurred.

8. habeas corpus (HĀbē əs KOR pəs)—noun. Latin term meaning “you have the body.”

A legal order commanding a person being held in custody to be produced before a court to determine the lawfulness of the person’s confinement.

A request for *habeas corpus* was granted by the judge to determine whether the lawyer’s client should be released until his scheduled deportation hearing.

9. injunction (in JUNGK shən)—noun

A legal order directing a person to refrain from doing some activity. An injunction is a preventive measure to guard against future injuries; it does not provide a remedy for past injuries.

An *injunction* prohibits the former employee from coming within three blocks of the business establishment where he once worked.

10. jurisprudence (JUR is PROOD ns)—noun

The science of law. Jurisprudence is also used as a synonym (word having the same meaning) for law.

Law courses are challenging because the study of *jurisprudence* encompasses all matters relating to our legal system.

11. litigation (lit ə GĀ shən)—noun

A legal suit in a court of law.

Unfortunately, *litigation* was necessary to settle our boundary dispute with our once-friendly neighbors.

12. plaintiff (PLAYN tif)—noun

defendant (də FEN dənt)—noun

litigants (LIT ə gənts)—noun

The plaintiff is the one who legally complains and initiates court action against someone; the defendant is the one being sued or, in a criminal case, the one being accused. The plaintiff and defendant are known as the litigants, that is, the parties involved in a lawsuit.

The *litigants* in the lawsuit are Mr. Dawson and Mr. Burnell. Mr. Dawson, the *plaintiff*, says he was never paid in full for building Mr. Burnell’s house.

Mr. Burnell, the *defendant*, contends Mr. Dawson was not paid in full because he had failed to fulfill all the terms of their contract.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 2

Match each definition with the term it defines.

A

- c 1. felony
- f 2. habeas corpus
- d 3. extradite
- h 4. misdemeanor
- g 5. defendant
- b 6. litigation
- e 7. concurrent
- a 8. jurisprudence

- a. the science of law
- b. legal suit in a court of law
- c. major crime punishable by death or a severe prison sentence
- d. to send a prisoner to authorities in another state
- e. describes jail time served during the same time period
- f. requires a person be brought before the court to determine whether he or she is being held legally
- g. person being sued or accused of a crime
- h. crime punishable by a fine and/or imprisonment

B

- d 1. subpoena
- g 2. appeal
- f 3. litigants
- e 4. consecutive
- a 5. change of venue
- c 6. plaintiff
- b 7. injunction

- a. alteration of the location of a defendant's trial
- b. legal order barring a person from doing some activity
- c. person bringing court action against someone
- d. legal order requiring a person to testify in court
- e. describes sentences served one after the other
- f. parties involved in a lawsuit
- g. request for a new trial

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 2

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

A

appeal consecutive extradite felony
subpoena plaintiff defendant litigants

1. Nevada officials requested California authorities to extradite the suspect to Nevada.
2. The prisoner received consecutive sentencing, so he will serve a total of twenty years as each sentence called for ten years in prison.

3. The litigants in the case are a fired chauffeur; the plaintiff, who is suing his ex-boss; and the defendant, who is being sued for breach of contract.
4. Robbing a bank is a(n) felony, so the judge will undoubtedly sentence the guilty person to a long prison term.
5. Because she was a close friend of the accused, my neighbor wasn't surprised when she was served with a(n) subpoena requiring her to give testimony at his trial.
6. The defendant and her lawyer were stunned by the jury's verdict, and they made it clear they would file a(n) appeal as soon as possible.

B

change of venue concurrent misdemeanor habeas corpus
 injunction jurisprudence litigation

1. The teenagers were charged with a(n) misdemeanor after they were caught spray-painting the front of the community swimming pool.
2. She was given concurrent sentencing, so she will serve a total of ten years in federal prison even though the two crimes she was found guilty of each carry a ten-year sentence.
3. The judge issued a(n) injunction prohibiting the young man from having any further contact with his ex-girlfriend.
4. The lawyer assured his clients that the judge would agree to issue an order of habeas corpus, so they would either be brought to court and charged with a crime or they would be released.
5. The community's widespread hostility against the defendant resulted in a(n) change of venue for the trial.
6. The former employee was threatened with litigation unless he returned the company car within two days.
7. To earn a degree in jurisprudence generally takes three years of full-time study beyond the bachelor's degree.

Related Meanings: Set 2

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | |
|----------------|--|
| 1. extradite | <u>No</u> inconclusive evidence |
| 2. litigation | <u>Yes</u> the taking of legal action leading to a court trial |
| 3. appeal | <u>No</u> request for a different location for the trial |
| 4. misdemeanor | <u>No</u> illegal arrest |
| 5. felony | <u>Yes</u> major criminal offense |
| 6. consecutive | <u>Yes</u> sentences served one after the other |

7. concurrent	<u>Yes</u>	sentences served at the same time
8. change of venue	<u>No</u>	request for a new trial
9. plaintiff	<u>Yes</u>	person suing
10. injunction	<u>No</u>	requires a court appearance to give testimony
11. habeas corpus	<u>No</u>	crime victim's body
12. defendant	<u>Yes</u>	person being sued or accused of a crime
13. subpoena	<u>No</u>	the formal study of law
14. litigants	<u>Yes</u>	parties involved in a lawsuit
15. jurisprudence	<u>No</u>	a case decided by a jury rather than a judge

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 2

Write an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in law. Answers will vary.

1. appeal _____

2. change of venue _____

3. concurrent sentencing _____

4. consecutive sentencing _____

5. extradite _____

6. felony _____

7. misdemeanor _____

8. subpoena _____

9. habeas corpus _____

10. injunction _____

11. jurisprudence _____

12. litigation _____

13. plaintiff _____

14. defendant _____

15. litigants _____

Completing a Passage: Law

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the terms listed below.

booking	bail	felony	tort	jurisprudence
plaintiff	subpoenaing	appeal	defendant	adjudicated
indicted	acquittal	habeas corpus	misdemeanor	change of venue

PUBLIC DEFENDER

A public defender is a licensed lawyer, but unlike a defense attorney in private practice who is paid by the clients he or she chooses to represent, a public defender is paid with public funds (or by some non-profit agency) and assigned by the court to represent clients without financial resources. The 1963 *Gideon v. Wainwright* trial is responsible for guaranteeing that every person, even ones unable to pay, is entitled to legal counsel. Gideon, the defendant, was accused by Wainwright, the plaintiff, of breaking into his bar and stealing money and beer. Gideon was indicted and charged with a felony, not a misdemeanor, because breaking and entering to commit a robbery is considered a major criminal offense.

At his trial, Gideon, who could not afford to hire a lawyer, maintained that it was fundamentally unfair that he had to attempt to defend himself against a trained prosecuting attorney. The Supreme Court agreed that Gideon was entitled to qualified legal counsel, and although some courts had provided free attorneys prior to the *Gideon v. Wainwright* ruling, this decision soon led to the creation of public defender programs throughout the country.

Full-time public defenders typically handle only criminal cases, so it is a rare occasion when they are assigned cases involving tort law as they are usually not allowed to take cases involving personal injuries or civil disputes.

A public defender has the same rights as any defense lawyer, including that of being present during his or her client's booking at the police station. During the pretrial hearing, a public defender may ask the judge to execute an order of habeas corpus so that his or her client appears in court, which often makes possible the arrangement of bail so that the client can be released until his or her case is adjudicated, or settled by legal decision. Also during a pretrial hearing, a public defender may ask the judge for a change of venue because he or she feels the accused cannot receive a fair trial at the scheduled location. Before and during the trial, the public defender can request the subpoenaing of witnesses to provide testimony on behalf of his or her client. And if the trial results in a conviction rather than an acquittal for his or her client, the public defender may file an appeal, that is, a request for a new trial.

The 1963 Supreme Court ruling that poor people accused of serious crimes are entitled to legal counsel is considered by legal historians as a major advancement in jurisprudence. Public defenders provide evidence every day that this legal advancement is being observed in all of our nation's courts.

FEATURED WORD: subpoena

Subpoena—a legal order requiring a person to appear in court to give testimony:

- The passenger that was in the car fleeing from the accident scene received a subpoena to testify in court.

Origin: From the Middle English (1100–1500) word *suppena* <Latin *sub* (under) and *poena* (penalty). Has also been used as a verb since 1640: The bank's loan officer was subpoenaed to provide testimony in a bankruptcy case.

Family words: subpoenaed (v), subpoenaing (v), subpoenas (n)

Image to remember: someone giving testimony in a trial

Write an original sentence using *subpoena*:

its a possessive pronoun:

The car spun off the track when one of its tires came off its rim.

it's a contraction for "it is" or "it has":

Do you think it's time for us to go? (Do you think it is time for us to go?) It's been raining for three consecutive days. (It has been raining for three consecutive days.)

[Suggestion: If you could use it is in your sentence, use it's, that is, its with an apostrophe, as in this example: "Mary doesn't think it's likely she'll be able to go with us" because "Mary doesn't think it is likely she'll be able to go with us" is also correct. However, in "The dog cut its paw on a piece of glass," the its doesn't have an apostrophe because "The dog hurt it is paw on a piece of glass" doesn't work.]

Circle the correct answer:

1. Lana realizes that its / it's not too early to think about what she wants to major in.
2. Although its / it's star player was injured, the team won the tournament.
3. Its / It's been interesting working at a grocery store for the past three years, but I'd like to find a restaurant job now.
4. Why? Do you think its / it's easy to be on your feet for eight straight hours waiting on customers?

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **its:** _____
2. **it's (it is):** _____
3. **it's (it has):** _____

REVIEW TEST, CHAPTERS 18–23

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions

Match each academic term with its definition.

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------------------|--|
| <u> e </u> | 1. figures of speech | a. evidence directly experienced or observed |
| <u> h </u> | 2. genre | b. anything that hinders communication |
| <u> a </u> | 3. empirical | c. behaviors reflecting society's moral standards |
| <u> b </u> | 4. noise | d. strategies adopted to protect one's self-image |
| <u> i </u> | 5. placebo | e. imaginative expressions used in writing and speaking |
| <u> j </u> | 6. psychoanalysis | f. describes an illness triggered by emotional troubles |
| <u> d </u> | 7. defense mechanisms | g. study of population figures |
| <u> g </u> | 8. demography | h. category or type of literature |
| <u> f </u> | 9. psychosomatic | i. inactive substance used in experiments |
| <u> c </u> | 10. social norms | j. therapy that emphasizes the exploration of one's childhood and dreams |

Related Meanings

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------|--|
| 1. branches of government | <u> Yes </u> | legislative, executive, judicial |
| 2. amendment | <u> Yes </u> | amendment or change to the Constitution |
| 3. indict | <u> No </u> | flee before a trial |
| 4. acquittal | <u> No </u> | a guilty verdict |
| 5. flashback | <u> No </u> | plot of a story |
| 6. antagonist | <u> Yes </u> | villain |
| 7. fallacies | <u> No </u> | jokes |
| 8. induction | <u> Yes </u> | drawing a conclusion after gathering evidence |
| 9. therapeutic | <u> No </u> | personality disorder |
| 10. superego | <u> Yes </u> | honest and moral side of one's personality |
| 11. values | <u> Yes </u> | ideas about what is good, wise, and worthwhile |
| 12. peer group | <u> No </u> | those of the upper class |

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the terms listed below.

kinesics premise transitions subjective rapport catalyst
decoding venue objective impromptu encoding

GIVING A SPUR-OF-THE-MOMENT TALK

A major premise of our speech teacher, Dr. Stillings, is that the steps involved in giving a(n) impromptu speech are practically identical to those for giving any type of speech, with the major difference obviously being that little time can be devoted to each step. Nevertheless, Dr. Stillings insisted, we can usually make quick but helpful assumptions about our audience and the venue, or location, in which we're speaking; then, we likely will be in a position to begin establishing rapport with our audience, perhaps by deciding to tell a joke, as humor often serves as a(n) catalyst.

Related to the preceding steps is deciding when (or if) we should be objective (not expressing any biases) and when (or if) we should be subjective (expressing our personal feelings). In addition, Dr. Stillings reminded us that gestures and other forms of kinesics generally contribute to the effectiveness of a speech, and transitions, such as *for example* and *on the other hand*, are helpful for linking information.

Finally, Dr. Stillings stressed that our responsibility in the encoding of our thoughts into messages is to express what we wish to convey in the simplest and clearest way possible so that members of our audience will not struggle when decoding our remarks.

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each of these academic terms that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning. Answers will vary.

1. **veto** _____

2. **Bill of Rights** _____

3. **perjury** _____

4. bibliography _____

5. nonsexist language _____

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions

Match each academic term with its definition.

- | | | |
|------------------|------------------------|---|
| <u> j </u> | 1. checks and balances | a. sentence structure in which the verb “acts” upon the subject: “The solo <u>was sung</u> by <u>Megan</u> .” |
| <u> d </u> | 2. ratification | b. sentence structure in which the subject “does” the verb: “ <u>Megan sang</u> the solo.” |
| <u> f </u> | 3. adjudicate | c. writing that is not poetry |
| <u> h </u> | 4. agrarian | d. legislative power to approve or disapprove treaties and government appointments |
| <u> c </u> | 5. prose | e. legal request for a new trial |
| <u> k </u> | 6. plagiarism | f. to judge or to determine by legal means |
| <u> e </u> | 7. appeal | g. organization with numerous officials and rigid rules |
| <u> a </u> | 8. passive | h. relating to rural life |
| <u> l </u> | 9. hypothesis | i. motivation coming from within a person |
| <u> i </u> | 10. intrinsic | j. constitutional methods by which the branches of government can limit one another’s actions |
| <u> b </u> | 11. active | k. stealing the words of others |
| <u> g </u> | 12. bureaucracy | l. a reasonable assumption; a theory |

Related Meanings

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | | |
|------------------|------------|---|
| 1. variable | <u>Yes</u> | factor manipulated in an experiment |
| 2. introvert | <u>No</u> | person with a friendly, outgoing personality |
| 3. laissez-faire | <u>Yes</u> | non-interference |
| 4. boycott | <u>No</u> | representative for a special group |
| 5. patriarchal | <u>Yes</u> | family headed by father |
| 6. booking | <u>No</u> | lying under oath |
| 7. bail | <u>Yes</u> | security pledged to gain the release of the accused |
| 8. denotation | <u>No</u> | word’s suggested meanings |
| 9. literal | <u>Yes</u> | refers to the exact meaning of a word |
| 10. enunciation | <u>Yes</u> | precise pronunciation of words |

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

canon	experimental	anthology	personification	speaking
synopsis	id	multimedia	ego	alliteration
cognitive	metaphor	control	protagonist	

1. “The stars were winking at us” is an example of personification.
2. “Funny Fred fell forward for Fiona” is an example of alliteration.
3. “Jack became a roaring lion every time his computer broke down” is a figure of speech known as a(n) metaphor.
4. I’ve finally finished my synopsis of the book I read for my lit class.
5. Can you remember the name of the heroine, or protagonist, in Pearl Buck’s novel *The Good Earth*?
6. This thick anthology includes short stories, essays, plays, and poems.
7. The best-known books in Mark Twain’s canon are, of course, those featuring Tom Sawyer and Huckleberry Finn.
8. The speaking voice is concerned with such matters as volume, tone, and tempo.
9. A(n) multimedia presentation features graphics often displayed by using a computer.
10. If you are assigned to the experimental group, your meals will be supplemented with a high-potency multivitamin; on the other hand, if you are assigned to the control group, you will receive the same meals as the other group but not the multivitamin.
11. Cognitive therapy is a psychological approach designed to help individuals change harmful thought patterns to more constructive ones.
12. According to Freud, the ego is responsible for logical thinking while the id is the instinctive part of a person’s personality.

Related Meanings

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | | |
|---------------------|------------|--|
| 1. behavior therapy | <u>No</u> | psychological treatment emphasizing medications |
| 2. Oedipus complex | <u>Yes</u> | child’s subconscious sexual attraction to the parent of the opposite sex |
| 3. neurosis | <u>No</u> | emotional disorder characterized by a loss of reality |
| 4. psychosis | <u>No</u> | cleansing of unhealthy emotions |

5. urbanism	<u>Yes</u>	relating to cities
6. acculturation	<u>Yes</u>	adopting new patterns of life after being exposed to a new society
7. culture	<u>No</u>	scientific study of mariners, art, music, and education
8. ethnic group	<u>Yes</u>	group within a society sharing the same traits, such as customs, nationality, and religion
9. ethnocentrism	<u>No</u>	person's social standing in society
10. gerontology	<u>No</u>	scientific study of adolescence
11. sanction	<u>Yes</u>	reinforces or discourages certain actions
12. status	<u>No</u>	relating to state government

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each of these academic terms that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning. *Answers will vary.*

1. **filibuster** _____

2. **gerrymandering** _____

3. **red herring** _____

4. **change of venue** _____

5. **plaintiff** _____

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions

Match each academic term with its definition.

- | | | |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| <u>f</u> | 1. eminent domain | a. legal notice requiring a person to give testimony in court |
| <u>e</u> | 2. habeas corpus | b. removal of the president or other high government officials from office |
| <u>i</u> | 3. extradite | c. crime punishable by death or a long prison sentence |
| <u>j</u> | 4. patronage | d. officeholder whose term is almost completed |
| <u>h</u> | 5. sedition | e. legal order requiring a person held in custody to be brought before the court |
| <u>k</u> | 6. recidivism | |
| <u>b</u> | 7. impeachment | |
| <u>l</u> | 8. misdemeanor | |
| <u>d</u> | 9. lame duck | |

-
- 10.** subpoena
 11. appropriation
 12. felony

- f.** gives government the legal right to seize private property
g. grant of money to finance a government program
h. public rebellion against the government
i. sending a prisoner to authorities in another state
j. elected officials' use of power to appoint supporters to government positions
k. backsliding to a previous behavior, such as a person returning to a life of crime
l. crime punishable by a fine and/or imprisonment

Mastering Confusing Words

Circle the correct answer.

1. After angrily slamming the door, Vicki (threw / through) her books on the table.
2. Would you like a piece of pecan pie for (desert / dessert)?
3. Jim keeps his (loose / lose) change in an old broken coffee cup.
4. Sharon went (farther / further) each day until she could comfortably jog three miles.
5. Anita cautioned, "Be careful that you don't (loose / lose) your car keys again."
6. It's hard to believe that this fertile region was once a vast (desert / dessert).
7. The judge asked the accused, "Do you have anything (farther / further) to say?"
8. After walking (threw / through) the lobby, you'll find the gift shop on your left.
9. Fred would never (desert / dessert) his friends if they needed his help.
10. The (capital / capitol) building was swarming with legislators, lobbyists, and media people.
11. Carson City, not Las Vegas, is the (capital / capitol) of Nevada.
12. I don't think (it's / its) going to snow because (it's / its) not cold enough.
13. I like the jacket, but I think (it's / its) color is too bright.

Crossword Puzzle

Solve the crossword by using the following academic terms:

foreshadowing
sibling
extrinsic
connotations

extrovert
satire
lobbyist
deduction

hyperbole
culpability
simile
utopia

injunction
matriarchal
critique

									¹ s										² f				³ m
⁴ c	o	n	n	o	t	a	t	i	o	n	s			⁵ u	t	o	p	i	a				
								m							r								t
					⁶ s	a	t	i	r	e					e								r
				⁷ c				l							s								i
⁸ h	y	p	e	r	b	o	l	e															a
				i																			r
				t										⁹ c	d								c
¹⁰ e	x	t	r	i	n	s	i	c							u	o							h
				q					¹¹ i						l	w							a
	¹² d	¹³ e	d	u	c	t	i	o	n						p	i							l
		x	e						j						a	n							
		t							u						b	g							
		r		¹⁴ s	i	b	l	i	n	g					i								
		o							c						l								
		v							t						i								
		e		¹⁵ l	o	b	b	y	i	s	t				t								
		r							o						y								
		t							n														

ACROSS

4. suggested meanings of words
5. imaginary place where everything is perfect
6. sarcastic humor
8. exaggeration
10. motivation coming from outside the person
12. reasoning starting with an accepted principle
14. a brother or a sister
15. a representative for a special-interest group

DOWN

1. comparison using *like* or *as*
2. hint as to what is going to happen
3. describes family headed by mother
7. an in-depth review
9. state of being guilty, deserving of blame
11. legal order barring a person from doing something
13. friendly, sociable person

Learning Business and Economic Terms from Context Clues: Set 1

A degree in business is the goal of thousands of college students; in addition, thousands of others elect, or are advised to take, a business or economics course so they can gain insight into the nation's economic system. Learning the terms included in this chapter will help you grasp the concepts dealt with in business and economics.

1. commodities (kə MOD i tēs)—noun

Products bought, sold, or traded.

Food, clothes, metals, and cars are among the country's chief *commodities*.

2. GNP (gross national product)—noun

The total value of goods and services produced by a nation's business during a specific period, usually a year.

GNP is the official measure of a nation's economic output.

3. balance of trade (BAL əns uv TRĀD)—noun + preposition + noun

The relationship between a nation's exports (what it sells to other countries) and its imports (what it buys from other countries).

The *balance of trade* for the United States in the past four months indicates that more goods were bought from other countries than were sold abroad.

4. reciprocity (RES ə PROS i tē)—noun

A mutual exchange policy in which each part grants the other corresponding privileges. (Informally, this policy is sometimes referred to as "If you'll scratch my back, I'll scratch yours.")

The two nations have a policy of *reciprocity* as they have removed the tariff on certain goods coming from each other's country.

5. assets (AS ets)—noun

All items of value owned by a person or persons.

The building, equipment, land, and patents are among the company's *assets*.

6. liabilities (LĪ ə BIL ə tēs)—noun

Debts owed to other firms or persons.

The store owner declared bankruptcy after his *liabilities* continued to exceed his assets.

7. solvency (SOL vən sē)—noun

The ability to meet one's financial obligations.

The firm's *solvency* enabled the board of directors to pay off all debts and to modernize the plant's equipment.

8. fiscal (FIS kəl)—adjective

Pertaining to financial matters.

The company's *fiscal* year begins on July 1.

9. inflationary (in FLĀ shə NER ē)—adjective

Describes a substantial rise in prices caused by an excessive expansion of paper money or bank credit.

The union representative argued that the company's salary offer did not match the rise in the cost of living caused by an extensive *inflationary* period.

10. recession (ri SESH ən)—noun

A prolonged economic period in which business is poor and unemployment is high. (Depression is used to describe a severe recession.)

A number of leading economists had predicted a *recession* during the second half of the year, but business and the employment rate continued to be good.

11. bear market, bull market (BĀR MAR kit, BUL MAR kit)—nouns

The stock market is the business of buying, selling, and trading of stocks, bonds, and other financial investments. A bear market refers to a falling stock market, that is, when such investments are declining in value. A bull market refers to a rising market, that is, when such investments are increasing in value.

Though my investments have continued to decline during the current *bear market*, my financial advisor said I shouldn't be discouraged because he was confident a *bull market* would occur before the year ended.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 1

Match each definition with the term it defines.

<u>i</u>	1. liabilities	a. stocks show positive growth
<u>k</u>	2. fiscal	b. showing a significant rise in prices
<u>h</u>	3. GNP	c. period of poor business and high unemployment
<u>j</u>	4. commodities	d. ability to meet financial obligations
<u>c</u>	5. recession	e. cash, property, and all other things of value
<u>a</u>	6. bull market	f. mutual exchange policy
<u>b</u>	7. inflationary	g. comparison between what a country sells and what it buys
<u>f</u>	8. reciprocity	h. total value of goods and services of a nation
<u>l</u>	9. bear market	i. debts
<u>e</u>	10. assets	j. products bought, sold, or traded
<u>d</u>	11. solvency	k. refers to financial concerns
<u>g</u>	12. balance of trade	l. stocks show a decrease in value

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 1

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

commodities balance of trade assets solvency inflationary bear
GNP reciprocity liabilities fiscal recession bull

1. A(n) inflationary period is especially hard on people with fixed incomes because an increase in their cost of living is not accompanied by a rise in their incomes.
2. Our company is one of the few I know of that uses a(n) fiscal year of forty-eight weeks in order to have twelve months of four weeks each.
3. “In the black financially” is one way solvency could be defined.
4. Commodities sold by this diversified organization include fruit juices, appliances, and plywood.
5. My investments increased dramatically in value during last year’s bull market, but, unfortunately, they have decreased in value just as dramatically during this year’s prolonged bear market.
6. As a whole, the country’s economy has suffered this year, resulting in a decline in the nation’s GNP.
7. Because of the economic recession, car sales, property transactions, and factory production figures have been well below average.

8. One indicator of a country's economic health is its balance of trade, that is, how its export sales and import purchases compare.
9. The corporation's financial picture is excellent as it possesses assets worth over twelve billion dollars whereas its liabilities, or debts, total less than one billion.
10. "If you'll scratch my back, I'll scratch yours" is an informal definition of reciprocity.

Related Meanings: Set 1

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| 1. commodities | <u>No</u> worthless products |
| 2. GNP | <u>Yes</u> gross national product |
| 3. assets | <u>Yes</u> valuable possessions |
| 4. balance of trade | <u>Yes</u> ratio of imports to exports |
| 5. fiscal | <u>No</u> healthy financial condition |
| 6. inflationary | <u>No</u> downward plunge in prices |
| 7. liabilities | <u>Yes</u> debts |
| 8. recession | <u>No</u> booming economic period |
| 9. reciprocity | <u>Yes</u> exchange of rights and privileges |
| 10. solvency | <u>Yes</u> sound financial condition |
| 11. bull market | <u>Yes</u> investors are happy |
| 12. bear market | <u>Yes</u> investors are unhappy |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 1

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in business and economics. Answers will vary.

1. commodities _____

2. GNP _____

3. balance of trade _____

4. reciprocity _____

5. assets _____

6. **liabilities** _____

7. **solvency** _____

8. **fiscal** _____

9. **inflationary** _____

10. **recession** _____

11. **bear market** _____

12. **bull market** _____

Learning Business and Economic Terms from Context Clues: Set 2

1. **portfolio** (port FŌ lē Ō)—noun

The collection of securities (stocks and bonds) held by a single investor.

By carefully managing her *portfolio* over the years, my aunt was able to retire at age fifty-five.

2. **entrepreneur** (AN trə prə NUR)—noun

A French term for an individual who develops an enterprise through innovation and risk taking.

The *entrepreneur* risked a fortune in establishing her unique business, which is now showing an impressive profit.

3. **CEO** (chief executive officer)—noun

The person ultimately responsible for all decisions affecting the management of an organization; generally reports to a board of directors.

A. S. Robinson, the *CEO*, has successfully guided the company for the past seven years.

4. franchise (FRAN chīz)—noun

A legal agreement granting an individual or group the right to sell a firm's products or services. Can also mean the businesses that operate under this agreement. After agreeing to the conditions stipulated in the contract, Mr. Sanchez was granted a *franchise* to operate one of the company's fast-food restaurants.

5. capital (KAP it ul)—noun

Wealth in the form of money or property.

Mr. Sanchez is also raising the necessary *capital* to secure a second franchise in another part of the city.

6. conglomerate (kən GLOM ər it)—noun

A corporation comprising companies that conduct a variety of unrelated businesses.

The *conglomerate* includes branches concerned with computers, batteries, and plumbing fixtures.

7. appreciation, depreciation (ə PRĒ shē Ā shən, di PRĒ shē Ā shən)—nouns

Appreciation is the increase in value of an asset; depreciation is the decline in value of an asset.

The land I owned near the city limits has shown a remarkable growth in *appreciation* over the past five years.

Years of mismanagement resulted in a *depreciation* of the company's manufacturing facilities.

8. affirmative action (ə FUR mə tiv AK shən)—adjective + noun

Action designed to increase opportunities for females and minorities through recruitment, training, and promotion so that they are fairly represented in the work force.

The company has hired many more women and Hispanics this past decade as a result of its *affirmative action* program.

9. divestiture (dī VEST i chər)—noun

The loss or voluntary surrender of property, interest, right, or title.

Because the corporation had an unfair advantage over its competitors, the court ordered a *divestiture* of certain of its assets.

10. obsolescence (OB sə LES əns)—noun

Condition when certain products are no longer marketable because of scientific or technological advances.

Typewriters are on the verge of *obsolescence* because of computers.

11. audit (AH dit)—noun, verb

An examination of the financial records of a business (noun); to examine the financial records of a business (verb).

Company officials have hired an accounting firm to conduct an independent *audit* of the company's financial records and procedures.

12. golden parachute (GÖL dən PAR ə SHOÖT)—adjective + noun

An exceedingly generous promise of pay and other benefits given to a top executive in case his or her company is taken over by another firm or he or she retires.

The CEO's *golden parachute*, which includes generous severance pay and other costly benefits, is being sharply criticized by the company's stockholders.

13. tariff (TAR if)—noun

Taxes on imported goods.

To protect domestic car makers, the government has placed a *tariff* on cars imported to this country.

14. cartel (kər TEL)—noun

A group of businesses that have joined together to control some industry.

An international oil *cartel* is responsible for the dramatic rise in gasoline prices.

15. embargo (em BAR gō)—noun

Official prohibition of trade by one nation against another.

Many countries have an *embargo* against that nation because of its failure to stop the export of illegal drugs.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 2

Match each definition with the term it defines.

A

<u> e </u>	1. divestiture	a. an increase in value
<u> d </u>	2. franchise	b. banning of trade by one nation against another
<u> h </u>	3. conglomerate	c. designed to promote fair career opportunities for females and minorities
<u> a </u>	4. appreciation	d. legal right to sell a firm's products
<u> g </u>	5. cartel	e. act of shedding property
<u> c </u>	6. affirmative action	f. securities owned by an investor
<u> b </u>	7. embargo	g. organization formed to establish a business monopoly
<u> f </u>	8. portfolio	h. many companies owned by a corporation

B

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|--|
| <u> b </u> | 1. tariff | a. products no longer marketable |
| <u> f </u> | 2. entrepreneur | b. taxes on imported goods |
| <u> h </u> | 3. golden parachute | c. wealth in the form of money or property |
| <u> e </u> | 4. CEO | d. a decline in value |
| <u> g </u> | 5. audit | e. chief executive officer of a business |
| <u> c </u> | 6. capital | f. a bold, daring business person |
| <u> d </u> | 7. depreciation | g. inspection of financial records |
| <u> a </u> | 8. obsolescence | h. lavish severance pay and other benefits |

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 2

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

A

portfolio	conglomerate	golden parachute	capital	audit
franchise	obsolescence	CEO	divestiture	

- The corporation sold two of its overseas businesses; this voluntary divestiture took its competitors by surprise.
- Her portfolio is diversified, ranging from oil and gas stocks to state and municipal bonds.
- My brother is in an executive training program for a(n) conglomerate that has numerous businesses here and abroad.
- Before he agreed to become CEO of the company, Mr. Andretti insisted on a(n) golden parachute in case he retired, was fired, or the company was sold.
- Quartz watches led to the obsolescence of watches run by windup springs.
- An independent audit of the company's financial records uncovered only a few minor irregularities.
- My cousin is trying to raise enough capital to buy a franchise from a nationally known bagel company.

B

entrepreneur	depreciation	tariff	embargo
appreciation	affirmative action	cartel	

- Protestors are urging the United States to impose a(n) embargo on that nation because of its widespread use of child labor.
- A(n) cartel was formed by neighboring countries in an attempt to control the price for their iron ore.

- Our sociology professor said that our country has benefited in many ways from affirmative action, such as by the greater number of women now admitted to medical schools.
- Major stockholders are concerned because the plant's equipment is fast becoming worn and outdated, resulting in a(n) depreciation of the plant's worth.
- The dynamic entrepreneur has earned the respect of the business world because her bold initiatives have helped to save what once was a failing company.
- Lobbyists for the fruit-producing states are urging Congress to levy a(n) tariff on all fruit, except for bananas, coming into this country.
- The astounding appreciation of real estate in this small community is due to the completion of a new highway, making possible a much easier commute to the city.

Related Meanings: Set 2

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|------------|---|
| 1. embargo | <u>Yes</u> | government banning of trade with a specific country |
| 2. tariff | <u>Yes</u> | tax on goods coming into a country |
| 3. capital | <u>Yes</u> | money and other forms of wealth |
| 4. affirmative action | <u>No</u> | steps recommended to increase profits |
| 5. cartel | <u>No</u> | license to operate a private business overseas |
| 6. depreciation | <u>No</u> | an increase in value |
| 7. entrepreneur | <u>No</u> | cautious investor |
| 8. franchise | <u>No</u> | tax on luxury goods |
| 9. audit | <u>Yes</u> | financial inspection |
| 10. conglomerate | <u>No</u> | government regulations businesses must observe |
| 11. divestiture | <u>Yes</u> | surrender of property |
| 12. golden parachute | <u>No</u> | an agreeable business merger |
| 13. CEO | <u>No</u> | Congressional Economical Opportunities |
| 14. obsolescence | <u>Yes</u> | passing out of use |
| 15. portfolio | <u>Yes</u> | person's financial holdings |
| 16. appreciation | <u>No</u> | decrease in value |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 2

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in business and economics. Answers will vary.

- portfolio _____

2. entrepreneur _____

3. CEO _____

4. franchise _____

5. capital _____

6. conglomerate _____

7. appreciation _____

8. depreciation _____

9. affirmative action _____

10. divestiture _____

11. obsolescence _____

12. audit _____

13. golden parachute _____

14. tariff _____

15. cartel _____

16. embargo _____

Completing a Passage: Business and Economics

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the terms listed below.

commodities liabilities GNP capital recession solvency bull
audit CEO assets franchises entrepreneurs bear

RAY KROC, FAST-FOOD PIONEER

Ray Kroc, the founder of the international McDonald's hamburger empire, was born in Chicago in 1902 and attended the public schools in a nearby suburb. However, after he and two friends raised sufficient capital to rent a store building, Ray dropped out of high school. The commodities, or products, these young and daring entrepreneurs had to sell were sheet music and musical instruments. Unfortunately for them, in only a few months their business lacked financial solvency (as a[n] audit would have clearly shown) because their liabilities far surpassed their assets. Having no other alternative, the unfortunate trio had to go out of business. Shortly afterward, Ray volunteered to be an ambulance driver for the Red Cross during World War I.

After the war, Ray, who had learned to play the piano from his mother, became a pianist for a couple of orchestras. After marrying, he went to work for the Lily-Tulip Cup Company for a short time before becoming the musical director at a Chicago radio station.

As a result of a strong bull market, the country's economy in the early and mid-1920s was booming, and Ray decided to seek his fortune by entering the growing real estate business in Florida. However, soon after he moved there with his wife and young daughter, the state's economy suffered a lengthy recession, putting the real estate business into a tailspin and making it necessary for Ray and his family to move back to Chicago, where he returned to the Lily-Tulip Cup Company as a sales representative.

In 1937, Ray Kroc came across a new invention, a machine that could mix five milkshakes at once. Despite the fact that the country was still feeling the effects of the bear market that triggered a prolonged economic depression, Ray, in 1941, decided to establish his own company to serve as the sole distributor of the "multimixer." This time, he experienced business success.

In 1954, Ray went to a San Bernardino, California, drive-in restaurant because he was curious about why its owners, Richard and Maurice McDonald, had bought not one but eight of his multimixers. Ray discovered that the McDonald brothers were running

an extremely popular restaurant selling only hamburgers, French fries, and milkshakes at a rapid pace and at very low prices. He was fascinated by the “assembly-line” format the McDonalds used to operate their restaurant. Ray soon became convinced that the “McDonald” approach could be successful with other drive-in restaurants.

After some negotiating, the McDonalds agreed to let Ray buy, as well as sell, McDonald franchises, thereby granting others the legal right (in return for an initial fee and a share of gross sales) to open a McDonald’s restaurant.

Ray Kroc opened the first of the chain of McDonald’s restaurants in Des Plaines, Illinois, in 1955. By 1961, over 130 outlets had been established, and Ray bought out the McDonald brothers for \$2.7 million. Now the sole CEO of the company, Ray quickly displayed a gift for franchising, marketing, and advertising, and McDonald’s restaurants continued to spring up and to succeed throughout the country.

Ray Kroc died in 1984 at the age of eighty-two, but his legacy continues to this day, as McDonald’s has grown to be a multi-billion-dollar enterprise with over 30,000 restaurants worldwide. In addition, the phenomenal success of McDonald’s has resulted in so many imitators over the years that the fast-food industry has become a major contributor to this nation’s GNP (value of goods produced).

FEATURED WORD: reciprocity

Reciprocity e-mutual or cooperative interchange of favors or privileges:

- The long-established reciprocity between Canada and the United States regarding trade has resulted in economic benefits to both countries.

Origin: <Latin—*reciprocus* (returning the same way). Reciprocal (done in exchange) dates from 1570, and reciprocate (to return, to pay in kind) from 1820.

Family words: reciprocal (adj), reciprocate (v), reciprocation (n)

Image to remember: people agreeing to trade favors (“If you’ll take care of my dog while I’m gone, then I’ll take care of yours when you go on vacation.”)

Write an original sentence using *reciprocity*:

—
—
—

MASTERING CONFUSING WORDS

disinterested / uninterested

disinterested without favoritism (impartial), neutral, unbiased:

Judges, umpires, and referees should perform their duties in a disinterested manner.

uninterested bored, lacking interest, uncaring:

Reggie went to the game with Sandra, but he was uninterested in the outcome.

Circle the correct answer:

1. Whitney was disinterested / uninterested in the art exhibit, so she only stayed for a few minutes.
2. We need disinterested / uninterested people to serve on the panel so that the floats will be judged on their merits, not on who made them.

Write original sentences using these words:

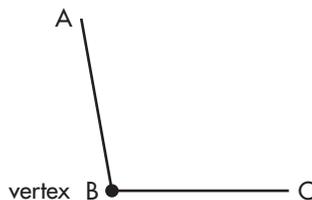
1. **disinterested:** _____
2. **uninterested:** _____

Learning Mathematics Terms from Context Clues: Set 1

In addition to those students intending to major in math, computer science, business, accounting, nursing, or any of the sciences, most students, regardless of their major, are required to take at least one or two math courses. Mastery of the fundamental math skills—adding, subtracting, multiplying, dividing—is necessary to succeed in higher-level math courses such as algebra, geometry, and calculus. If it's been some time since you took a math course, you should benefit from reviewing the basic math terms presented in this chapter.

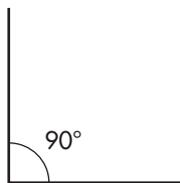
1. **angles** (ang gəls)—noun

Figures formed by two lines radiating from the same endpoint, called the **vertex** (VUR teks).



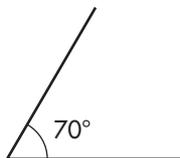
The three types of angles are the following:

A **right angle** is a 90° angle.



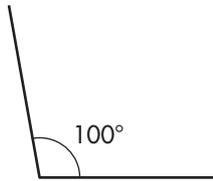
Right angle

An **acute** (ə KYOOT) **angle** measures less than 90° .



Acute angle

An **obtuse** (ob TOOS) **angle** measures more than 90° .



Obtuse angle

2. addition terms: addends (AD ends), **sum** (sum)—nouns

Addends are the numbers being added; the answer is called the *sum* (sum).

$$\begin{array}{r} 29 \text{ addend} \\ + 61 \text{ addend} \\ \hline 90 \text{ sum} \end{array}$$

3. average (AV rij)—noun

The sum of the addends in a row or column divided by the number of addends in the row or column.

$$\begin{array}{l} 46 + 52 + 39 + 43 = 180 \\ 180 \div 4 = 45 \text{ (the average)} \end{array}$$

4. axioms (AK sē əms), **postulates** (POS chə lāts)—nouns

Statements that are assumed to be true without proof.

Examples: “The whole is greater than its parts.”

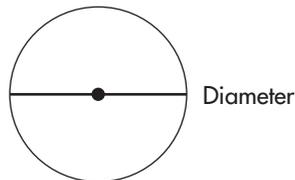
“Any straight line can be extended in either direction as far as is desired.”

5. circumference (sər KUM fər əns)—noun

The distance around a circle (a circle’s boundary).

6. diameter (dī AM ə tər)—noun

A straight line segment passing through the center of a figure, such as a circle.



7. division terms: dividend (DIV ə dend), **divisor** (də VĪ zər), **quotient** (KWŌ shənt)—nouns

The dividend is the number that the divisor divides to get the quotient, or the answer.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 39 & \div & 13 & = & 3 & & \\ \text{dividend} & & \text{divisor} & & \text{quotient} & & \end{array}$$

8. exponent (ek SPŌ nənt)—noun

The raised number above a number or symbol that indicates how many times the number or symbol is to be used as a factor.

$$\text{exponent} \rightarrow 4^2 = 4 \times 4$$

$$\text{exponent} \rightarrow 2^4 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2$$

$$\text{exponents} \rightarrow 2^2 a^3 = 2 \times 2 \times a \times a \times a$$

An exponent is expressed in terms of power; for example, 4^2 is expressed as 4 to the *second power* (4×4), and 5^3 is expressed as 5 to the *third power* ($5 \times 5 \times 5$), etc.

9. fractions (FRAK shəns), **mixed numbers** (MIKST NUM bərs)—nouns

Fractions can be proper or improper; both contain a top number (the *numerator*) and a bottom number (the *denominator*).

A proper fraction represents part of a whole.

$$\frac{3 \text{ numerator}}{4 \text{ denominator}}$$

The denominator indicates that the whole has been divided into four parts; the numerator indicates how many parts are being considered. For example, a cake (the whole) is divided into four parts (indicated by the denominator), and three pieces (indicated by the numerator) have been eaten.

In an improper fraction, the numerator is larger than the denominator.

$$\frac{7}{4}$$

The denominator, 4, indicates that the whole is made up of four parts, but the numerator, 7, indicates that we have more than the four parts, so we have more than the whole.

A mixed number is a whole number plus a proper fraction; $\frac{7}{4}$ could be changed to a mixed number by dividing the numerator by the denominator, resulting in $1\frac{3}{4}$ ($\frac{4}{4}$ make a whole, or one, and there are three-fourths left over, making $1\frac{3}{4}$).

10. subtraction terms

Minuend is the number from which another number is subtracted.

Subtrahend is the number subtracted from the minuend.

Difference is the answer when you have completed the subtraction.

$$\begin{array}{r} 8 \text{ minuend} \\ - 5 \text{ subtrahend} \\ \hline 3 \text{ difference} \end{array}$$

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 1

Match each definition with the term it defines.

A

- | | | |
|---------------|------------------|--|
| <u> </u> h | 1. exponent | a. whole number plus a fraction |
| <u> </u> g | 2. addends | b. angle of more than 90 degrees |
| <u> </u> e | 3. circumference | c. answer for a division problem |
| <u> </u> f | 4. axioms | d. number that divides another number |
| <u> </u> d | 5. divisor | e. distance around a circle |
| <u> </u> b | 6. obtuse | f. statements assumed to be true without proof |
| <u> </u> i | 7. dividend | g. numbers being added |
| <u> </u> a | 8. mixed number | h. raised number above a number or symbol |
| <u> </u> c | 9. quotient | i. number being divided |

B

- | | | |
|---------------|----------------------|--|
| <u> </u> f | 1. numerator | a. bottom number of a fraction |
| <u> </u> h | 2. right angle | b. angle of less than 90 degrees |
| <u> </u> e | 3. diameter | c. when the top number of a fraction is smaller than the bottom number |
| <u> </u> j | 4. vertex | d. the sum of addends divided by the number of addends |
| <u> </u> a | 5. denominator | e. distance across a figure measuring from one side through the exact center to the other side |
| <u> </u> c | 6. proper fraction | f. top number of a fraction |
| <u> </u> d | 7. average | g. when the top number of a fraction is larger than the bottom number |
| <u> </u> b | 8. acute angle | h. angle of 90 degrees |
| <u> </u> g | 9. improper fraction | i. answer to an addition problem |
| <u> </u> i | 10. sum | j. the common endpoint of two rays that form an angle |

Related Meanings: Set 1

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write *Yes* in the space; if they are unrelated, write *No*.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|------------|--|
| 1. sum | <u>No</u> | answer obtained after dividing |
| 2. axioms | <u>Yes</u> | postulates |
| 3. mixed number | <u>No</u> | number with a value over 100 |
| 4. acute angle | <u>Yes</u> | angle less than 90° |
| 5. addends | <u>Yes</u> | numbers that are added |
| 6. numerator | <u>Yes</u> | top number of a fraction |
| 7. exponent | <u>No</u> | answer obtained after adding |
| 8. right angle | <u>Yes</u> | a 90° angle |
| 9. proper fraction | <u>Yes</u> | when the numerator is smaller than the denominator |
| 10. dividend | <u>No</u> | number obtained when you add up a row of addends and then divide by the number of addends |
| 11. vertex | <u>No</u> | four-sided rectangle |
| 12. obtuse angle | <u>Yes</u> | angle greater than 90° |
| 13. diameter | <u>Yes</u> | a straight line passing through the center of a circle and meeting at opposite ends of the circumference |
| 14. sum | <u>No</u> | raised number above another number or symbol |
| 15. improper fraction | <u>Yes</u> | when the numerator is larger than the denominator |
| 16. quotient | <u>No</u> | number being divided |
| 17. average | <u>No</u> | statement generally known to be true |
| 18. circumference | <u>Yes</u> | outer boundary of a circle |
| 19. divisor | <u>Yes</u> | 4 is the divisor in this problem: $12 \div 4 = 3$ |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 1

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in mathematics. *Answers will vary.*

1. **proper fraction** _____

2. **average** _____

3. **dividend** _____

4. divisor _____

5. quotient _____

6. improper fraction _____

7. addends _____

8. sum _____

9. obtuse angle _____

10. exponent _____

11. mixed number _____

12. right angle _____

13. diameter _____

14. axioms _____

15. circumference _____

16. acute angle _____

17. vertex _____

Learning Mathematics Terms from Context Clues: Set 2

1. **mean** (MĒN)—noun

Mean is synonymous with average, that is, the sum of addends divided by the number of addends.

$$24 + 31 + 19 + 32 + 26 + 18 = 150; 150 \div 6 = 25 \text{ (the mean)}$$

2. **median** (MĒ dē ən)—noun

The number that separates the data into equal parts when the numbers are arranged from highest to lowest or lowest to highest. Here are the test scores for nine students arranged both ways:

99	73
97	76
94	78
88	82
85	85
82	88
78	94
76	97
73	99

The median is 85, as there are four numbers above 85 and four below 85; the median will be the same whether you arrange the numbers from highest to lowest or lowest to highest.

3. **mode** (MŌD)—noun

The number that occurs most frequently in a set of numbers.

17 19 22 17 15 19 21 17 22 17 25 17 14

Here the mode is 17 because it is the number occurring most frequently. This becomes clearer when you arrange the numbers again, either from highest to lowest or from lowest to highest:

25		14	
22		15	
21		17	###
19		19	
17	###	21	
15		22	
14		25	

To obtain the *mean* or *average* for this set of numbers, you would add all the numbers (including two 22s, two 19s, and five 17s), for a total of 242; then, dividing 242 by 13 (the total number of addends), you would get a mean or an

average of 18.6, or 19 if you round off to the nearest whole number. To determine the median for these numbers, you would arrange them either from highest to lowest or from lowest to highest (it doesn't matter which):

25	17
22	17
22	17
21	17
19	15
19	14
17	

The median for these numbers is 17 because there are six numbers above 17 and six below 17.

Making computations like the preceding for a set of figures is often helpful in making decisions, gaining insights, and coming to conclusions. For example, if you were the president of a campus organization and the preceding numbers were the attendance figures for the past thirteen meetings, by computing the *mean*, *mode*, and *median* as was done, you likely could gain valuable insights regarding such matters as the type of programs the members seem to prefer, what time of day or day of the week seems to be best for the meetings, and how the organization's attendance figures compared to those of other years.

- 4. multiplication terms: multiplicand** (MUL tə plə KAND), **multiplier** (MUL tə plī ər), **product** (PROD əkt)—nouns

The *multiplicand* is the number to be multiplied by another; the *multiplier* is the number that multiplies the multiplicand; and the *product* is the answer to a multiplication problem.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 46 = \textit{multiplicand} \\
 \times \underline{32} = \textit{multiplier} \\
 92 \\
 \underline{138} \\
 1,472 = \textit{product}
 \end{array}$$

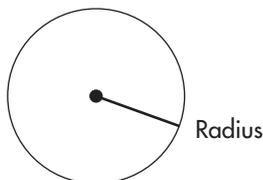
Multiplicands and multipliers are also called *factors* (FAK tərs).

- 5. perimeter** (pə RIM ə tər)—noun

The distance around a figure. (A circle's perimeter is the same as its circumference.)

6. radius (RĀ dē əs)—noun

A line segment from the exact center to a point on the circumference (or boundary) of the circle.



7. square root (SKWĀR ROOT)—adjective + noun

One of two identical factors of a number.

The square root of 25 is 5 ($5 \times 5 = 25$).

The square root of 36 is 6 ($6 \times 6 = 36$).

The square root of 49 is 7 ($7 \times 7 = 49$).

Squaring a number is taking it to its *second power*: $8^2 = 64$ (8×8), and cubing a number is taking it to its *third power*: $9^3 = 729$ ($9 \times 9 \times 9$). Squaring or cubing a number is indicated by the exponent above it: 5^2 , 6^3 , etc.

8. variable (VAR ē ə bəl)—noun

The letter of the alphabet used to stand for an unknown number or one that can change or vary. For example:

If you were going to charge \$8.00 for each ticket but you weren't sure how many tickets you would sell, you could represent this mathematically by using the variable n : $8 \times n$, or simply $8n$.

9. math symbols

+ plus or add ($7 + 5$)

− minus or subtract ($7 - 5$)

÷ divide ($9 \div 3$)

× multiply (9×3)

• also means to multiply ($9 \cdot 3$)

= equal ($5 = \frac{5}{1}$)

≠ not equal ($4 \neq 5$)

< less than ($4 < 5$)

> greater than ($5 > 4$)

$\sqrt{\quad}$ square root of a number ($\sqrt{4} = 2$)

% percent (78%) (Percent refers to parts of 100, and a percent is often rewritten as a decimal: $\frac{78}{100} = 78\% = .78$.)

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 2

Match each definition with the term it defines.

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|---|
| <u> j </u> | 1. mode | a. taking a number to its second power, such as 9^2 , or $9 \times 9 = 81$ |
| <u> h </u> | 2. product | b. one of two identical factors of a number, such as 8 is for 64 |
| <u> k </u> | 3. perimeter | c. line segment running from the exact center of a circle to a point on the circumference (or boundary) of the circle |
| <u> g </u> | 4. multiplicand | d. taking a number to its third power, such as 4^3 , or $4 \times 4 \times 4 = 64$ |
| <u> f </u> | 5. variable | e. has the same meaning as <i>average</i> |
| <u> b </u> | 6. square root | f. a letter used for an unknown number, such as the n in $10 \times n$ |
| <u> d </u> | 7. cubing a number | g. number being multiplied |
| <u> c </u> | 8. radius | h. answer for a multiplication problem, such as 36 in $9 \times 4 = 36$ |
| <u> e </u> | 9. mean | i. number that does the multiplying, such as 7 in 9×7 |
| <u> l </u> | 10. median | j. number occurring most often in a set of numbers |
| <u> i </u> | 11. multiplier | k. distance around a figure, such as a rectangle or square |
| <u> a </u> | 12. squaring a number | l. number separating a column of numbers into two equal groups |

Match each symbol with its meaning.

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| <u> f </u> | 1. \neq | a. square root |
| <u> g </u> | 2. $>$ | b. plus or add |
| <u> b </u> | 3. $+$ | c. multiply |
| <u> h </u> | 4. $\%$ | d. minus or subtract |
| <u> c </u> | 5. \times | e. equal |
| <u> j </u> | 6. $<$ | f. not equal |
| <u> e </u> | 7. $=$ | g. greater than |
| <u> c </u> | 8. \bullet | h. percent |
| <u> a </u> | 9. $\sqrt{\quad}$ | i. divide |
| <u> i </u> | 10. \div | j. less than |
| <u> d </u> | 11. $-$ | |

Related Meanings: Set 2

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write *Yes* in the space; if they are unrelated, write *No*.

1. product	<u>Yes</u>	48 in $8 \times 6 = 48$
2. =	<u>Yes</u>	equal
3. median	<u>Yes</u>	number separating numbers into two equal groups
4. $\sqrt{\quad}$	<u>Yes</u>	square root
5. perimeter	<u>No</u>	angle less than 90°
6. %	<u>Yes</u>	percent
7. variable	<u>No</u>	number occurring most often in a set of numbers
8. cubing	<u>Yes</u>	6^3 or $6 \times 6 \times 6 = 216$
9. >	<u>No</u>	less than
10. multiplier	<u>Yes</u>	6 in $12 \times 6 = 72$
11. <	<u>No</u>	greater than
12. squaring	<u>Yes</u>	8^2 or $8 \times 8 = 64$
13. \neq	<u>Yes</u>	not equal
14. +	<u>Yes</u>	add or plus
15. \times	<u>Yes</u>	multiply
16. multiplicand	<u>Yes</u>	9 in $9 \times 7 = 63$
17. \cdot	<u>Yes</u>	multiply
18. mean	<u>No</u>	largest number in a group of numbers
19. mode	<u>No</u>	letter of the alphabet standing for an unknown number

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 2

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term or symbol that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in mathematics. *Answers will vary.*

1. mean _____

2. multiplicand _____

3. + _____

4. squaring a number _____

5. = _____

6. • _____

7. % _____

8. mode _____

9. product _____

10. multiplier _____

11. > _____

12. perimeter _____

13. × _____

14. cubing a number _____

15. variable _____

16. median _____

17. $\sqrt{\quad}$ _____

18. \neq _____

19. < _____

20. \div _____

Completing a Passage: Mathematics

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the terms or symbols listed below.

numerator quotient % + dividend < × ± divisor -
exponents denominator variables > = $\sqrt{\quad}$ ÷ •

MATH SYMBOLS

There are many languages in the world—Spanish, French, Italian, English, Arabic, Chinese, Bengali, German, Portuguese, Japanese, and many, many others—and no one knows them all. But math concepts are the same for people the world over; 2 plus 2 equals 4 is true in all countries. In addition, Arabic numerals (1, 2, 3, etc.) are universally used, so if a person can solve a math problem in the United States, he or she can solve the same problem anywhere in the world.

Math symbols (+, −, ×, etc.) are also used universally, but unlike math concepts that were discovered, math symbols were invented. For example, _____ + _____, the sign to add, was adapted from the Latin word for “and” (*et*) by a French mathematician in the 1300s. A math book published in Belgium in 1514 used _____ − _____, the minus symbol, as well as the plus symbol. Both of these symbols came into general use in much of Europe by the late 1500s. _____ × _____, the symbol for multiplication, first appeared in *Clavis Mathematicae (Keys to Mathematics)*, published in London in 1631. The other symbol for multiplication, _____ • _____, was first used by a German mathematician in the 1600s because he thought the existing multiplication symbol was too easily confused with the letter x. The obelus, or _____ ÷ _____, was first used as a division symbol in an algebra textbook published in 1659. However, by the 1800s, math textbooks in the United States were showing the _____ *dividend* _____ (number being divided), the _____ *divisor* _____ (number doing the dividing), and the _____ *quotient* _____ (answer) in the manner students are most familiar with, as in this example:

$$\begin{array}{r} 4 \\ 13 \overline{)52} \end{array}$$

The equal sign, _____ = _____, first appeared in 1557 in a book by Robert Recorde, and the sign of inequality, _____ ≠ _____, is attributed to an 18th-century mathematician by the name of Euler. The symbols for “greater than,” _____ > _____, and “less than,” _____ < _____, came into use after Thomas Harriot published his

textbook in 1631. The use of exponents, or raised numbers, such as the 3 in 12^3 , was adopted by other mathematicians after René Descartes (1596–1650) began using them.

%, or the percent symbol, is believed to have evolved from a symbol used in an anonymous Italian manuscript published in the late 1400s. The use of variables, that is, letters that stand for numbers, can be traced back thousands of years to the ancient Greek civilization.

Fractions were commonly used centuries ago by both Hindus and Arabs, and the horizontal bar separating the numerator and denominator is attributed to al-Hassan, who lived in the 1200s. $\sqrt{\quad}$, the square root symbol, first appeared in 1525, and it is credited to Rudolf Coss, a German mathematician.

Because the same math principles, numerals, and symbols are used throughout the world, it can be said that math is a universal “language” we all share.

FEATURED WORD: postulate

Postulate—statement assumed to be true without proof; used as a basis for argument and reasoning:

- Euclid, a Greek who lived in the third century B.C., is credited with developing the principles of geometry based on five postulates, or axioms. One of Euclid's postulates is this: All right angles are congruent (correspond or coincide).

Origin: <Latin—*postulare* (to assume)

Family words: postulated (v), postulating (v), postulation (n), postulator (n)

Image to remember: students solving challenging math problems

Write an original sentence using *postulate*:

who's a contraction of *who is*:

Who's going to volunteer to go to the post office to mail this package?

(If you can say, "Who is going to volunteer to go to the post office to mail this package?" then you can use Who's; if you can't substitute who is for who's, then use whose.)

whose a possessive (showing ownership) pronoun:

Whose car is parked in the driveway?

(It is nonsensical to say, "Who is car is parked in the driveway?" If you are in doubt as to whether to write who's or whose, substitute who is for who's; if the sentence sounds okay, then who's can be used, but if the sentence sounds awkward, use whose.)

Circle the correct answer:

1. Does anyone know who's / whose books these are?
2. Jake's a nice guy who's / whose going to do well in the business world.
3. Marjorie, who's / whose thinking of transferring to a smaller college, is in the second semester of her sophomore year.
4. Gary, who's / whose personality has really blossomed this year, was recently elected to the student senate.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **who's:** _____
2. **whose:** _____

Learning Biological Science Terms from Context Clues: Set 1

The biological sciences, which are devoted to the study of the functions and structures of living organisms, include biology, zoology, botany, entomology, microbiology, physiology, genetics, and a number of other sciences as well. A major in one or more of the biological sciences is a popular choice for students interested in careers in medicine, wildlife, forestry, the environment, teaching, and careers having to do with various types of animal or plant life.

Knowledge of the terms in this chapter will be a major asset to you when you take a biological science course.

1. **biology** (bī OL ə jē)—noun

The study of living organisms, including their structure, function, development, and distribution.

Natalie has enjoyed all of her high school science courses, but particularly those having to do with animals and plants, so she is seriously considering *biology* as her college major.

2. **zoology** (zō OL ə jē)—noun

The branch of biology specializing in the study of animals.

Matthew is majoring in *zoology* as he hopes to be a veterinarian some day.

3. **botany** (BOT ə nē)—noun

The branch of biology specializing in the study of plants.

My cousin's landscaping business resulted from his initial interest in *botany*.

4. **entomology** (en tə MOL ə jē)—noun

The branch of biology specializing in the study of insects.

Mr. Bryson, who has a master's degree in *entomology*, was consulted by the Peach Growers Association when some type of insect began infesting the peach orchards in the state.

5. **microbiology** (Mī krō bī OL ə jē)—noun

The branch of biology specializing in the study of microorganisms and their effects on other living organisms.

Since *microbiology* involves the study of living organisms too small to be seen by the unaided eye, powerful microscopes must be used.



Entomologists study insects such as butterflies. (Royalty Free/Jupiter Images)

6. physiology (FIZ e OL ə je)—noun

The biological study of the functions of living organisms and their parts. The nursing degree program includes a challenging course in *physiology* because nurses must understand the functions of the human body.

7. genetics (jə NET ɪks)—noun

The branch of biology devoted to the study of genes, which are responsible for the hereditary characteristics of people and other living organisms. In *genetics* class, our professor discussed the possibility of altering an organism's genes to prevent the development of abnormalities and disease.

8. chromosomes (KRO mə sɒms)—noun

Microscopic, threadlike bodies in the nucleus of a cell that determine the particular characteristics of an organism; each cell in a human body has forty-six chromosomes. The majority of animal and plant species have between ten and fifty *chromosomes*.

9. genes (JENZ)—noun

Elements in chromosomes that control the development of hereditary characteristics.

The color of a person's eyes is determined by *genes*.

10. mutation (mu TĀshən)—noun

A change in the genes of an organism that is transmitted to the offspring, resulting in offspring differing in some significant way from the parents.

Professor Bailey said that while the effects of a *mutation* on offspring can sometimes be beneficial, generally a *mutation* results in harmful abnormalities.

11. symbiosis (sim bē Ō sis)—noun

The general meaning of this term is “living together.” In biology, it refers to two different types of organisms living together for their mutual benefit.

The *symbiosis* between an Egyptian plover bird and a crocodile results in mutual benefit for them both, as the bird eats parasites that are harmful to the crocodile, while the crocodile protects the bird from those who would otherwise prey on it.

12. fauna, flora (FON ə, FLOR ə)—nouns

Fauna are the animals and flora are the plants of a particular region or period. Some citizens are protesting the planned draining of the bog because they fear the draining will destroy the *fauna* and *flora*, that is, the animals and plants native to the bog region.

13. habitat (HAB ə tat)—noun

The natural physical area where an animal or a plant lives and thrives.

The *habitat* for seals is the seashore and the ocean.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 1

Match each definition with the term it defines.

- | | | |
|---------|------------------------|---|
| _____ i | 1. microbiology | a. study of the parts and functions of living organisms |
| _____ e | 2. mutation | b. threadlike bodies in cells responsible for hereditary characteristics |
| _____ m | 3. genetics | c. animals of a particular region or period |
| _____ b | 4. chromosomes | d. branch of biology devoted to the study of animals |
| _____ j | 5. flora | e. abnormality caused by a change in a parent's genes |
| _____ d | 6. zoology | f. mutual relationship that benefits both species |
| _____ l | 7. habitat | g. study of insects |
| _____ k | 8. biology | h. elements in chromosomes responsible for eye color and other characteristics |
| _____ c | 9. fauna | i. study of microorganisms |
| _____ n | 10. botany | |
| _____ a | 11. physiology | |

- _____ f _____ 12. symbiosis
 _____ h _____ 13. genes
 _____ g _____ 14. entomology
- j. plant life of a particular region or period
 k. study of living organisms (plants and animals), including their structure, function, development, and distribution
 l. natural physical area where an animal or a plant lives
 m. concentrated study of genes
 n. branch of biology specializing in the study of plants

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 1

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

mutation	habitat	physiology	genes	flora
fauna	chromosomes	genetics	microbiology	symbiosis
biology	zoology	entomology	botany	

- The hereditary factors lying within chromosomes are called genes.
- Meat ants and leaf hoppers live in symbiosis, as the ants receive a rich food source from the hoppers, and the hoppers in return are protected from their enemies by the ants.
- Surprisingly, glacial ice is the natural habitat of numerous plants, which are considered among the world's hardiest flora.
- A sudden change, called a(n) mutation, in an organism's makeup usually results in detrimental effects.
- Chromosomes contain genes, or hereditary units.
- The fauna of Montana include(s) a variety of many large and small animals.
- Because you've been intrigued with insects since you were a youngster, you should consider majoring in entomology.
- I like my botany class, but learning the Latin names of the many plants we study takes me hours.
- During the next three years, Nancy, a pre-med major, said she would be taking courses in physiology to learn about the functions and structures of the human body, another in microbiology to learn about microorganisms and their effects on humans, and a course her senior year in genetics, to learn how genes determine certain human characteristics.
- My introductory course in biology is a challenge because it includes an extensive study of both animal and plant life as well as a three-hour laboratory session every week.
- Zachary took a course in zoology during the fall semester, and this opportunity to study animals in depth has sparked an interest in veterinarian medicine.

Related Meanings: Set 1

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | | |
|-----------------|------------|--|
| 1. chromosomes | <u>No</u> | essential vitamins |
| 2. genes | <u>Yes</u> | hereditary units |
| 3. habitat | <u>Yes</u> | home |
| 4. mutation | <u>No</u> | maturity |
| 5. botany | <u>No</u> | study of insects |
| 6. biology | <u>Yes</u> | study of plant and animal life |
| 7. flora | <u>Yes</u> | plant life of a particular region or period |
| 8. microbiology | <u>No</u> | study of the effects of electricity on humans |
| 9. entomology | <u>No</u> | study of flowers and other plant life |
| 10. zoology | <u>Yes</u> | study of animal life |
| 11. fauna | <u>Yes</u> | animal life of a particular area or period |
| 12. genetics | <u>Yes</u> | study of genes |
| 13. physiology | <u>Yes</u> | study of the functions and parts of living organisms |
| 14. symbiosis | <u>No</u> | destruction of harmful fauna and flora |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 1

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in the biological sciences. Answers will vary.

1. **mutation** _____

2. **physiology** _____

3. **biology** _____

4. **flora** _____

5. **genes** _____

6. **botany** _____

7. **habitat** _____

8. **symbiosis** _____

9. **zoology** _____

10. **fauna** _____

11. **microbiology** _____

12. **genetics** _____

13. **entomology** _____

14. **chromosomes** _____

Learning Biological Science Terms from Context Clues: Set 2

1. **congenital** (kən JEN ə təl)—adjective

Inborn or existing since birth.

Jeremy says that he has never been able to distinguish between certain colors, including shades of blue and brown, very well. Color blindness like Jeremy's is a *congenital* condition.

2. **homeostasis** (hōm ē ō STĀsis)—noun

A body's tendency to maintain its internal systems in a normal stable condition.

Homeostasis occurs when a person, in an effort to maintain a normal oxygen level, automatically breathes deeply after running.

3. **dormant** (DOR mənt)—adjective

Describes an organism at rest and not developing.

Seeds will remain *dormant* until the temperature and other environmental conditions are suitable for sprouting.

4. **prolific** (prō LIF ik)—adjective

Producing offspring in abundance.

As a result of their frequent litters, rabbits are well known as *prolific* breeders.

5. **taxonomy** (tak SON ə mē)—noun

The systematic classification of animals and plants into categories.

Taxonomy places organisms with similar structures in the same category.

6. **vertebrates, invertebrates** (VUR tə brātes, in VUR tə brātes)—nouns

Animals with backbones are vertebrates; animals without backbones are invertebrates.

Dogs are included in the taxonomy classifying *vertebrates* because they have backbones; worms, on the other hand, are listed in the taxonomy classifying *invertebrates*, because they have no backbones.

7. **carnivorous** (kar NIV ə rəs),

herbivorous (hur BIV ə rəs),

omnivorous (om NIV ə rəs)—adjectives

A taxonomy relating to animals makes these distinctions for these terms: carnivorous animals eat primarily meat; herbivorous animals eat primarily plants; omnivorous animals eat both meat and plants.

Wolves are *carnivorous*; cows are *herbivorous*; humans, because we eat both plants and animals, are *omnivorous*.

8. **hominids** (HOM ə nids)—noun

The human family and their ancestors, including extinct humanlike types.

Prehistoric humans are considered *hominids*.

9. **plankton** (PLANK tən)—noun

The microscopic plants and animals floating near the surface in almost all bodies of water.

Important food sources for most fish are the tiny animals and plants, known as *plankton*, drifting in the water.

10. **hybrid** (HĪ brid)—noun

The crossbreed of offspring of two animals or plants from different species.

A mule is a *hybrid* resulting from the mating of a horse and a donkey.

11. protoplasm (PRŌ tə plaz əm)—noun

A chemically complex, colorless semifluid considered the physical basis of life. Scientists believe that *protoplasm* is the building block of all animal life.

12. metabolism (mə TAB ə liz əm)—noun

An inclusive term used to refer to all the chemical reactions by which the cells of an organism transform energy, maintain their identity, and reproduce.

All life forms, from single-celled plants to multicelled humans, depend on hundreds of precisely regulated processes known collectively as *metabolism*.

13. ossification (os ə fə KĀ shən)—noun

Formation and hardening of the bones.

As people mature, their bones harden, a process called *ossification*.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 2

Match each definition with the term it defines.

A

<u>h</u>	1. vertebrates	a. hardening of the bones
<u>g</u>	2. prolific	b. eating plants
<u>f</u>	3. hominids	c. the systematic classification of plants and animals
<u>e</u>	4. plankton	d. the tendency for a body to balance itself internally
<u>b</u>	5. herbivorous	e. extremely small animals and plants living near the surface of water
<u>d</u>	6. homeostasis	f. humans and their ancestors
<u>a</u>	7. ossification	g. producing a large number of offspring
<u>c</u>	8. taxonomy	h. animals with backbones

B

<u>d</u>	1. invertebrates	a. in a state of inactivity
<u>f</u>	2. omnivorous	b. result when two plants or animals of different species are bred
<u>e</u>	3. congenital	c. semifluid substance considered the basis of all life
<u>a</u>	4. dormant	d. animals lacking spines
<u>h</u>	5. carnivorous	e. inborn, existing since birth
<u>c</u>	6. protoplasm	f. eating both plants and animals
<u>b</u>	7. hybrid	g. term referring to all of a body's chemical and physical processes
<u>g</u>	8. metabolism	h. eating meat

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 2

A

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

metabolism	herbivorous	protoplasm	dormant
hominids	ossification	omnivorous	vertebrates

1. Flower bulbs are dormant in the winter, but they develop shoots in the spring.
2. The primitive Java man is classified with hominids because he is considered a human ancestor.
3. Birds are vertebrates because they have spines.
4. Because of ossification, bones are more brittle as a person ages.
5. Protoplasm is a semifluid substance considered the building block of all animal life.
6. Metabolism is the term used for the normal chemical and physical activities, such as those involved in digestion and circulation, taking place within living organisms.
7. Horses and zebras are herbivorous animals as they eat only grass and other plant life, whereas crows and raccoons are omnivorous as they eat both plant life and meat.

B

prolific	homeostasis	invertebrates	carnivorous
plankton	taxonomy	congenital	hybrid

1. The veterinarian said my puppy was born with a defective heart valve, a congenital condition that wasn't correctible.
2. Cheetahs and snow leopards eat mainly meat, so they are carnivorous animals.
3. That particular brand of corn is a hybrid developed by cross-pollinating two different varieties.
4. Taxonomy is concerned with the systematic classification of plants and animals based on similar features; for example, crocodiles, lizards, and snakes are classified as reptiles because they all have horny skins and their offspring are hatched from eggs.
5. Plankton are tiny animals and plants that drift in most bodies of water.
6. Homeostasis is the term used to describe an organism's natural tendency to keep its system in normal condition, such as by maintaining the same internal temperature despite external conditions.

7. Snails and spiders don't have backbones, so they are classified as invertebrates.
8. Fish are prolific as they produce thousands of eggs.

Related Meanings: Set 2

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | | |
|------------------|------------|---|
| 1. plankton | <u>Yes</u> | tiny water plants and animals |
| 2. taxonomy | <u>No</u> | dissection of animals |
| 3. vertebrates | <u>Yes</u> | animals with spines |
| 4. invertebrates | <u>Yes</u> | animals with no backbones |
| 5. hominids | <u>No</u> | organisms that live only in water |
| 6. herbivorous | <u>Yes</u> | primarily plant eating |
| 7. carnivorous | <u>No</u> | eating both plants and animals |
| 8. omnivorous | <u>No</u> | primarily meat eating |
| 9. homeostasis | <u>No</u> | organisms native to a specific region or period |
| 10. congenital | <u>Yes</u> | inborn |
| 11. protoplasm | <u>No</u> | hardening of the bones |
| 12. metabolism | <u>Yes</u> | sum of body's internal chemical and physical activities |
| 13. ossification | <u>No</u> | semifluid considered to be the building block for all animals |
| 14. hybrid | <u>Yes</u> | offspring of two different species |
| 15. dormant | <u>No</u> | active state |
| 16. prolific | <u>No</u> | intelligent |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 2

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in the biological sciences. Answers will vary.

- taxonomy _____

- dormant _____

- congenital _____

- vertebrates _____

- 5. **invertebrates** _____

- 6. **prolific** _____

- 7. **homeostasis** _____

- 8. **carnivorous** _____

- 9. **herbivorous** _____

- 10. **omnivorous** _____

- 11. **ossification** _____

- 12. **plankton** _____

- 13. **protoplasm** _____

- 14. **hominids** _____

- 15. **metabolism** _____

- 16. **hybrid** _____

Completing a Passage: Biological Sciences

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the terms listed below.

prolific
dormant

congenital
habitat

botany
hybrids

symbiosis
mutations

flora
genetics

GREGOR JOHANN MENDEL

Gregor Johann Mendel (1822–1884) is considered to be the “father of modern genetics” because he is recognized as the first scientist to study heredity in a comprehensive, systematic manner.

Mendel was born in what was then a part of the Austrian Empire but is today a part of the Czech Republic. When he was twenty-one, he entered St. Thomas Monastery in Moravia to study for the priesthood. In addition to being a monastery, St. Thomas was also an outstanding center for all types of study, including those focused on the sciences. The monastery grounds included a botanical garden that featured the flora of the area as well as cultivated plants that could also thrive in that particular habitat.

Mendel did become a priest, but it soon became obvious he was better suited to be a teacher. As a result, he was sent to study science and mathematics at the University of Vienna, returning to St. Thomas Monastery after two years. Inspired by his university teachers, Mendel became intensely interested in botany, particularly in the many variations of plants. He had learned scientific research skills while at the University of Vienna. Shortly after his return to St. Thomas, Mendel began his experiments relating to heredity by using thirty-four different kinds of peas. One of his interests was developing hybrids through crossbreeding. His research required the use of thousands of plants, and because peas are reasonably prolific in reproducing, they were well suited for his purposes.

During an eight-year period, Mendel cultivated and tested over 28,000 pea plants, carefully analyzing pairs of seeds and plants for their hereditary characteristics, which included unexpected mutations that were sometimes advantageous but most often were not. He also discovered that plants and other organisms, such as certain types of worms, often lived in symbiosis, an arrangement that helped each to benefit in a significant way.

Mendel believed it was essential to observe his experimental plants in all their stages, including when they were dormant, or inactive. As a result of long and

careful studies, Mendel eventually discovered that he could predict with great accuracy the pattern of hereditary features that would appear in the various species of the plants in each generation.

Mendel published his important findings on heredity in 1866. His research abilities enabled him to express his results mathematically and statistically, and his findings were eventually recognized as being among the most important ones in the history of science.

In fact, Gregor Johann Mendel's pioneer work relating to heredity heralded the development of genetics into a specialized science. This field of science has advanced to the point that many of today's geneticists confidently say that we will be able to prevent congenital diseases and abnormalities that currently afflict thousands of newborns every year.

FEATURED WORD: **homeostasis**

Homeostasis—an organism's innate tendency to maintain its physiological processes in equilibrium:

- Jack said he was dizzy after his first ride on a roller coaster, but thanks to good old homeostasis, he laughingly added, his balance returned to normal after a few minutes.

Origin: <Greek—*homoios* (like) and *stasis* (stoppage, standing)

Family words: homeostatic (adj)

Image to remember: someone regaining his or her breath after running

Write an original sentence using *homeostasis*:

imply to throw out a suggestion without directly stating it:

Joanna's smiles seem to imply she had been accepted at the college she most wanted to attend.

infer to draw a conclusion:

I could infer from my dad's scowl that he wasn't happy I hadn't shoveled the snow from the driveway.

Circle the correct answer:

1. From our professor's coy remarks, she seemed to imply / infer that we would have a pop quiz at our next class meeting; what did you imply / infer from what she said?
2. I didn't mean to imply / infer from my snickering that Jackson isn't a good player, so you'd be wrong to imply / infer that he isn't; to tell you the truth, I snickered in sympathy with you because you're going to have your hands full trying to keep him from scoring points.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **imply:** _____

2. **infer:** _____

Learning Physical Science Terms from Context Clues: Set 1

Physical sciences can refer to general science courses or courses focused primarily on geology, astronomy, chemistry, physics, or other specialties. Physical science courses contribute to our understanding of the hows and whys of our world and universe. Developments in the various subdivisions of physical science have led to advances in agriculture, industry, engineering, medicine, and many other fields. This chapter presents an opportunity to become familiar with some of the basic terms used in physical science courses.

1. geology (jē OL ə jē)—noun

The scientific study of the origin, history, and structure of the earth.

Earthquakes, landslides, volcanoes, and mineral resources are among the many subjects that are studied in *geology*.

2. topography (tə POG rə fē)—noun

The detailed mapping or description of the surface features of a region.

The state of New York's varied *topography* includes lakes, rivers, mountains, valleys, forests, and plains.

3. sedimentary rocks (sed ə MEN tə rē ROKS)—adjective + noun

Rocks formed from the deposits of sediment (sand or other small fragments of solids).

Sedimentary rocks are soft rocks, and they are often found in layers (strata).

4. metamorphic rocks (met ə MOR fik ROKS)—adjective + noun

Rocks formed from sedimentary rocks that have been subjected to great pressure and heat beneath the earth's surface; they are the most common rocks in the earth's crust.

Metamorphic rocks are hard; marble, for example, is a *metamorphic rock*.

5. igneous rocks (IG nē əs ROKS)— adjective + noun

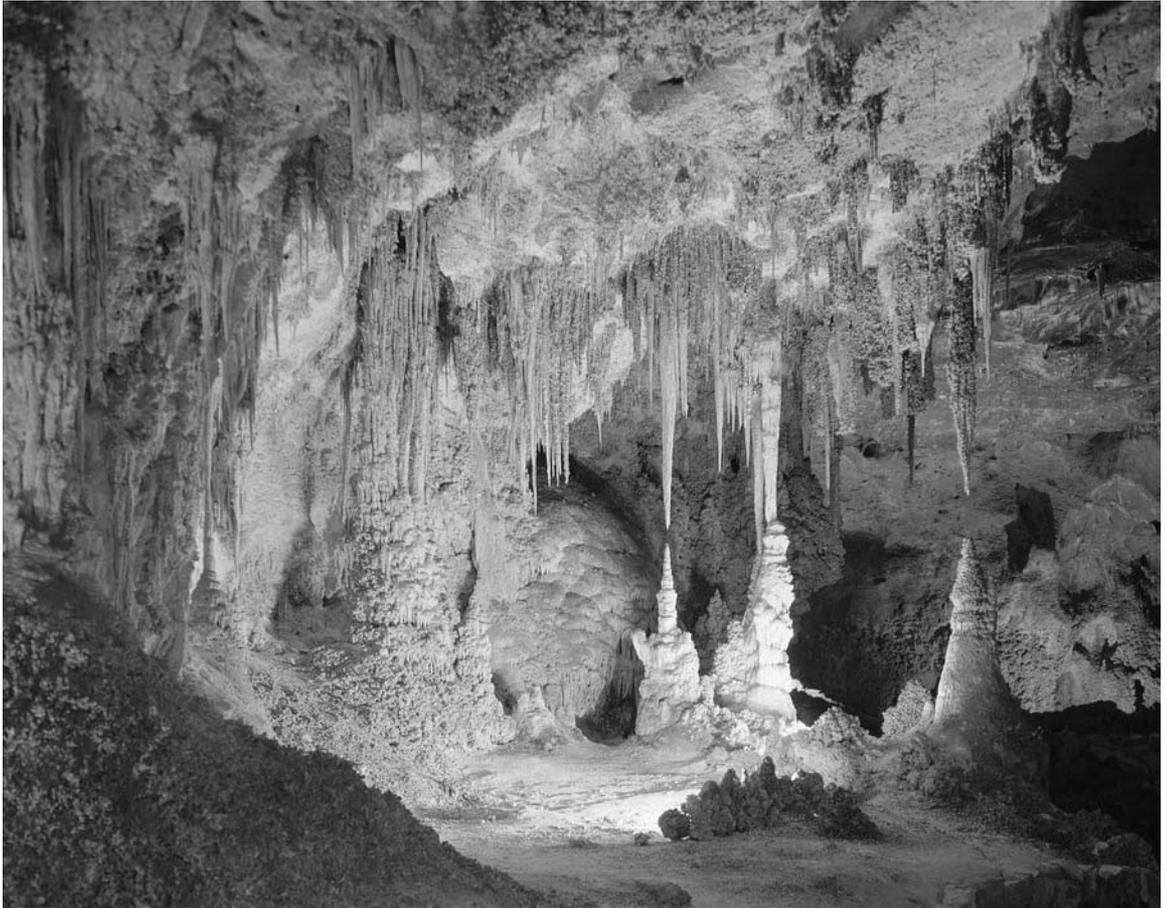
Rocks formed from cooled magma (hot liquid rock formed within the earth).

Granite and basalt are *igneous rocks*.

6. stalactites (stə LAK tīts)—noun

Icicle-shaped rocky deposits hanging from the roofs of caves.

Stalactites are formed on the roofs of caves from the drippings of water containing certain minerals.



This photo of Chinese Theater in Carlsbad Caverns shows both *stalactites* and *stalagmites*.
(© David Muench/CORBIS)

7. stalagmites (stə LAG mīts)—noun

Rocky deposits that build up on the floors of caves.

Stalagmites are formed by the drippings of water containing certain minerals; they resemble upside-down stalactites. (To distinguish between stalactites and stalagmites, remember that stalagmites MIGHT reach the ceiling of the roof someday.)

8. meteorology (mē tē ə ROL ə jē)—noun

The science concerned with the earth's atmosphere, particularly its weather and climate.

In *meteorology*, weather refers to atmospheric conditions at a particular time; climate, on the other hand, refers to the average weather conditions over a period of years.

9. astronomy (ə STRON ə mē)—noun

The science concerned with the study of the universe beyond the earth's atmosphere.

Astronomy includes the study of the moon, sun, stars, planets, and asteroids (asteroids are sometimes referred to as minor planets).

10. solar, lunar (SŌ lər, LOO nər)—adjectives

Solar refers to the sun, and lunar refers to the moon.

Some houses are built or modified to take advantage of *solar* energy.

The period between full moons is called a *lunar* month.

11. celestial (sə LES chəl)—adjective

Relating to the sky or the heavens.

The Big Dipper is among the best-known *celestial* figures formed by stars.

12. zenith, nadir (ZĒ nith, NĀ dər)—nouns

Zenith is the highest point in the sky, or the point directly above the observer;

nadir is the lowest point, or the point directly beneath a given position.

This month, the Big Dipper is at its *zenith*, or highest point, but in a few months, it will be at its *nadir*, or lowest point.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 1

Match each definition with the term it defines.

- | | | |
|---------------|------------------------|--|
| <u> </u> i | 1. igneous | a. rocky deposits that have formed on cave floors |
| <u> </u> c | 2. astronomy | b. rocks most common in the earth's crust |
| <u> </u> j | 3. nadir | c. study of the solar system and other matter beyond the earth's atmosphere |
| <u> </u> l | 4. meteorology | d. study of a region's surface features |
| <u> </u> a | 5. stalagmites | e. relating to the sky or the heavens |
| <u> </u> h | 6. zenith | f. rocks formed from deposits of sediment |
| <u> </u> m | 7. geology | g. rocky deposits hanging from cave roofs |
| <u> </u> k | 8. solar | h. highest point |
| <u> </u> b | 9. metamorphic | i. rocks formed from cooled magma |
| <u> </u> n | 10. lunar | j. lowest point |
| <u> </u> g | 11. stalactites | k. pertains to the sun |
| <u> </u> f | 12. sedimentary | l. science of weather and climate |
| <u> </u> e | 13. celestial | m. study of the earth's origin, history, and structure |
| <u> </u> d | 14. topography | n. pertains to the moon |

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 1

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

geology topography stalagmites metamorphic solar
astronomy stalactites nadir sedimentary
igneous zenith meteorology lunar

- Granite, used to create buildings, stairs, and other structures, is a(n) igneous rock.
- Oddly shaped stalactites could be seen hanging from the cave's roof while large stalagmites had built up on the cave's floor.
- Topography includes the study of cartography (mapmaking) because maps contribute to a comprehensive understanding of an area's surface features.
- Sedimentary rocks are soft rocks often found in layers, or strata.
- The Raymonds have solar panels on their house roof, and they say the sun's rays provide them with an economical source of heat.
- During July, that particular constellation, viewed from our country, is at its zenith, or highest location.
- Sierra is majoring in geology as she's interested in the study of earthquakes, volcanoes, and other matters relating to the earth's structure.
- By the third week in December, the sun is at its nadir, or lowest point in this part of the world.
- Metamorphic rocks, which are the most common rocks in the earth's crust, are formed from another class of rocks after being subjected to tremendous pressure and heat beneath the earth's surface.
- Meteorology is the scientific study of weather and climate.
- Is a(n) lunar month the same as a calendar month? And is the moon really responsible for the tides of oceans?

Related Meanings: Set 1

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- stalactites Yes rocky deposits on cave roofs
- astronomy Yes study of matter in the universe beyond the earth
- lunar No pertains to stars
- zenith No circular orbit of the earth
- meteorology No study of matter in space smaller than planets
- nadir Yes lowest point
- metamorphic Yes hard rocks like granite

8. stalagmites	<u>Yes</u>	rocky deposits on cave floors
9. celestial	<u>No</u>	relates to bodies of water
10. igneous	<u>Yes</u>	rocks formed from hot liquid rock (magma)
11. geology	<u>Yes</u>	study of the origin, structure, and history of the earth
12. topography	<u>No</u>	science devoted to the study of weather and climate
13. sedimentary	<u>Yes</u>	soft rocks formed from sediment
14. solar	<u>No</u>	pertains to the boiling lava found deep inside the earth

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 1

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in the physical sciences. Answers will vary.

1. **astronomy** _____

2. **nadir** _____

3. **meteorology** _____

4. **zenith** _____

5. **celestial** _____

6. **stalactites** _____

7. **solar** _____

8. **lunar** _____

9. **stalagmites** _____

10. **geology** _____

11. igneous rocks _____

12. metamorphic rocks _____

13. sedimentary rocks _____

14. topography _____

Learning Physical Science Terms from Context Clues: Set 2

1. chemistry (KEM ə strē)—noun

The composition, structure, properties, and reactions of substances.

The study of *chemistry* includes the investigation of substances' atomic and molecular systems.

2. organic, inorganic chemistry (or GAN ik, in or GAN ik KEM ə strē)—
adjectives + noun

Organic chemistry is concerned with basic substances and matter containing carbon, which include all organisms.

The compounds (see **8**) of plants and animals, which contain carbon, are among the topics studied in *organic chemistry*.

In contrast, inorganic chemistry is concerned with basic non-carbon substances and matter.

Acids and minerals containing no carbon are studied in *inorganic chemistry*.

3. element (EL ə mənt)—noun

A fundamental substance that cannot be separated into other substances by chemical means; there are more than a hundred elements.

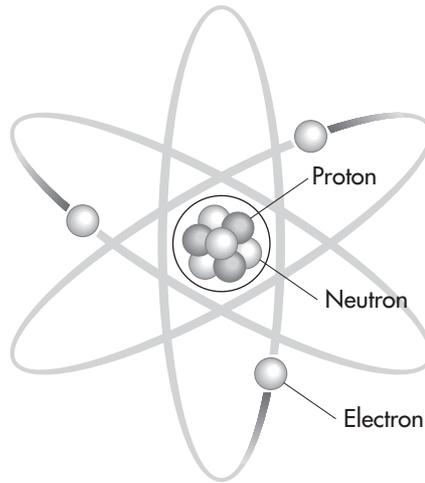
Hydrogen is classified as an *element* because it cannot be broken down into other substances.

4. atom (AT əm)—noun

The smallest unit of an element that still retains all the chemical properties of the element.

One oxygen *atom* combines with two hydrogen *atoms* to form water.

This diagram shows the locations of *protons*, *electrons*, and *neutrons* within an *atom*.



The Atom

5. proton, electron, neutron (PRŌ ton, ə LEK tron, NOO tron)—nouns

A proton is a very small particle in all atoms; it has a positive electric charge.

An electron is a very small particle in all atoms; it has a negative electric charge.

A neutron is a very small particle in all atoms except hydrogen, and it has no electric charge.

Atoms contain minute particles containing *protons*, *electrons*, and *neutrons*.

6. nucleus (NOO cle əs)—noun

The central part of an atom containing protons and neutrons.

The *nucleus* of an atom has a positive charge because of its protons. Electrons, which have a negative charge, are not a core part of the nucleus.

7. molecule (MOL ə kŭl)—noun

Smallest particle of any material capable of existing independently; it contains all the chemical properties of the material.

A *molecule* is formed from atoms with balancing attractive forces.

8. compound (KOM pound)—noun

A pure substance composed of two or more elements chemically united in a specific proportion; therefore, it can be broken down into two or more other pure substances by a chemical change.

Water is a *compound* whose molecules contain two atoms of hydrogen and one atom of oxygen (H₂O).

9. **synthesis** (SIN thə sis)—noun

The process of combining elements to form a compound.

The *synthesis* of various chemical processes led to the development of nylon.

10. **catalyst** (KAT ə list)—noun

A substance that initiates or accelerates a chemical reaction without itself undergoing any permanent change.

Chlorophyll is the *catalyst* responsible for the increased rate at which food is made in plants.

11. **solute** (SOL ūt)—noun

Any gas or solid that will dissolve or disappear when water or other liquid is added.

Salt is a *solute*; when added to water, the salt dissolves.

12. **physics** (FIZ iks)—noun

The study of matter and energy and the interactions between the two.

Acoustics (relating to sound), optics (relating to vision), and mechanics are among the subjects studied in *physics*.

13. **kinetic, potential energy** (kə NET ik, pə TEN shəl EN ər jē)—adjectives + nouns

Kinetic energy is energy in motion; potential energy is stored energy.

A swinging hammer displays *kinetic energy*; a hammer at rest has *potential energy*.

14. **centrifugal, centripetal forces** (sen TRIF ə gəl, sen TRIP ə təl FŌRS əs)—adjectives + noun

Centrifugal refers to the force that propels an object outward from the center of rotation; centripetal refers to the force that tends to draw an object inward toward the center of rotation.

When a rock is swung at the end of a string, the rock exerts an outward force on the string as it seeks to fly off in space; this is *centrifugal* force at work. On the other hand, the string pulls inwardly on the moving rock to keep it in its circular path; this is *centripetal* force at work.

15. **oscillate** (OS ə lāt)—verb

To swing to and fro, vibrate, or fluctuate; to make a wavelike motion.

The pendulum will *oscillate* when it is released.

16. malleable (MAL ē ə bəl)—adjective

Describes objects that can be hammered or shaped without breaking.

Metals are *malleable*; that is, they can be processed into desired shapes.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 2

Match each definition with the term it defines.

A

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|----|--|
| <u> </u> a | 1. inorganic | a. | branch of chemistry concerned with the study of non-carbon materials |
| <u> </u> c | 2. proton | b. | combining process |
| <u> </u> i | 3. chemistry | c. | has a positive charge |
| <u> </u> b | 4. synthesis | d. | substance that cannot be broken down into other substances |
| <u> </u> f | 5. atom | e. | branch of chemistry concerned with the study of materials containing carbon |
| <u> </u> g | 6. electron | f. | the smallest unit of an element |
| <u> </u> d | 7. element | g. | has a negative charge |
| <u> </u> j | 8. neutron | h. | atom's central part |
| <u> </u> e | 9. organic | i. | study of the composition, structure, properties, and reactions of substances |
| <u> </u> h | 10. nucleus | j. | has no electric charge |

B

- | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|----|---|
| <u> </u> g | 1. solute | a. | describes objects that can be hammered and molded |
| <u> </u> h | 2. kinetic | b. | stored energy |
| <u> </u> d | 3. compound | c. | outward force |
| <u> </u> f | 4. physics | d. | a pure substance containing two or more elements |
| <u> </u> i | 5. centripetal | e. | increases chemical reaction rate |
| <u> </u> b | 6. potential | f. | study of energy and matter and their interactions |
| <u> </u> a | 7. malleable | g. | gas or solid that dissolves in liquid |
| <u> </u> j | 8. molecule | h. | energy in motion |
| <u> </u> k | 9. oscillate | i. | inward force |
| <u> </u> c | 10. centrifugal | j. | smallest particle of any material capable of existing independently |
| <u> </u> e | 11. catalyst | k. | to vibrate |

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 2

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

A

chemistry synthesis inorganic neutrons potential solutes atoms
nucleus electrons organic kinetic catalyst protons

- Over the years, combining substances and procedures, a process known as synthesis, has led to the improvement of innumerable products as well as the development of countless new ones.
- Atoms, the smallest particles of elements, contain protons (positive electric charges), electrons (negative electric charges), and neutrons (no electric charges).
- An atom's nucleus is a very dense region with a positive charge.
- The project the scientists are working on in the laboratory is to develop a catalyst that will speed up the chemical reaction rate necessary to produce the special dyes used in medical diagnoses and research.
- Water cascading over a dam is kinetic energy, while water held in reserve behind a dam is potential energy.
- My high school chemistry course was about the structure, properties, and reactions of a wide variety of substances, but my current college course in organic chemistry concentrates solely on substances containing carbon, like animals and plants. Then next fall, I'll be taking a course in inorganic chemistry, a course focusing exclusively on non-carbon substances, like acids and minerals.
- Carbon dioxide and oxygen are gases that dissolve in water, so they are considered solutes.

B

malleable molecule compound centripetal
centrifugal physics elements

- Elements are fundamental substances consisting of atoms of only one kind, so they cannot be broken down into other substances and, either singly or in combination, they compose everything that exists.
- Chemists use symbols to represent the 100+ elements. For example, the element sodium is represented by Na and the element chlorine by Cl. When these elements are combined, salt (NaCl) is formed. Salt, then, is a compound because it is made by joining elements.
- Formed by atoms, the smallest particle of a material that can exist independently is a molecule.

- Metals, such as aluminum, steel, and titanium, are malleable, so they are used to make thousands of objects, ranging from airplanes to golf clubs.
- Physics is the study of matter and energy and the interactions between the two, including the effects of centrifugal (outward) and centripetal (inward) forces that characterize objects in circular motion.

Related Meanings: Set 2

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write *Yes* in the space; if they are unrelated, write *No*.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|------------|---|
| 1. malleable | <u>Yes</u> | describes something that can be molded or shaped, such as steel |
| 2. potential energy | <u>No</u> | magnetic power |
| 3. centrifugal force | <u>Yes</u> | outward force |
| 4. oscillate | <u>Yes</u> | swing to and fro |
| 5. kinetic energy | <u>Yes</u> | energy in motion |
| 6. centripetal force | <u>No</u> | causes objects to stay upright |
| 7. catalyst | <u>Yes</u> | something that speeds chemical reaction rate |
| 8. molecule | <u>No</u> | atom's center |
| 9. physics | <u>Yes</u> | study of matter and energy and their interactions |
| 10. element | <u>Yes</u> | a basic substance that cannot be divided into other substances |
| 11. organic chemistry | <u>Yes</u> | study of basic substances containing carbon |
| 12. solute | <u>No</u> | liquid oxygen |
| 13. nucleus | <u>No</u> | study of hydraulics containing hot fluids |
| 14. inorganic chemistry | <u>No</u> | study of basic substances containing no acids |
| 15. proton | <u>Yes</u> | positive electric charge |
| 16. synthesis | <u>No</u> | separating process used in chemistry |
| 17. neutron | <u>No</u> | negative electric charge |
| 18. compound | <u>Yes</u> | contains two or more elements |
| 19. chemistry | <u>No</u> | study focusing exclusively on hereditary factors |
| 20. electron | <u>No</u> | no electric charge |
| 21. atom | <u>No</u> | salt, sugar, and similar compounds |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 2

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in the physical sciences. Answers will vary.

- proton _____

- centrifugal force _____

3. atom _____

4. chemistry _____

5. organic chemistry _____

6. electron _____

7. nucleus _____

8. neutron _____

9. inorganic chemistry _____

10. centripetal force _____

11. kinetic energy _____

12. synthesis _____

13. malleable _____

14. element _____

15. potential energy _____

16. catalyst _____

17. solute _____

18. molecule _____

19. physics _____

20. oscillate _____

21. compound _____

Completing a Passage: Physical Sciences

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the terms listed below.

catalysts	molecules	neutrons	solutes	elements	synthesis
organic	chemistry	electrons	compounds	chemistry	protons

MARY PETERS FIESER, CHEMIST

Mary Peters Fieser was born in 1909 in Atchison, Kansas, but her family moved to Harrisburg, Pennsylvania, when she was still a child. She attended Bryn Mawr College, located near Philadelphia, with the intention of becoming a doctor. However, she changed her major to chemistry after becoming interested in the composition, properties, and reactions of substances. Her decision to major in this subject was also influenced by her chemistry professor, Dr. Louis Fieser.

After graduating from Bryn Mawr in 1930, she moved to Massachusetts to work on a master's degree in chemistry. Although she took most of her courses at Harvard University, Mary had to enroll at nearby Radcliffe College because Harvard did not admit women students at that time. Louis Fieser had accepted a faculty position at Harvard, and Mary was able to work in his research group, which centered on organic chemistry, the branch concerned with substances containing carbon. While Professor Fieser was open to allowing women to work in his lab to study elements, such as hydrogen, and compounds, such as salt (formed by combining sodium and chlorine), other Harvard faculty certainly were not. One of Mary's chemistry professors would not even allow her to do the lab assignments in *his* laboratory, so she had to do them unsupervised in the basement of a nearby building. Despite such obstacles, Mary received her master's degree in 1932, and she and Louis Fieser were married shortly afterward.



Mary Peters Fieser
(Courtesy Bryn Mawr
Library)

Mary and Louis Fieser collaborated in their research, much of which was devoted to synthesis, including the combining of molecules, the smallest particles of materials capable of existing independently. During World War II in the 1940s, they synthesized sources of quinine, a compound used to treat malaria, a serious illness soldiers fighting in the tropics often contracted. Such projects required the Fiesers to search for catalysts to speed up chemical reactions and to experiment with solutes to discover which ones dissolved faster in various liquids. The Fiesers also synthesized cortisone and other steroid hormones.

While their research brought the Fiesers a great deal of international attention, their real fame came after they wrote their immensely popular textbook *Organic Chemistry*. First published in 1944, it went through many new editions over the years and was translated into many foreign languages. Mary is credited with writing the widely admired and influential chapters having to do with real-world applications of organic chemistry. This textbook also contained biographical information about 454 different chemists, including those whose work centered on the particles in atoms: protons (positive charges), electrons (negative charges), and neutrons (no charges). Louis and Mary's writing is known for its originality, charm, clarity, and elegance—a notable accomplishment given the complexity of much of their subject matter.

In 1971, Mary was awarded the American Chemical Society's Garvan Medal. After Louis died in 1977, she continued her research and writing at Harvard. Throughout her nearly sixty-year association with Harvard, Mary never received a salary, even after she held the title of research associate.

In 1996, Harvard dedicated the Louis and Mary Fieser Laboratory for Undergraduate Organic Chemistry. The following year, Mary Peters Fieser, universally recognized as one of the outstanding chemists of the 20th century, died at the age of eighty-seven.

FEATURED WORD: chemistry

Chemistry—the science of the composition, structure, properties, and reactions of matter, especially of atomic and molecular systems:

- One of the first things I learned in my chemistry course was that the molecules in liquids are in constant motion and tend to escape from the surface and become gaseous molecules, with some liquids doing so even at temperatures far below the boiling point. (Water’s boiling point is 212 degrees Fahrenheit or 100 degrees Celsius.)

Origin: Originally, chemistry was called “alchemy,” which referred to the “natural physical process.” Alchemy became a so-called art or practice during the Middle Ages (350–1450), first in Egypt, then in other parts of the Middle East, and eventually in Europe. The major goal of alchemy was to discover a way to convert common metals to gold and silver. Though this goal was never realized, it did lead to the discovery of new substances. The term *alchemy* can be traced to the Greek word *khymeia* (that which is poured out). *Chemistry*, as a term and as a scientific study, dates to the late 1700s.

Family words: chemical (adj), chemist (n)

Image to remember: experiments being conducted by people in white lab coats

Write an original sentence using *chemistry*:

can able to do something:

Vanessa is confident she can be at the airport in half an hour.

may permission to do something:

May I borrow your car this evening?

Circle the correct answer:

1. You can / may borrow my car this evening if you can / may fill it up with gas.
2. If I can / may talk with you for a few minutes, I'm sure I can / may help you understand Troy's point of view.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **may:** _____

2. **can:** _____

Learning Computer Science Terms from Context Clues: Set 1

Computer science is changing so rapidly that keeping up with its technological innovations and ever-expanding vocabulary is a major challenge. However, the terms that are featured in this chapter remain at the heart of computer language.

1. terminal (TUR mə nəl)—noun

Consists of a keyboard that enters information into the computer and a screen that displays the computer's responses.

A computer *terminal* combines the features of a typewriter and a television screen.

2. monitor (MON ə tər)—noun

The screen displaying computer information. A monitor is also known as a CRT (cathode ray tube).

This *monitor* displays tables and graphs in vivid colors.

3. peripheral (pə RIF ə r ə l)—noun

An extra device, such as a printer or a data storage component, that is added to the computer.

A *peripheral* you should consider adding to your computer is a letter-quality printer.

4. port (PORT)—noun

A connector on the back of a computer where a peripheral is attached.

The printer cable must be attached to the correct *port*.

5. cursor, mouse (KUR sor, MOWSE)—nouns

A cursor is a movable pointer on a computer screen that indicates where an insertion, deletion, or other operation can take place.

The *cursor* moves automatically to the next space after you type. You can also move the *cursor* up, down, backward, or forward.

A mouse is a hand-held device for moving a cursor and entering simple commands and information.

After selecting the symbol you want, press the button on the *mouse*.

6. icons (Ī kons)—noun

Small pictures representing the various options available to the user of that particular computer program. Icons are displayed on the monitor, or computer screen.

You can get rid of your old e-mail by clicking your mouse on the wastepaper basket *icon*.

7. fonts (FONTS)—noun

The various type sizes, styles, and symbols a computer is capable of producing, such as italics, script, and boldface.

A special set of *fonts* will give you the ability to change the type size and style.

8. modem (MŌ dem)—noun

A device used to link a computer to a telephone network, permitting information to be transmitted from one computer system to another. A fax/modem allows data to be transmitted to a fax (facsimile) machine, which prints the data out on paper.

The college has a local computer bulletin board accessible by a *modem*.

9. memory (MEM ə rē), **RAM** (Random Access Memory), **ROM** (Read Only Memory)—nouns

Memory refers to the computer's capacity for storing information. Today, most memory is stored on a hard disk (as opposed to a floppy disk or diskette) permanently installed inside the computer. RAM is the part of the computer's memory that can be added to or deleted from; because RAM can be changed, it is also called read/write memory. ROM is the computer's preprogrammed memory; it cannot be added to or deleted from.

RAM is the computer's electronic *memory*; it contains instructions and data a specific computer program can execute.

ROM is the preprogrammed *memory* that loads the computer's operating system.

10. binary, bit, byte (BĪ nə rē, BIT, BĪT)—nouns

Binary refers to two digits: 0 and 1.

Computer operations are based on a *binary* number system.

A bit is a single binary digit.

A *bit* is the smallest piece of information stored in a computer.

Byte is the unit of data or memory now universally taken to mean eight bits.

The size of a computer's memory is described in terms of *bytes*.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 1

Match each definition with the term it defines.

A

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---|
| <u> c </u> | 1. peripheral | a. computer screen |
| <u> d </u> | 2. binary | b. memory that can be added to or deleted from |
| <u> e </u> | 3. ROM | c. accessory added to a computer |
| <u> a </u> | 4. monitor | d. based on 0 and 1 |
| <u> g </u> | 5. icons | e. computer's preprogrammed memory |
| <u> b </u> | 6. RAM | f. hand-held device used for entering commands |
| <u> f </u> | 7. mouse | g. small pictures representing various computer options |

B

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------|--|
| <u> d </u> | 1. bit | a. consists of eight bits |
| <u> e </u> | 2. terminal | b. various typefaces, such as italics |
| <u> b </u> | 3. fonts | c. connector on the back of a computer |
| <u> f </u> | 4. cursor | d. a single binary digit |
| <u> g </u> | 5. modem | e. computer keyboard and screen |
| <u> a </u> | 6. byte | f. movable screen pointer |
| <u> c </u> | 7. port | g. permits computers to communicate over telephone wires |

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 1

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

terminal port icon RAM bits
monitor cursor fonts ROM byte
peripheral mouse modem binary

1. A(n) modem is a device used to link a computer to a telephone network.
2. A computer uses a(n) binary number system, that is, of two digits, 0 and 1.
3. A(n) mouse, controlled by one hand, is used to enter commands into the computer.
4. This set of fonts contains a number of decorative typefaces.
5. A(n) byte is a unit of data or memory consisting of eight bits.
6. Reggie moved the cursor on the screen and clicked on "Edit."
7. You'll have to connect the printer cable to a(n) port on the back of the computer.
8. My roommate bought a new monitor, or computer screen, that is one of the largest I've seen, but it is less than two inches thick.

9. ROM is the computer's preprogrammed memory, so it can't be changed; on the other hand, RAM is memory that can be added to or deleted from.
10. Because a keyboard is a necessity, it is not considered a(n) peripheral.
11. The icon I clicked on the most is the one showing a tiny picture of an envelope, which gets me to my e-mail.
12. The keyboard and screen of a laptop or notebook computer are significantly smaller than the terminal of a desktop computer.

Related Meanings: Set 1

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | | |
|---------------|------------|--|
| 1. fonts | <u>Yes</u> | keyboard's assortment of typefaces |
| 2. ROM | <u>Yes</u> | Read Only Memory |
| 3. bit | <u>No</u> | a computer timing device |
| 4. port | <u>No</u> | popular Internet website |
| 5. peripheral | <u>Yes</u> | computer accessory, such as a printer |
| 6. mouse | <u>No</u> | computer screen saver |
| 7. cursor | <u>No</u> | a computer error |
| 8. RAM | <u>No</u> | one of the most popular computer models |
| 9. monitor | <u>Yes</u> | computer screen |
| 10. terminal | <u>No</u> | an outdated computer program |
| 11. binary | <u>No</u> | movable pointer |
| 12. byte | <u>Yes</u> | a unit of information consisting of eight bits |
| 13. icons | <u>Yes</u> | small pictorial representations representing options |
| 14. modem | <u>No</u> | memory-saving part of the computer |

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 1

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in computer science. Answers will vary.

1. **terminal** _____

2. **monitor** _____

3. **peripheral** _____

4. **port** _____

5. cursor _____

6. mouse _____

7. icons _____

8. fonts _____

9. modem _____

10. memory _____

11. RAM _____

12. ROM _____

13. binary _____

14. bit _____

15. byte _____

Learning Computer Science Terms from Context Clues: Set 2

1. **hardware, software** (HARD WĀR, SOFT WĀR)—nouns

Hardware refers to the physical parts of the computer system, such as the terminal and monitor. Software refers to computer programs written to perform specific tasks.

The insurance company is spending thousands of dollars to update its computer *hardware* and *software*.

2. file (FĪL)—noun

A collection of related information stored on a disk. A file can contain a professionally prepared program or a user-created document.

A *file* must be given a specific title, such as “Team Statistics,” and steps must be taken to save it on the computer’s hard disk or the *file* will be lost when the computer is shut off.

3. database (DĀ tə bāys)—noun

A computer program used to manage large collections of information related to a particular subject or purpose.

Mailing lists, phone numbers, e-mail addresses, and payroll information are examples of information often contained in *databases*.

4. spreadsheet (SPREED shēt)—noun

A computer program that organizes numerical data into rows and columns.

The accountant entered the numbers on the *spreadsheet* program, which then presented the data in rows and columns on the screen.

5. hacker (HAK ər)—noun

A person who “hacks” or breaks into other people’s computer files to look at, copy, change, or destroy their data. A hacker is able to do this by figuring out the password being used to protect such data; this is called “cracking” the password. *Hackers* are electronic outlaws because they illegally tamper with other people’s computer files.

6. virus (VĪ rəs)—noun

A program that attaches itself to other programs and then reproduces itself, damaging the data in the other programs.

Most computer *viruses* are deliberately written by *hackers* who either want to destroy data or want to frustrate other computer users.

7. crash (KRASH)—noun

A slang word for when a computer stops working properly. A crash can occur when the operating system or software application malfunctions. Viruses also can cause a crash, as can a severe storm that disrupts electrical service. Because *crashes* are not uncommon, you should always “save” your work in a file, even when the file is incomplete. You do this by clicking on “File” on the top left of your screen, then clicking on “Save.”

8. menu bar (MEN yoo BAR)—adjective + noun

The horizontal bar across the top of the computer screen that allows a user to point-and-click the mouse on functions he or she wants the computer to do, such as retrieve, save, or print a file. A “menu” drops down from the horizontal bar displaying the various options available for that specific function.

Tova went to the *menu bar* at the top of the screen and clicked on “Format” as she wanted to change the font size she was using for her report.

9. download (DOWN loh-d)—verb

To copy a file onto one’s computer.

Shane is *downloading* an antivirus program onto his computer.

10. Internet (IN tər net)—noun

A computer network is a group of computers connected together so they can communicate with one another; the Internet connects thousands of such computer networks. The Internet, then, is actually a network of networks.

Computer networks of governments, libraries, businesses, universities, and other organizations throughout the nation and the world make up the *Internet*.

11. e-mail (Ē MĀL)—noun

The Internet has made possible e-mail, or electronic mail. E-mail provides instantaneous personal and business communication.

“Spam” is unsolicited *e-mail* on the Internet; it is considered junk mail by most computer users, much like unsolicited phone marketing generally is.

12. domain name (dō MĀN NĀM)—adjective + noun

The name located to the right of the @ sign in an e-mail address. The most common domain names are .com (commercial site); .gov (government site); .edu (educational institution site); .net (network site); and .org (nonprofit organization site).

You can get the homepage of the University of McKay by using this e-mail address, which includes the *domain name* edu: umckay@umk.edu.

13. World Wide Web (WURLD WĪD WEB)—noun

The World Wide Web (WWW), or Web, is the powerful Internet facility that permits access to information from hundreds of sources and from all parts of the world. Web “pages” feature hypertext, a system that highlights key words; when you “click” your mouse on a key word, the screen provides more in-depth information relating to your topic. Hypermedia is similar, but it displays pictures and other types of illustrations as well.

The *World Wide Web* provided me with numerous sources about Monticello, Thomas Jefferson’s home near Charlottesville, Virginia. Then by clicking my mouse on a number of hypertext and hypermedia words, I was able to secure the information and illustrations I needed to complete my research project.

14. search engine (surch EN jin)—adjective + noun

A website used to locate other websites that will lead you to the specific information you desire.

After an appropriate word or phrase is typed at the top of the web page, a *search engine*, such as Google or Yahoo!, will list the most promising sites for the information being sought.

15. blog (BLOG)—noun

Short for weblog, which is essentially a computer journal that is frequently updated by its author and available to anyone who has access to the Internet.

A *blog* generally reflects the author's opinions, which can range from humorous to outrageous, about a particular topic, such as politics or celebrities.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 2

Match each definition with the term it defines.

A

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-----------|---|
| <u> c </u> | 1. database | a. | facility that locates information available on the Internet |
| <u> f </u> | 2. spreadsheet | b. | network of networks |
| <u> a </u> | 3. World Wide Web | c. | program used to manage large data collections |
| <u> h </u> | 4. hacker | d. | related information stored on a disk |
| <u> g </u> | 5. hardware | e. | to copy a file or program onto a computer |
| <u> b </u> | 6. Internet | f. | organizes data into rows and columns |
| <u> e </u> | 7. download | g. | a computer's physical equipment |
| <u> d </u> | 8. file | h. | breaks into other computer users' programs |

B

- | | | | |
|------------------|------------------|-----------|--|
| <u> e </u> | 1. software | a. | a horizontal band at the top of the computer screen that allows a computer user to point-and-click on specific functions |
| <u> c </u> | 2. virus | b. | computer stops working properly |
| <u> h </u> | 3. search engine | c. | damages other programs by reproducing itself |
| <u> f </u> | 4. e-mail | d. | unsolicited and usually unwanted e-mail |
| <u> a </u> | 5. menu bar | e. | programs written to perform specific tasks |
| <u> g </u> | 6. blog | f. | electronic mail |
| <u> i </u> | 7. domain name | g. | a site in which a person writes his or her opinions about a topic or topics |
| <u> b </u> | 8. crash | h. | a website used to locate information available on the Internet |
| <u> d </u> | 9. spam | i. | registered name to the right of the @ in an e-mail address |

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms: Set 2

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

A

e-mail spreadsheets crash hackers files spam
domain name software viruses download Internet

Most computer viruses are caused by hackers who wish to break into another user's program, either to obtain private information or to simply cause mischief. Fortunately, there are software programs that can provide a high degree of protection against this type of invasion. Business enterprises find such protection crucial to their success because many of their files are spreadsheets containing rows and columns of sensitive financial information.

Of course, there are other reasons why a computer may crash, such as an extensive power outage, a major operating system malfunction, or a foolish attempt to download a protected program from the Internet.

In addition, sometimes unsolicited e-mail, known as spam, can trigger a virus, so even though you may recognize the domain name (such as .edu) of the sender, if the rest of his or her address is unfamiliar or suspicious looking, you would be wise to delete the message rather than open it.

B

menu bar blog hardware database search engine World Wide Web

1. This database contains the names, addresses, phone numbers, and e-mail addresses of the college's alumni.
2. The horizontal menu bar enables you to click on numerous functions, including "File," "Edit," "Format," "Tools," and others.
3. I went to the popular search engine known as Google to find information about the community college I was interested in attending.
4. The blog I check out periodically is one having to do with surfing.
5. Over the years, computer hardware, especially monitors, has become lighter and slimmer.
6. The World Wide Web "pages" feature hypertext, a system highlighting key words, and hypermedia, a system displaying illustrations.

Related Meanings: Set 2

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

1. virus	<u>No</u>	upgrades computer programs
2. Internet	<u>Yes</u>	the network of computer networks
3. WWW	<u>Yes</u>	World Wide Web
4. file	<u>No</u>	instrument used to speed up computer feedback
5. database	<u>Yes</u>	a computer program used to manage large collections of information
6. search engine	<u>No</u>	a computer's recycle bin
7. hardware	<u>Yes</u>	a computer's physical equipment
8. software	<u>No</u>	term used for outdated equipment
9. spreadsheet	<u>No</u>	an anti-virus program
10. hacker	<u>No</u>	computer beginner
11. download	<u>Yes</u>	to duplicate a file or program onto another computer
12. e-mail	<u>Yes</u>	electronic mail
13. domain name	<u>No</u>	name to the left of the @ in e-mail addresses
14. crash	<u>Yes</u>	malfunction that stops the computer from working
15. spam	<u>No</u>	computer journal an author makes available on the Internet
16. menu bar	<u>Yes</u>	allows user to point-and-click on specific functions
17. blog	<u>No</u>	junk e-mail

Writing Your Own Definitions: Set 2

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each term that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning as used in computer science. Answers will vary.

1. search engine _____

2. spam _____

3. Internet _____

4. World Wide Web _____

5. hardware _____

6. file _____

7. menu bar _____

8. database _____

9. crash _____

10. spreadsheet _____

11. domain name _____

12. hacker _____

13. blog _____

14. download _____

15. e-mail _____

16. software _____

17. virus _____

Completing a Passage: Computer Science

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the terms listed below.

terminal	peripherals	World Wide Web	mouse	binary
ROM	spreadsheets	e-mail	RAM	cursor
Internet	search engine	software	bytes	
databases	icons	bits	monitor	

A BRIEF HISTORY OF PERSONAL COMPUTERS

The history of computers can, in a sense, be traced back hundreds of years to the abacus. An abacus consists of a wooden frame, inside of which beads are moved to make arithmetic calculations. In fact, this simple but clever device is still being used in some parts of the world. But the origin of computers as we know them dates back to the 1940s. However, these early computers such as ENIAC (Electronic Numerical Integrator And Computer), were enormous and as expensive to build as large airplanes, and they were limited for the most part to mathematical calculations.

By the early 1970s integrated electronic circuits and microprocessors had been developed, paving the way for a new generation of computers, as it now became possible to combine the basic elements of a computer onto tiny silicon computer chips. A computer's capacity for storing information increased dramatically, making possible all types of computer operations based on the binary number system, which uses the two digits 0 and 1, with bytes (each consisting of eight bits) determining the size of a computer's memory. Eventually, RAM (Random Access Memory) and ROM (Read Only Memory) became familiar acronyms to computer users.

In 1977, Steven Jobs and Stephen Wozniak created Apple II, the first PC (personal computer) to have color graphics and a keyboard, or terminal. In 1984, the Apple Macintosh was introduced, a computer that featured a graphical user interface (GUI) that combined icons (small pictures that represent files or programs) with windows (boxes containing an open file or program). The Macintosh also introduced the hand-held device, dubbed a(n) mouse, that could move a pointing device (called a[n] cursor) on the monitor, or screen.

In 1981, IBM (International Business Machines Corporation) introduced a PC purposely designed so that other computer companies could create similar machines (clones) that could also use IBM's software, or computer programs. Computer peripherals, such as printers, also became available to the public. In 1984,

Michael Dell, a college student at the time, began a computer company with just \$1,000; by 2007, the Dell Computer Corporation showed gross sales of over \$14 billion.

The first independent version of Microsoft Windows 1.0, developed by Bill Gates and others, appeared on the scene in 1985. Windows became extremely popular with people of all ages, including those who play computer games and those who create databases (large collections of information) and spreadsheets (numerical data).

With the development of the Internet, that superhighway of computer networks, and the World Wide Web (WWW) in the 1990s, computer users could now, by using a(n) search engine like Yahoo!, access thousands—if not millions—of sources of information. In addition, the development of e-mail enabled companies to conduct business quickly and people to stay in touch easily.

In a relatively short period, PCs have revolutionized all segments of our society. In fact, it is undoubtedly hard for most of us to imagine when our country and the rest of the world was “computer-less.” One thing is for sure: PCs will continue to develop in ways unimaginable to us at the present time, resulting in even more changes in how we lead our lives.

FEATURED WORD: peripheral

Peripheral—(1) relating to an outer boundary; (2) superficial, of minor importance; (3) a computer accessory, such as a printer:

- Fans were lining the peripheral fence of the track to watch the mile race.
- Gaylord has only peripheral interest in sports, but he loves music.
- A peripheral you should consider getting is a scanner, which is like having a camera for your computer.

Origin: <Greek—*periphēria* (circumference, outer surface). “Peripheral” as an accessory to a computer dates back to the 1950s.

Family words: peripherally (adv), periphery (n)

Image to remember: someone on the outer edge of a group, not one of the “ins”; a piece of hardware attached to a computer

Write original sentences demonstrating the three common definitions of *peripheral*:

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

council an assembly of people called together to discuss or to deliberate a topic or topics:

The city council is meeting Monday evening to discuss whether a new sports auditorium is needed in our community.

counsel to offer advice:

The lawyer counseled those living in the neighborhood when they learned that someone was planning to build a large condo complex at the far end of the street.

Circle the correct answer:

1. Mrs. Pelletier agreed to council / counsel the drama club this semester.
2. Mr. Stewart is a member of the council / counsel advising the governor on environmental matters.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **council:** _____
2. **counsel:** _____

Learning Medical Terms from Context Clues: Set 1—Word Parts

Although knowledge of the word parts and frequently used medical terms presented in this chapter is beneficial to all students, those planning to enter a medical-related profession will find this knowledge particularly valuable.

1. algia—pain

Neuralgia is pain extending along a nerve or group of nerves.

2. arteri—blood vessel

Arteries are blood vessels carrying blood away from the heart.

3. arthr—joint

Arthritis is inflammation of the joints.

4. cardi—heart

Bradycardia is a heart rate of less than 60 beats per minute in an adult;
tachycardia is a heart rate exceeding 100 beats per minute in an adult.

5. derm—skin

Dermatology is the branch of medicine concerned with the skin and its diseases.

6. gastr—stomach

Gastrology is the branch of medicine concerned with the stomach and its diseases.

7. hem—blood

Hematology is the study of blood and the blood-producing organs.

8. itis—inflammation

Bronchitis is inflammation of the membrane lining the bronchial tubes.

9. my—muscle

Myalgia is muscular pain.

10. **neur**—nerve

Neuritis is inflammation of a nerve (see also neuralgia above).

11. **osteo**—bone

Osteoporosis is a disease in which the bones become weak and brittle, often leading to curvature of the spine.

12. **phleb**—vein

Phlebitis is inflammation of a vein.

13. **psych**—mind

Psychiatry is the branch of medicine concerned with mental disorders.

14. **pulmo**—lung

Pulmonary pneumonia occurs in the lungs.

15. **tomy**—act of cutting

Splenectomy is removal of the spleen.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 1

Use your knowledge of the underlined word parts to match the definitions and terms.

A

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| <u> d </u> | 1. <u>osteogenesis</u> |
| <u> f </u> | 2. <u>gastroscope</u> |
| <u> b </u> | 3. <u>pulmonic</u> |
| <u> a </u> | 4. <u>fibromyalgia</u> |
| <u> h </u> | 5. <u>psychosomatic</u> |
| <u> g </u> | 6. <u>cardiograph</u> |
| <u> c </u> | 7. <u>buritis</u> |
| <u> e </u> | 8. <u>arteriography</u> |

- a. chronic pain in the muscles
- b. relating to the lungs
- c. inflammation of a saclike body cavity containing a lubricating fluid
- d. the formation and development of bony tissue
- e. examination of arteries using x-rays
- f. instrument used to examine the interior of the stomach
- g. instrument that records heart movements
- h. concerned with the influence of the mind on the body

B

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| <u> f </u> | 1. <u>phlebology</u> |
| <u> c </u> | 2. <u>hemoglobin</u> |
| <u> e </u> | 3. <u>neural</u> |
| <u> g </u> | 4. <u>lobotomy</u> |
| <u> a </u> | 5. <u>myasthenia</u> |

- a. abnormal weakness of the muscles
- b. skin disease
- c. iron pigment in the red blood cells
- d. examination or treatment of a joint using an instrument inserted through a small opening

<u> </u> b	6. <u>dermatosis</u>	e. relating to a nerve or the nervous system
<u> </u> d	7. <u>arthroscopy</u>	f. study of veins and their diseases g. surgical incision in the front part of the brain

Learning Medical Terms from Context Clues: Set 2

List One

- 1. acute** (ə KYOOT)—adjective

Describes an illness or pain with a rapid onset and a short, severe course.
- 2. asymptomatic** (ā simp tə MAT ik)—adjective

Not showing any symptoms of disease.
- 3. atrophy** (AT rə fē)—noun

Wasting away of muscles or a decrease in the size of a body part due to disease or lack of use.
- 4. benign** (bə NĪN)—adjective

Harmless, not deadly.
- 5. cauterize** (KƏ tə rīz)—verb

To burn or sear away abnormal tissue by using an instrument, such as a laser or an electrical current.
- 6. chronic** (KRON ik)—adjective

Describes a pain or illness of long duration.
- 7. coagulate** (kō AG yə lāt)—verb

To thicken or clot (as of blood).
- 8. cyanosis** (sī ə NŌ sis)—noun

Blue or gray discoloration of the skin because of reduced oxygen levels in the blood.
- 9. dementia** (dē MEN shə)—noun

A progressive decline in cognitive (mental) abilities; also referred to as Alzheimer’s disease.

10. edema (ə DĒ mə)—noun

The swelling of body tissues with fluids; bloating.

11. etiology (ē tē OL ə jē)—noun

The causes or origins of a disease; the study of these causes.

12. febrile (FĒ brəl)—adjective

Having a fever.

13. triage (TRĒ əzh)—noun

A process followed for sorting injured people into groups based on their need for medical attention. Triage is from a French word meaning “sorting,” and it reflects the Greek word *tria* (“three”). In its strictest sense, then, triage means sorting patients into three categories based on the seriousness of their medical condition.

List Two

1. gerontology (jer ən TOL ə jē)—noun

Study of the processes and problems of the elderly.

2. hospice (HOS pis)—noun

Type of care of the terminally ill founded on the concept of allowing individuals to die with dignity surrounded by those who love them.

3. malaise (mə LĀZ)—noun

A general feeling of sickness; a general sense of depression or unease.

4. malignant (mə LIG nənt)—adjective

Deadly, terminal, threatening to life.

5. natal (NĀ təl)—adjective

Pertaining to birth.

6. oncology (on KOL ə jē)—noun

The branch of medicine having to do with cancer.

7. palliative (PAL ē ə tiv)—adjective

Describes medical care that relieves symptoms but does not cure.

8. pathology (pə THOL ə jē)—noun

The scientific study of diseases and their causes, including the examination of corpses to determine the cause of death.

9. prognosis (præg NŌ sis)—noun

The forecast of the probable course and outcome of a disease.

10. protocol (PRŌ tə kəl)—noun

Series of standing medical orders or procedures that should be followed under specific conditions.

11. remission (rə MISH ən)—noun

The lessening of a disease's symptoms.

12. trauma (TRƏ mə)—noun

A life-threatening injury resulting from an accident or violence; a serious emotional shock.

13. vertigo (VUR tə gō)—noun

Dizziness; sensation of the head spinning.

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions: Set 2

Match each definition with the term it defines.

A

coagulate	edema	palliative	malignant	asymptomatic
vertigo	cauterize	febrile	pathology	
<u>cauterize</u>	1. to burn away abnormal tissue			
<u>palliative</u>	2. medical care that relieves symptoms but does not cure			
<u>coagulate</u>	3. to clot			
<u>febrile</u>	4. feverish			
<u>malignant</u>	5. deadly			
<u>edema</u>	6. swelling of body tissue with fluids; bloating			
<u>asymptomatic</u>	7. not showing any indications of disease			
<u>pathology</u>	8. study of diseases and their causes; studying what caused a death			
<u>vertigo</u>	9. dizziness			

B

trauma	natal	cyanosis	benign
atrophy	prognosis	hospice	oncology
<u>prognosis</u>	1. forecast of the probable course and outcome of a disease		
<u>cyanosis</u>	2. blue or gray complexion due to the lack of oxygen		
<u>oncology</u>	3. medical specialty concerned with cancer		
<u>trauma</u>	4. life-threatening injury due to an accident or violence		
<u>hospice</u>	5. compassionate approach designed to allow patients to die with dignity		
<u>natal</u>	6. refers to birth		
<u>atrophy</u>	7. wasting away of muscles		
<u>benign</u>	8. mild, harmless		

C

gerontology	etiology	triage	malaise	chronic
protocol	remission	dementia	acute	
<u>dementia</u>	1. Alzheimer's disease			
<u>chronic</u>	2. describes a long-lasting pain or illness			
<u>gerontology</u>	3. scientific study of aging			
<u>remission</u>	4. decline in a disease's symptoms			
<u>acute</u>	5. describes a sudden illness or pain having a short but severe course			
<u>protocol</u>	6. standard medical procedures to follow under certain circumstances			
<u>etiology</u>	7. the origins or causes of diseases			
<u>malaise</u>	8. a vague feeling of illness or unease			
<u>triage</u>	9. the sorting of injured patients into groups based on their medical need			

Completing a Passage: Medicine

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the terms listed below.

cyanosis	triage	chronic	asymptomatic	cauterizing
palliative	acute	febrile	protocols	coagulate
prognosis	malaise	trauma	natal	oncology

EMERGENCY MEDICINE

Emergency medicine, though a medical specialty, encompasses a great deal of general medicine, such as treating nauseated and febrile children suffering from the flu and cauterizing a patient's wound with an electrical instrument so the blood from the wound will coagulate and the healing process can begin. But emergency physicians are especially trained to treat those suffering from physical trauma, that is, from life-threatening injuries or illnesses. For example, they are the ones who are counted on to save patients brought into the emergency room with disturbing grayish or bluish complexions indicating cyanosis. Emergency

physicians must quickly diagnose and stabilize such patients, then transfer them to the appropriate hospital unit, such as cardiology, or, if they are a cancer patient, oncology. In addition, an emergency physician must be capable of diagnosing and then stabilizing recently born babies brought to the emergency room in distress before transferring them to the natal unit. On the other hand, patients with chronic conditions such as arthritis or those exhibiting malaise indicated by asymptomatic findings are often referred to their private doctors.

In addition to physicians, EMTs (emergency medical technicians), also known as paramedics, are trained to provide life-saving care in any location and to transport patients to the hospital by ambulance or, in some cases, by helicopter. Hospital emergency rooms are also staffed with nurses who are specially trained to help treat seriously injured or critically ill patients, including those with acute ailments, that is, those whose severe illnesses came on suddenly and whose prognosis for relief from pain and possibly recovery would have been impossible had they not been brought to the emergency room.

Protocols exist in emergency rooms to ensure that vital medical procedures are followed in certain situations. For example, to cope with large-scale accidents (as well as extremely crowded waiting rooms), emergency personnel are trained in the triage system so that priority is given to those patients suffering from the most serious trauma. For example, patients suffering from strokes, poisonings, drug overdoses, heart attacks, car injuries, and acute asthma attacks are given priority over those with minor cuts and sore throats. Though immediate palliative care to relieve extreme pain is often standard practice, relief of symptoms is sometimes delayed to make sure that an accurate diagnosis leading to a cure is not obscured.

Those seeking a career in emergency medicine must undergo lengthy, specialized training, culminating in the passing of certification tests. Emergency physicians, for example, must obtain a four-year medical degree, complete a three-year residency, and pass a national certification exam. The stress for those in emergency medicine is often great, but, fortunately, so is the satisfaction that results from helping those people in the greatest need of medical aid.

FEATURED WORD: etiology

Etiology—the causes of diseases:

- It took many years of medical research to unravel the etiology of poliomyelitis, but once the cause was traced to a specific virus, preventive vaccines could be developed.

Origin: 1555 <Greek—*aitiologia* (statement of cause); *aitia* (cause) and *logia* (speaking)

Family words: etiological (adj), etiologically (adv), etiologist (n)

Image to remember: public health officials scouring farms, stores, and restaurants seeking to find the source of a major outbreak of a disease

Write an original sentence using *etiology*:

fewer used with individual things that can actually be counted:

Because of the threatening weather, there were fewer people at the game than there were yesterday.

less used when referring to a smaller quantity of something that can't be counted:

Fortunately, we've had less rain this week, so we were able to plant our garden.

Circle the correct answer:

1. We sold fewer / less cakes today than we did at last year's bake sale.
2. I'm disappointed that my new car gets fewer / less miles per gallon than my old one did, and its tank also holds fewer / less gas.
3. This summer, the Department of Transportation has fewer / less money, so there will be fewer / less roads built and repaired, and fewer / less part-time workers hired.
4. According to the labels, this cereal has fewer / less calories than that one does, and this widely advertised brand of bottled water actually has fewer / less liquid in it than that generic brand does.

Write original sentences using these words:

1. **fewer:** _____

2. **less:** _____

REVIEW TEST, CHAPTERS 24–29

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions

Match each academic term with its definition.

<u> d </u>	1. commodities	a. cash, property, and other things of value
<u> i </u>	2. vertex	b. accessory added to a computer
<u> f </u>	3. biology	c. concerned with a region's surface features
<u> l </u>	4. geology	d. products bought, sold, or traded
<u> b </u>	5. peripheral	e. angle of more than 90°
<u> k </u>	6. asymptomatic	f. study of living organisms
<u> a </u>	7. assets	g. small pictures representing various computer options
<u> j </u>	8. zoology	h. wasting away of muscles
<u> e </u>	9. obtuse	i. the point where two lines meet to form an angle
<u> c </u>	10. topography	j. study of animals
<u> g </u>	11. icons	k. no symptoms of disease
<u> h </u>	12. atrophy	l. study of the earth's origin, history, and structure

Related Meanings

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

1. GNP	<u> No </u>	general national policy
2. botany	<u> Yes </u>	study of plants
3. stalactites	<u> Yes </u>	deposits hanging from cave roofs
4. cursor	<u> No </u>	computer keyboard
5. benign	<u> No </u>	hardening of the bones
6. malignant	<u> Yes </u>	deadly
7. fonts	<u> Yes </u>	various computer typefaces, such as italics
8. homeostasis	<u> No </u>	virus causing paralysis
9. zenith	<u> Yes </u>	highest point
10. CEO	<u> Yes </u>	chief executive officer
11. right angle	<u> Yes </u>	90° angle
12. meteorology	<u> No </u>	study of microscopic life

Completing a Passage

After reading the selection, fill in each space with one of the terms listed below.

genes symbiotic prolific mutations habitat
invertebrates entomology taxonomy dormant flora

SOME TIDBITS ABOUT INSECTS

Entomology, the scientific study of insects, is a branch of zoology. Students taking a course in this subject learn some mind-boggling information about insects. For example, 95 percent of all animal species are insects, and, according to research reports, there are 10 quintillion (10,000,000,000,000,000,000) living insects! When it comes to reproducing, insects are unbelievably prolific, laying thousands of eggs throughout their life span, which can vary from a few hours (certain microorganisms) to seventeen years (certain locusts).

The habitat of insects has no boundaries, as they live and thrive in all parts of the world, including the Arctic and Antarctic regions. Many types of flora, including a variety of water plants, and certain species of insects have a symbiotic relationship, enabling each to survive. In addition, many species of insects are dormant during certain parts of the year, while others remain constantly active.

Insects are invertebrates, as they lack backbones. The extensive taxonomy for insects classifies thirty-two different orders; beetles make up the largest order, with over 500,000 different species. It is unlikely that the classification of insects will ever be completed, as mutations, which result from changes in the genes of a parent, will no doubt add many more species as the years go by.

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each of these academic terms that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning. Answers will vary.

1. liabilities _____

2. acute angle _____

3. fauna _____

4. nadir _____

5. hacker _____

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions

Match each academic term with its definition.

- | | | |
|----------|------------------|---|
| <u>l</u> | 1. quotient | a. deterioration of mental abilities; Alzheimer's disease |
| <u>k</u> | 2. circumference | b. describes objects that can be shaped |
| <u>f</u> | 3. fiscal | c. describes energy in motion, such as a swinging hammer |
| <u>g</u> | 4. obsolescence | d. lessening of a disease's symptoms |
| <u>c</u> | 5. kinetic | e. website used to locate other websites on the Internet |
| <u>i</u> | 6. potential | f. pertaining to financial matters |
| <u>b</u> | 7. malleable | g. describes products no longer in style or marketable |
| <u>j</u> | 8. blog | h. the causes or origins of diseases |
| <u>e</u> | 9. search engine | i. describes stored energy, such as a hammer on a shelf |
| <u>h</u> | 10. etiology | j. individual's weblog used to express personal views |
| <u>a</u> | 11. dementia | k. distance around a circle |
| <u>d</u> | 12. remission | l. answer to a division problem |

Related Meanings

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

- | | | |
|----------------|------------|--|
| 1. bear market | <u>Yes</u> | falling stock market |
| 2. bull market | <u>Yes</u> | rising stock market |
| 3. average | <u>Yes</u> | mean |
| 4. axioms | <u>Yes</u> | postulates |
| 5. genetics | <u>No</u> | study of successful business practices |
| 6. vertebrates | <u>Yes</u> | animals with backbones |
| 7. lunar | <u>No</u> | relating to the sun |
| 8. solar | <u>No</u> | relating to the moon |
| 9. catalyst | <u>Yes</u> | speeds up chemical action |
| 10. capital | <u>Yes</u> | money |

Fill-Ins with Academic Terms

In each space, write the appropriate term from those listed below.

febrile conglomerate edema solvency celestial numerator audit
hospice divestiture denominator protocol diameter balance of trade

1. Nurses receive training regarding the protocol to follow when certain medical situations arise.
2. In the fraction $7/8$, 7 is the numerator and 8 is the denominator.
3. Hospice is compassionate care designed for the terminally ill so they are permitted to die with as much comfort and dignity as possible.
4. An indicator of a nation's economic health is its balance of trade, that is, how its export sales and import purchases compare.
5. Though not complaining of any discomfort, the young man was found to be febrile with a temperature of over 100 degrees and clear indications of edema, or bloating, of his ankles.
6. The diameter of the room, that is, the distance from one wall to the opposite with the tape measure running through the exact center, is 32 feet.
7. Throughout the centuries, people have given names to the celestial figures formed by the stars.
8. Because the corporation had a virtual monopoly regarding the selling of many agricultural products in various countries, the court ordered a(n) divestiture of its fertilizing company.
9. The business conglomerate includes TV stations, publishing companies, and paper mills, and its solvency is beyond question, according to an independent audit of its financial records.

Related Meanings

If the words opposite each other are similar in meaning, write Yes in the space; if they are unrelated, write No.

1. sum Yes total
2. proton Yes positive electric charge
3. neutron No negative charge
4. electron No no electric charge
5. $14\frac{5}{8}$ Yes mixed number
6. $3/2$ No proper fraction
7. $4/11$ No improper fraction
8. $>$ No equal to
9. $<$ Yes less than
10. recession No substantial increase in business and employment

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 11. depreciation | <u>Yes</u> decline in value |
| 12. chronic | <u>No</u> of short duration |
| 13. ≠ | <u>No</u> greater than |
| 14. malaise | <u>No</u> feeling of well-being |
| 15. palliative | <u>Yes</u> eases symptoms but does not cure |

Writing Your Own Definitions

Write either an original sentence or a definition for each of these academic terms that clearly demonstrates your mastery of its meaning. Answers will vary.

1. **computer hardware** _____

2. **prognosis** _____

3. **franchise** _____

4. **golden parachute** _____

5. **tariff** _____

Matching Academic Terms and Definitions

Match each academic term with its definition.

- | | | |
|----------|-------------------------|--|
| <u>j</u> | 1. triage | a. describes rocks formed by sediment deposits |
| <u>k</u> | 2. centripetal | b. study of the universe beyond the earth's atmosphere |
| <u>l</u> | 3. physics | c. study of substances not containing carbon |
| <u>n</u> | 4. physiology | d. result when two organisms of different species are bred |
| <u>h</u> | 5. igneous | e. a substance dissolved in a solution |
| <u>a</u> | 6. sedimentary | f. combining process |
| <u>d</u> | 7. hybrid | g. composed of two or more elements |
| <u>b</u> | 8. astronomy | h. describes rocks formed by cooled magma |
| <u>e</u> | 9. solute | i. force propelling objects outward |
| <u>m</u> | 10. organic chemistry | j. the sorting of the injured into groups |
| <u>o</u> | 11. inflationary | |
| <u>c</u> | 12. inorganic chemistry | |

- i **13.** centrifugal
 g **14.** compound
 f **15.** synthesis

- k.** force drawing objects inward
l. study of matter and energy
m. study of substances containing carbon
n. study of the functions and parts of living organisms
o. describes substantial rise in prices

Mastering Confusing Words

Circle the correct answer.

1. The city (council) / counsel) is scheduled to meet this evening at 7:30.
2. Did your advisor (council / counsel) you regarding what courses you should take next semester?
3. We need at least three (disinterested) / uninterested) people to serve as judges for the art show.
4. Jaye prefers swimming to jogging, so she was (disinterested / uninterested) in going running with us.
5. I have (fewer / less) money now than I did last month, but, fortunately, I also have (fewer / less) debts.
6. Do you know (who's / whose) wristwatch this is?
7. Lesley, you'll never believe (who's) / whose) studying by himself in the library!
8. The clerk asked the customer, "(Can / May) I help you?"
9. You (can / may) borrow my car if you (can) / may) get it back here within two hours.
10. Did you (imply / infer) from what I said that I don't like your cousin? I didn't mean to (imply) / infer) that.

Parts of Speech

1. Adjectives

An **adjective** describes or modifies a noun or pronoun.

Did you see that gray cat?

Two cars were parked in the driveway.

He is tall, dark, and handsome.

Specific suffixes are associated with adjectives, including -able, -ible, -al, -ful, -ous, -ive, and -y:

She is a capable worker.

This is a reversible coat.

We celebrated the national holiday in Alaska.

Martin is a careful driver.

They own a spacious ranch in Wyoming.

The plaintiff is suing for punitive damages as well.

Sharon is cleaning her messy room.

Demonstrative adjectives: these people, this office

Descriptive adjectives: lovely day, pale color

Interrogative adjectives: What program? Whose coat?

Limiting adjectives: three children, several cars

Possessive adjectives: our apartment, my uncle

Proper adjectives: American flag, Canadian imports

2. Adverbs

An **adverb** describes or modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

modifying a verb: Brittany walked quickly to the door.

modifying an adjective: She was extremely happy to get the news.

modifying another adverb: Time went by very slowly.

Adverbs often indicate when, where, how, and to what extent.

when: The Andersons will arrive tomorrow.

where: Steve, place the chair here.

how: The children sang loudly.

to what extent: We were completely bewildered by the news.

Adverbs often end in the suffix -ly, as a number of preceding examples illustrate.

3. Conjunctions

A **conjunction** is a word used to join words or groups of words. There are coordinating, subordinating, adverbial, and correlative conjunctions.

Coordinating conjunctions: and, but, for, nor, or, yet, so

Rain and fog made driving difficult.

We had the day off, but Sheila had to work.

My husband bought a ticket, for he loves that type of music.

Meredith couldn't answer the question, nor could I.

You can have ice cream or pudding for dessert.

Shane had his car repaired, yet it is still giving him trouble.

We were tired, so we didn't attend the ceremony.

Subordinating conjunctions: after, although, because, if, etc.

After they left, the party broke up.

Although it was cloudy, Sandy still got a sunburn.

He refused dessert because he is on a diet.

The game will be played next week if it has to be canceled today.

Adverbial conjunctions: consequently, however, therefore, etc.

Bob never heard from him again; consequently, he rented the apartment to someone else.

I knew that he had applied for that position; however, I was surprised that he got it.

Our plane leaves at 6:30 A.M.; therefore, we will have to get up early.

Correlative conjunctions: either-or, neither-nor, not only—but also

I think that either the cat or the dog broke the lamp.

It is clear that neither the owners nor the workers want the strike to continue.

We were not only surprised but also embarrassed by the news.

4. Interjections

An **interjection** is a word or phrase that expresses strong emotion.

Ouch! I've been stung by a bee.

Look out! There's ice on the sidewalk.

5. Nouns

A **noun** is a person, place, or thing.

person: Emily

place: Prince Edward Island

thing: wrench

Common nouns refer to general classes: woman, city, building.

Proper nouns refer to particular people, places, or things: Anne, Detroit, Empire State Building.

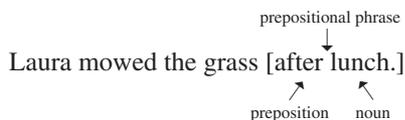
Collective nouns name groups: family, team, class.

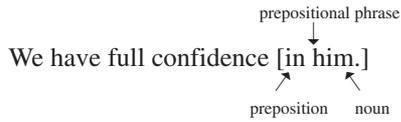
Concrete nouns name tangible things: rock, flower, table.

Abstract nouns name intangible things: idea, bravery, democracy.

6. Prepositions

A **preposition** is a word that combines with a noun or pronoun to form a phrase; prepositional phrases generally serve as adjectives or adverbs.





These words often function as prepositions:

above behind during from of to
before by for in over with

7. Pronouns

A **pronoun** is a word used in place of a noun.

noun: Paul is coming home tomorrow.

pronoun: He is coming home tomorrow.

These words are among those that serve as pronouns:

I he it they themselves which these anybody
you she we myself who what those somebody

8. Verbs

A **verb** is a word or group of words expressing action or the state of being of a subject.

action verb: Yolanda laughed.

state of being verb: Our guests are here.

A **transitive verb** expresses action and has an object.

verb object
↓ ↓
Janet set the package on the table.

verb object
↓ ↓
Wayne flipped the pages of the telephone directory.

An **intransitive verb** does not have an object.

verb
↓
The boy shivered.

verb
↓
The ice and snow melted.

A **linking verb** connects the subject and a complement that renames or describes the subject.

Jamie is the captain.

The clothes seemed inexpensive.

An **auxiliary** or **helping verb** combines with other verbs to form phrases.

helping verb
↓
Katherine can paint.

helping verb
↓
The windows were closed.

These words function as auxiliary or helping verbs:

am	been	can	did	does	has	is	might	shall	was
are	being	could	do	had	have	may	must	should	were

Using the Dictionary

A dictionary is the best source for learning the precise meanings of words; moreover, it provides other valuable information about words, including their pronunciation, spelling, parts of speech, and origin.

Printed below is the entry for **exonerate** found in the fourth college edition of *The American Heritage Dictionary*, one of the most recommended dictionaries for college students. By becoming familiar with the key parts that have been identified and explained, you will be able to take better advantage of the information a college-level dictionary provides.

A	B	C	D
			/ \
ex • on • er • ate (ĭg-zŏn' ə rā't') <i>tr. v.</i> -at • ed, -at • ing, -ates.			
To free from blame. [<i>< Lat. exonerare, to free from a burden.</i>]— ex on er a tion. — ex on er a tive adj.			
E	F	G	

- A.** The **entry word** is printed in boldface type and divided into syllables.
- B.** The **pronunciation** of the word is shown in parentheses, with the pronunciation indicated by specific letters, lines, and symbols. A guide to the pronunciation is generally found in the inside cover of the dictionary as well as at the bottom of every other page.
- C.** The **parts of speech** of a word are indicated by an abbreviation; parts of speech are commonly abbreviated in this manner:
- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|
| adj.—adjective | prep.—preposition |
| adv.—adverb | pron.—pronoun |
| conj.—conjunction | v.—verb |
| interj.—interjection | intr. v. (or vi)—intransitive verb |
| n.—noun | tr. v. (or vt)—transitive verb |
- See Appendix A for a review of the parts of speech.
- D.** The **verb tenses** of *exonerate* are provided (exonerated, exonerating, exonerates).
- E.** The word's **definition**. (Keep in mind that a word may have more than one definition, so it is sometimes necessary to select the definition appropriate to the context in which the word is being used.)

F. The **etymology** of the word is enclosed in brackets; etymology is concerned with the origin and history of words. In our example, it is disclosed that *exonerate* comes from the Latin word *exonerare*, which means “to free from a burden.” The following are typical of the abbreviations used to indicate the language from which a word originated.

OE—Old English, the language spoken in England from the years 700 to 1100

ME—Middle English, the language spoken in England from 1100 to 1500

OF—Old French, the language spoken in France from 800 to 1200

F—French, the language spoken in France today

Lat.—Latin, spoken by the Romans approximately 2,000 years ago

GK—Ancient Greek, spoken in Greece approximately 2,500 years ago

G. “**Relatives**” of the word are indicated; in our example, the noun *exoneration* and the adjective *exonerative* are related to the verb *exonerate*.

Guide words are printed in boldface type at the top of each dictionary page; they indicate the first and last words printed on that particular page. Because words in a dictionary are listed in alphabetical order, the guide words reveal whether the word you are looking for can be found on that particular page. For example, the guide words *exodus* and *expectancy* in *The American Heritage Dictionary* indicate that *exonerate* can be found on that page.

Most college-level dictionaries also include numerous introductory and supplementary pages devoted to a variety of topics like the following:

- Directions for using the dictionary
- Pronunciation guide and other explanatory notes
- Directories and tables of useful information
- Basic manual on grammar, punctuation, and style
- Brief history of the English language
- Biographical entries

Index for Word Parts

- a, 29
able, 29
ac, 169
age, 156
al, 170
algia, 375
ambi, 73
amphi, 73
an, 29
ance, 156
ann, 97
ante, 43
anthrop, 110
anti, 55
arch, 143
arteri, 375
arthr, 375
aster, 123
astro, 123
aud, 86
auto, 42
- be, 170
bell, 73
ben, 55
bi, 55
bio, 42
bon, 85
boun, 85
- cap, 97
cardi, 375
cent, 143
chron, 30
cide, 144
circum, 157
claim, 170
clam, 170
co, 6
col, 6
- com, 6
con, 6
contra, 109
contro, 109
cor, 6
counter, 109
cred, 123
- de, 6
dem, 157
derm, 74, 375
dermis, 74
dia, 98
dic, 109
dis, 18
dys, 169
- em, 123
en, 123
ence, 156
enn, 97
equ, 43
er, 7
err, 169
eu, 42
ex, 7
extra, 86
- fid, 43
fin, 73
fore, 110
ful, 85
- gastr, 375
gen, 124
geo, 73
gram, 97
graph, 97
greg, 170
- hem, 74, 375
hetero, 98
homo, 98
hydr, 73
hydro, 73
hyper, 54
hypo, 85
- ible, 29
ic, 170
il, 6
im, 6
in, 6
inter, 17
intra, 74
intro, 74
ir, 6
ish, 156
ism, 30
ist, 7
itis, 123, 375
ize, 170
- leg, 144
less, 74
log, 30
logy, 18
ly, 156
- macro, 124
magn, 124
mal, 54
man, 74
medi, 169
meter, 109
metr, 109
micro, 143
mis, 17
mono, 7
mor, 97
- mort, 97
multi, 83
my, 375
- neo, 85
ness, 98
neur, 376
non, 86
- ob, 18
omni, 54
onym, 157
op, 18
or, 7
osteo, 376
ous, 85
- pan, 43
path, 55
ped, 143
peri, 123
phil, 54
phleb, 376
phon, 97
photo, 157
pod, 143
polis, 156
poly, 29
port, 143
pos, 97
post, 30
poten, 144
pre, 8
pro, 17
pseud, 124
psych, 109, 376
pulmo, 376
- re, 7
rect, 43
- scrib, 143
scrip, 143
se, 110
semi, 109
ship, 156
sol, 156
spec, 54
sta, 6
sub, 17
super, 29
sym, 43
syn, 43
- tele, 42
temp, 86
ten, 18
terr, 110
the, 124
therm, 110
tion, 18
tomy, 376
tract, 157
trans, 29
- ultra, 86
un, 7
uni, 17
urb, 156
- ven, 144
vent, 144
ver, 30
vid, 124
vis, 124
voc, 55
vok, 55
- ward, 86

Index for Challenging Words

- aberration, 174
abeyance, 161
acquiesce, 206
acrimonious, 90
acronym, 161
affinity, 196
affluence, 197
alienation, 182
altimeter, 115
ambivalence, 78
annuity, 101
antediluvian, 47
anthropology, 23
antithesis, 59
apathy, 33
archetype, 148
astronautics, 127
audible, 90
autonomy, 47
- banal, 197
belligerent, 77
benign, 60
bereft, 174
bilingual, 60
biopsy, 46
blandness, 102
bounteous, 89
- cacophony, 101
capricious, 102
catharsis, 196
centenarian, 148
chronic, 35
circumspect, 161
clamorous, 174
clandestine, 197
cogent, 205
collateral, 182
colloquial, 175
compliance, 10
composure, 102
contemporary, 91
contraband, 113
convene, 148
correlation, 23
- credence, 127
culpable, 33
- dauntless, 78
dearth, 196
debacle, 189
debilitate, 11
deleterious, 182
demagogue, 162
deprivation, 189
dermatology, 79
diaphanous, 102
dichotomy, 197
dissipate, 22
dystrophy, 174
- eclectic, 205
embroil, 128
empathy, 60
enigma, 197
ephemeral, 206
epilogue, 34
equivocal, 48
euphemism, 47
exacerbate, 173
extraneous, 90
extricate, 12
- felicitous, 182
fetish, 160
finale, 77
foreboding, 116
- garrulous, 189
generic, 129
genocide, 148
geopolitics, 77
graphology, 101
gregarious, 174
guile, 196
gullible, 183
- hedonist, 11
hemostat, 78
heterogeneous, 103
homogeneous, 103
hydrology, 78
hypertension, 59
- hypochondria, 89
hypothermia, 116
hypothetical, 183
- immutable, 183
impeccable, 183
impunity, 183
incongruous, 11
infidelity, 47
interim, 22
introspection, 78
inundate, 206
- legacy, 149
lethargy, 196
- magnanimous, 128
malediction, 115
malicious, 58
manhandle, 78
medieval, 174
megalopolis, 160
meticulous, 189
microbiology, 141
misanthrope, 115
misconstrue, 22
monomania, 12
monotheism, 128
moribund, 102
multifaceted, 89
- nebulous, 190
neophyte, 90
nepotism, 34
neuritis, 128
nondescript, 90
- obstreperous, 22
omnipotent, 59
ostensibly, 161
ostracize, 176
- panacea, 48
parochial, 206
perfunctory, 206
peripatetic, 127
philanthropy, 58
- photosynthesis, 161
podiatry, 147
polychromatic, 34
portage, 148
posthumously, 35
potency, 149
precocious, 11
proclivity, 21
proscribe, 147
pseudonym, 128
psychedelic, 114
- rationalize, 205
rectify, 47
redundant, 190
replicate, 11
repudiate, 190
retraction, 161
- sagacious, 186
sedition, 116
semicentennial, 115
soliloquy, 160
sophomoric, 175
sordid, 205
specious, 190
specter, 59
stature, 10
subterfuge, 21
superfluous, 34
syndrome, 48
- telepathy, 47
tentative, 22
terrain, 115
transition, 34
trepidation, 184
- universally, 22
unseemly, 12
usurp, 206
- veracity, 34
viable, 190
vis-à-vis, 128
vociferous, 59
wayward, 91

Index for Academic Terms

- acculturation, 258
acquittal, 282
acute, 377
addition terms
 addends, 315
 sum, 315
adjudicate, 282
affirmative action, 306
agrarian, 258
alliteration, 226
amendment, 270
analogy, 226
angles
 acute, 314
 obtuse, 315
 right, 314
antagonist, 226
anthology, 227
appeal, 285
appreciation, 306
appropriation, 275
assets, 301
astronomy, 346
asymptomatic, 377
atom, 349
atrophy, 377
audit, 306
average, 315
axioms, 315

bail, 282
balance of trade, 301
bear market, 302
behavior therapy, 251
benign, 377
bibliography, 222
Bill of Rights, 270
binary, 362
biology, 330
bit, 362
blog, 367
booking, 382
botony, 330
boycott, 270

branches of
 government, 270
bull market, 302
bureaucracy, 262
byte, 362

canon, 226
capital, 306
carnivorous, 336
cartel, 307
catalyst, 233, 351
centrifugal, 351
centripetal, 351
CEO (chief executive officer), 305
change of venue, 286
checks and balances, 271
chemistry, 349
chromosomes, 331
chronic, 377
circumference, 315
coagulate, 377
congenital, 335
cognitive, 246
cognitive therapy, 252
commodities, 301
commute, 382
compound, 350
concurrent sentencing, 286
conglomerate, 306
connotation, 222
consecutive sentencing, 286
context, 233
control group, 245
crash, 366
critique, 239
culpability, 282
culture, 258
cursor, 361
cyanosis, 377

database, 366
decoding, 233
deduction, 239
defendant, 287
defense mechanisms, 250
dementia, 377
demography, 258
denotation, 222
depreciation, 306
divestiture, 306
division terms
 dividend, 316
 divisor, 316
 quotient, 316
domain name, 367
dormant, 335
download, 367

edema, 378
ego, 249
electron, 350
element, 349
e-mail, 367
embargo, 307
eminent domain, 271
empirical, 246
encoding, 233
entomology, 330
enunciation, 234
entitlement, 275
entrepreneur, 305
ethnic group, 262
ethnocentrism, 262
etiology, 378
executive, 270
experimental group, 245
exponent, 316
extradite, 286
extrinsic motivation, 246

fallacies, 238
fauna, 232
febrile, 278
felony, 286
figures of speech, 222
file, 366
filibuster, 247
fiscal, 302
flashback, 277
flora, 332
folkways, 227
fonts, 362
foreshadowing, 227
fractions
 improper, 316
 proper, 316
franchise, 306

genes, 332
genre, 222
geology, 344
geriatrics, 263
gerontology, 263, 378
gerrymandering, 275
GNP (gross national product), 301
golden parachute, 307

habeas corpus, 287
habitat, 332
hacker, 366
hardware, 365
herbivorous, 336
homeostasis, 335
hominids, 336
hospice, 378
hybrid, 336
hyperbole, 226
hypothesis, 246

icons, 362
id, 249
igneous rocks, 344

impeachment, 274
 impromptu speaking, 234
 indict, 283
 induction, 239
 inflationary, 302
 injunction, 287
 inorganic chemistry, 349
 Internet, 367
 intrinsic motivation, 246
 introvert, 246
 invertebrates, 336

 judiciary, 270
 jurisprudence, 287

 kinesics, 237
 kinetic energy, 351

 laissez-faire, 271
 lame duck, 274
 legislative, 270
 liabilities, 302
 literal, 223
 litigants, 287
 litigation, 287
 lobbyist, 271
 lunar, 346

 malaise, 378
 malleable, 352
 malignant, 378
 Malthusian theory, 262
 math symbols, 322
 matriarchal family, 262
 mean, 320
 median, 320
 memory, RAM, ROM, 362
 menu bar, 366
 metabolism, 337
 metamorphic rocks, 344
 metaphor, 223

 meteorology, 345
 microbiology, 330
 misdemeanor, 286
 mixed numbers, 316
 mode, 320
 modem, 362
 molecule, 350
 monitor, 361
 mores, 258
 mouse, 361
 multimedia
 presentation, 239
 multiplication terms
 multiplicand, 321
 multiplier, 321
 product, 321
 mutation, 332

 nadir, 346
 natal, 378
 neurosis, 251
 neutron, 350
 noise, 234
 nonsexist language, 238
 nucleus, 350

 objective, 239
 obsolescence, 306
 Oedipus complex, 251
 omnivorous, 336
 oncology, 378
 organic chemistry, 349
 oscillate, 351
 ossification, 336

 palliative, 378
 pathology, 379
 patriarchal family, 263
 patronage, 275
 peer group, 258
 peripheral, 361
 perjury, 283
 personification, 223
 physics, 351
 physiology, 331

 placebo, 346
 plagiarism, 226
 plaintiff, 287
 plankton, 336
 port, 361
 portfolio, 305
 postulates, 315
 potential energy, 351
 premise, 238
 prognosis, 379
 prolific, 336
 prose, 223
 protagonist, 226
 protocol, 379
 proton, 350
 protoplasm, 337
 psychoanalysis, 250
 psychosis, 251
 psychosomatic, 251

 radius, 322
 rapport, 238
 ratification, 271
 recession, 302
 recidivism, 283
 reciprocity, 301
 red herring, 274
 referendum, 275
 remission, 379

 sanction, 263
 satire, 226
 search engine, 367
 sedimentary rocks, 344
 sedition, 275
 sibling, 259
 simile, 223
 social norms, 259
 software, 365
 solute, 351
 solvency, 302
 spam, 367
 spreadsheet, 366
 square root, 322
 stalactites, 344
 stalagmites, 345

 status, 263
 stereotype, 259
 subjective, 239
 subpoena, 286
 subtraction terms
 difference, 317
 minuend, 317
 subtrahend, 317
 superego, 249
 symbiosis, 332
 synopsis, 227
 synthesis, 351

 tariff, 307
 taxonomy, 336
 terminal, 361
 therapeutic, 251
 topography, 344
 tort law, 283
 transitions, 237
 trauma, 379
 triage, 378

 urbanism, 259
 utopia, 263

 values, 259
 variable, 245, 322
 venue, 233
 vertebrates, 336
 vertigo, 379
 veto, 271
 virus, 366
 voice
 active, 234
 passive, 234
 speaking, 234

 World Wide Web (WWW), 367

 zenith, 346
 zoology, 330

Index for Mastering Confusing Words

- a/an, 65
advice/advise, 16
affect/effect, 41

breath/breathe, 212

can/may, 360
capital/capitol, 281
coarse/course, 204
complement/compliment, 195
conscience/conscious, 181
council/counsel, 374

desert/dessert, 269

device/devise, 28
disinterested/uninterested, 313

farther/further, 257
fewer/less, 383

hole/whole, 168

imply/infer, 343
its/it's, 293

loose/lose, 232

passed/past, 53

personal/personnel, 135
principal/principle, 122

quiet/quite/quit, 84

shone/shown, 155

than/then, 96
their/there/they're, 108
threw/through, 244

weather/whether, 188
who's/whose, 327

Foreign Words and Phrases Commonly Used in English

The English language includes more words than any other language—largely because it includes so many words drawn from other languages. Here are some examples.

Greek

alphabet	letters used to form words (the word alphabet was formed by combining the first two Greek letters, <i>alpha</i> and <i>beta</i>)
anonymous	unknown person; without a name
athlete	a participant in a sport
metropolis	a large city

Latin

ad hoc	formed for one specific purpose; done on the spur of the moment
alma mater	the school that one formerly attended
et cetera (etc.)	and other things of the same class; and so forth
vice versa	with the order changed; in reverse order

Spanish

adios	goodbye, farewell
adobe	a sun-dried brick, or a structure made of this kind of brick
aficionado	a devoted follower; a fan
patio	an outdoor bricked, tiled, or paved area adjoining a house

French

à la mode	fashionable; or, served with ice cream
avant-garde	a group applying new techniques in a given field, especially the arts
carte blanche	complete authority or freedom to do what one wants
déjà vu	the feeling that one has previously experienced a current event

German

ersatz	an imitation, fake, or substitute regarded as inferior
hamburger	a ground-beef sandwich
kaput	zapped, wiped out, destroyed, no more
kindergarten	a school class for young children around five years of age

Dutch

caboose	the last car on a freight train
cookie	a dessert
frolic	playful antics, merriment; to behave playfully
heckle	to aggressively interrupt in an effort to embarrass or to annoy, particularly someone speaking or performing in public